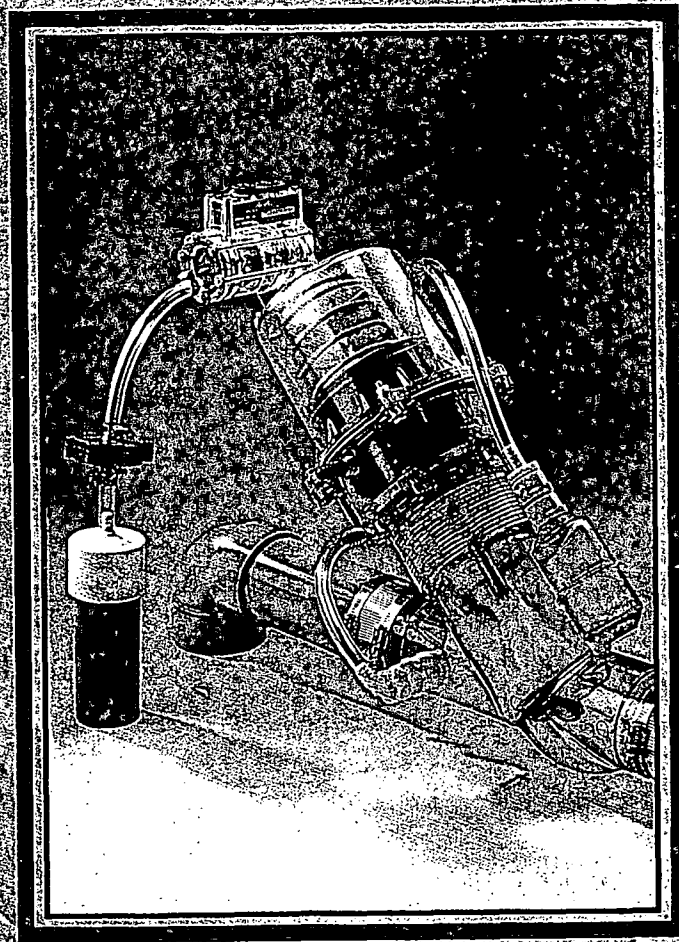




**BRISBANE CITY COUNCIL**



**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT**

**PROTECTING AND CONSERVING  
OUR WATER RESOURCES**

**OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

# **INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT**

## **BRISBANE CITY COUNCIL**

### **OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

#### **Confidential Information**

The information contained within this manual is the sole intellectual property of **AIRVAC-RSM Pty Limited**. This manual must not be reproduced nor transferred to, nor brought within the reach of third parties without the express written permission of **AIRVAC-RSM Pty Limited**. Likewise, the receiver is not allowed to use this manual as a basis for manufacture. Contravention of these conditions will result in legal prosecution.

**AIRVAC-RSM PTY LIMITED**  
Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby NSW 2068

Telephone: (61 2) 9417 8133  
Facsimile: (61 2) 9417 8162

CONTROLLED  
DOCUMENT NO. 9347-C  
Page 2 of 316...

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

---

<b>Section 1</b>	Inghams Industrial Estate, Hemmant Sewerage Transport Scheme
<b>Section 2</b>	Control Panel
<b>Section 3</b>	AIRVAC Vacuum Valves
<b>Section 4</b>	Siemens Vacuum Pumps
<b>Section 5</b>	Hidrostal Sewage Pumps
<b>Section 6</b>	Miscellaneous Items <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Division Valves</li><li>• Instruments</li></ul>
<b>Section 7</b>	Valve Record Cards

## **CONTRACTORS**

---

<b>Project Manager</b>	Brisbane City Council TC Bierne Building 315 Brunswick Street Mall Fortitude Valley QLD 4006
<b>Contractor</b>	Alexander Brown Cambridge & Partners 50 Leichhardt Street, Spring Hill QLD 4000 Telephone: (07) 832 1532 Facsimile: (07) 832 1497
<b>Designer, Supplier/Vacuum Equipment</b>	<b>AIRVAC-RSM Pty Limited.</b> Suite 11, 283 Penshurst Street, Willoughby NSW 2068 Telephone: (02) 417 8133 Facsimile: (02) 417 8162
<b>Piping Contractor</b>	Fairfield Plumbing & Mechanical Services. Private Bag 3, Moorooka QLD 4105. Telephone No. (07) 892 9243 Facsimile No. (07) 892 9271
<b>Vacuum Pumps</b>	Siemens Ltd Australia. 383 Pacific Highway, Artarmon NSW 2064. Telephone No. (02) 436 8700 Facsimile No. (02) 546 8701
<b>Sewage Discharge Pumps</b>	Envirotech Australia Pty Limited. Gindurra Road, Somersby NSW 2250. Telephone No. (043) 402 388 Facsimile No. (043) 401 080





## **SECTION 1**

### **INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SCHEME**

- 1.1 Description**
- 1.2 Reticulation**
- 1.3 Pumping Station**

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****1. TRANSPORT SYSTEM****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

Sewage Transport System has been generally designed and constructed using technology and equipment provided by **AIRVAC-RSM Pty Limited** under a licence arrangement from AIRVAC, Rochester, Indiana, USA. **AIRVAC-RSM Pty Limited** is the major supplier of vacuum sewerage systems in Australia and internationally.

The Vacuum Sewer System used and as shown in copyright drawings submitted during the course of the contract is covered by AUSTRALIAN PATENT No. 522719.

**1.2 RETICULATION SYSTEM**

The system consists of a network of pipes radiating from the Pumping Station. The pipes are sized in accordance with AIRVAC developed flow resistance data which allows us to calculate the optimum pipe sizes for a given flow. Future extensions and modifications to the system should be referred to **AIRVAC-RSM Pty Limited**.

Figure 9347-02 shows the reticulation system.

The grading of the system conforms to level grade transport, upgrade transport and downgrade transport as shown in Figure 1-2.

**1.3 PUMPING STATION**

The heart of the vacuum system is the pumping station which is shown in Figure 9347-03. Sewage enters the collection tank from the vacuum mains. The level rises and the duty sewage pump is switched on by a signal from the level probe. The sewage is pumped via the Ø110 HDPE rising main to a new discharge manhole adjacent to the existing manhole. Duty and standby sewage pumps are provided.

The vacuum within the system is maintained within the operating range by vacuum switches. Duty and standby vacuum pumps are provided.

The control philosophy for the pumps is:-

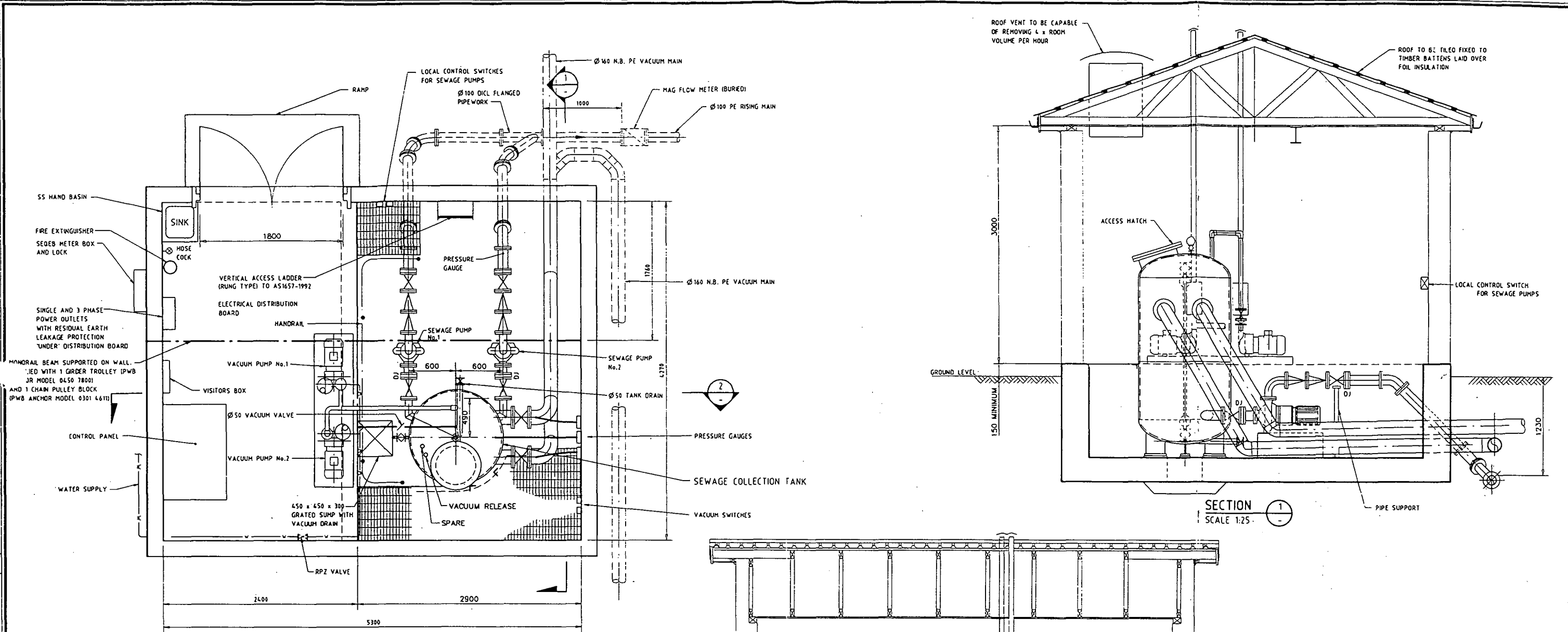
Selector switch auto/manual. Automatic start up is provided in the event of power failure.

**Auto Mode**

Both duty pumps (vacuum and sewage) are automatically selected and toggled after each start. If the duty pump is unavailable the remaining unit automatically becomes the duty pump. If the high/high sewage level is reached the vacuum pump will stop and an interlock will prevent it restarting until the waste level drops below the high level switch setting.

**Manual Mode**

Start/stop push buttons are provided to control each pump. The duty vacuum pump will shut down and an interlock will prevent restarting with high/high level switch activated. Alarms and telemetry are detailed in the control panel description - Section 2.



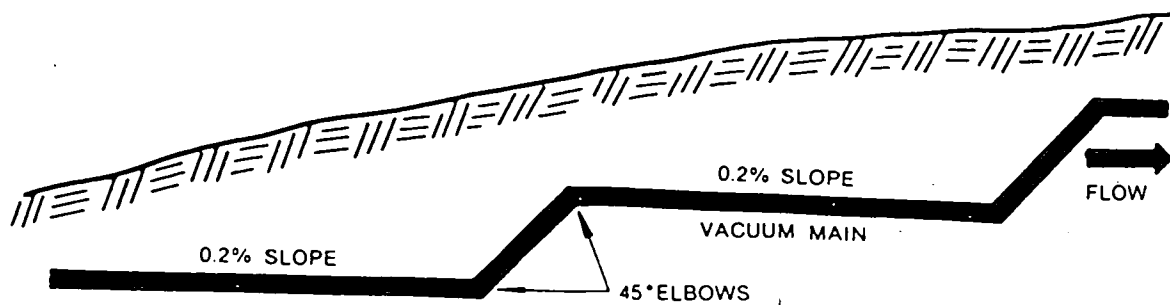
- NOTES
- 1. ALL LIGHTING IN PUMP STATION TO BE TO AUSTRALIAN STANDARD
  - 2. ALL BOLTS ON PIPEWORK AND FLANGES ETC TO BE GALV.
  - 3. HEARING PROTECTION SIGN REQUIRED.
  - 4. ALL PIPEWORK / CONDUITS TO BE LABELLED OR COLOUR CODED
  - 5. SAFE WORKING LOAD (SWL) TO BE PAINTED ON MONORAIL BEAM.
  - 6. PUMP AND EQUIPMENT BASES TO BE CROUTED IN POSITION

DIRECTOR OF PLANNING & DESIGN (DEPARTMENT OF WS & S)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
DATE \_\_\_\_\_  
(APPROVAL VALID FOR 12 MONTHS ONLY)  
FROM SIGNED DATE

1:25 0 500 1000 1500 2000 2500 mm

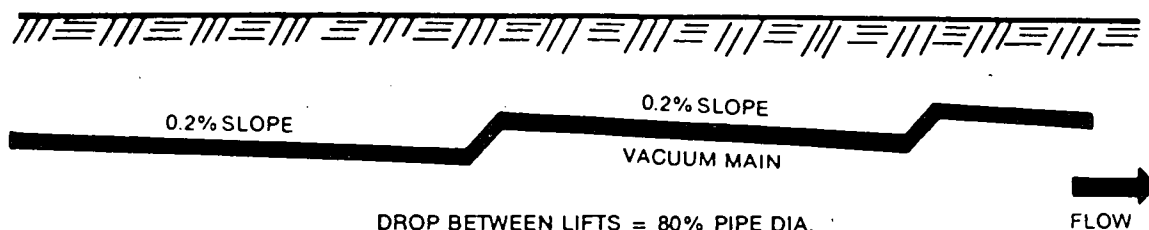
COPYRIGHT		
The concepts and information contained in this document are the copyright of AIRVAC-RSM Pty Limited. Use or copying of the document in whole or in part without the written permission of AIRVAC-RSM Pty Limited constitutes an infringement of copyright.		
B	PUMP STATION AMENDMENTS	NC 29/9/95
Mk	Details of Amendment	Approved

COPYRIGHT		Client		Title		Drawing No.	
The concepts and information contained in this document are the copyright of AIRVAC-RSM Pty Limited. Use or copying of the document in whole or in part without the written permission of AIRVAC-RSM Pty Limited constitutes an infringement of copyright.		INGHAMS ENTERPRISES P/L		VACUUM PUMPING STATION		9347-02	
		Project				Amendment	
		VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM LYTTON RD HEMMANT				B	
Suite 11 283 Penshurst street Woolgohy, N.S.W. 2086		Telephone: (02) 417 8133 Facsimile: (02) 417 8162		Designed NC Drawn ADC Traced ACAD Checked Approved		Cad File No. 154310-1	



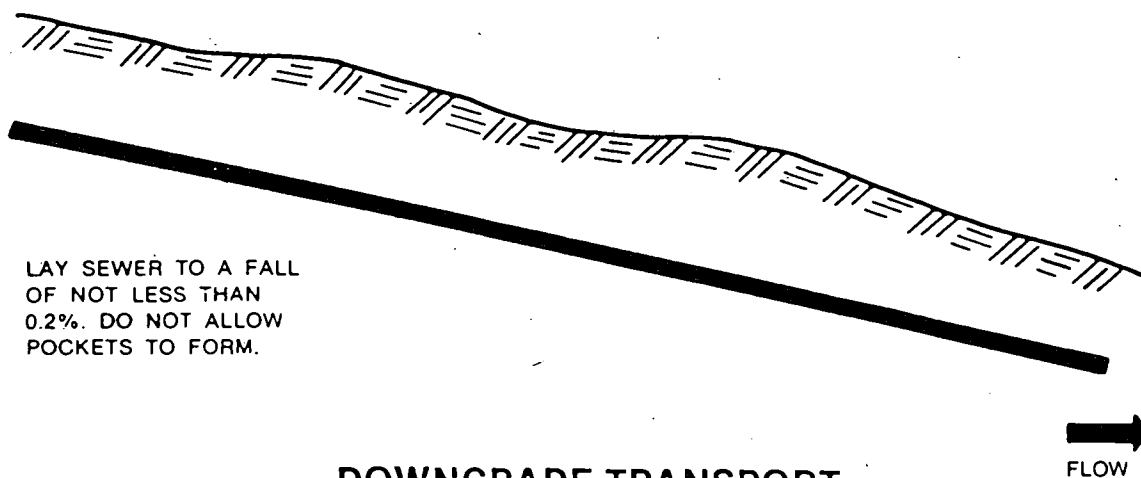
DROP BETWEEN LIFTS = 80% PIPE DIA.  
OR 0.2% FALL WHICHEVER IS GREATER

### UPGRADE TRANSPORT



DROP BETWEEN LIFTS = 80% PIPE DIA.  
OR 0.2% FALL WHICHEVER IS GREATER

### LEVEL GRADE TRANSPORT



### DOWNGRADE TRANSPORT

**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

VACUUM SEWER PROFILES

FIGURE 1-2



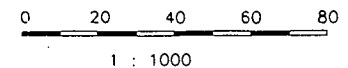
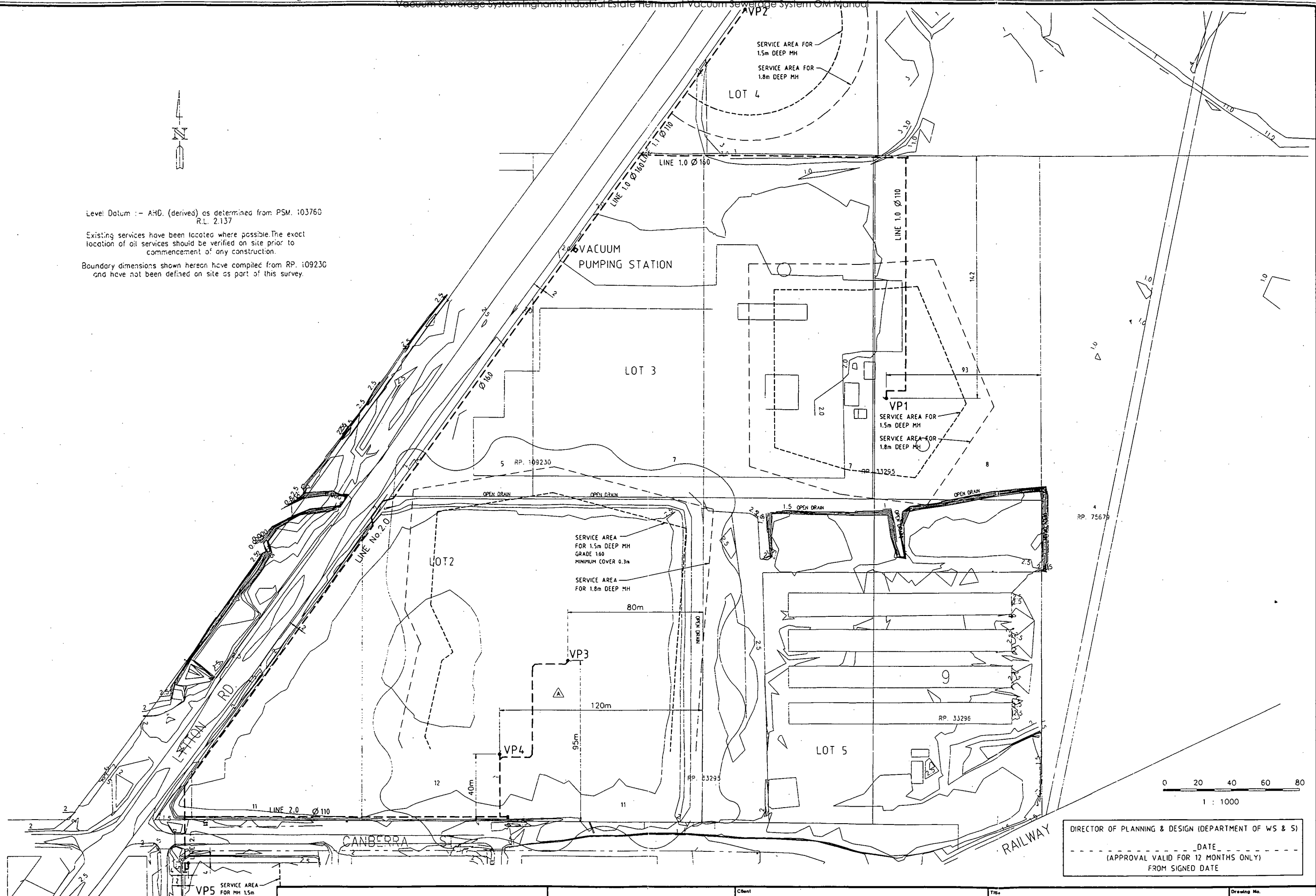




Level Datum :- AHD. (derived) as determined from PSM. 103760  
R.L. 2.137

Existing services have been located where possible. The exact location of all services should be verified on site prior to commencement of any construction.

Boundary dimensions shown hereon have compiled from RP. 109230 and have not been defined on site as part of this survey.



DIRECTOR OF PLANNING & DESIGN (DEPARTMENT OF WS & S)  
DATE \_\_\_\_\_  
(APPROVAL VALID FOR 12 MONTHS ONLY)  
FROM SIGNED DATE

A	COUNCIL AMENDMENTS	
Mk	Details of Amendment	Approved

**COPYRIGHT**  
The contents and information contained in this document are the copyright of AIRVAC-RSM Pty Limited. Use or copying of the document in whole or in part without the written permission of AIRVAC-WA Pty Limited constitutes an infringement of copyright.

**AIRVAC-RSM PTY LTD**

Suite 11  
783 PENNURST ST  
WILLOUGHBY, NSW 2068  
FACSIMILE: (02) 41781621  
TELEPHONE: (02) 41781331

Client	INGHAMS ENTERPRISES PTY LTD				
Project	LYTTON ROAD - HEMMANT				
Designed	Drawn	Traced	Checked	Approved	
NC	JW				

**VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM  
PLAN DETAILS**

Drawing No.	9347-03
Amendment	A
Cad File No.	9347-3





**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

---

The pumping station consists of:-

- Vacuum Collection Tank
- Vacuum Pumps. Comprehensive details of the vacuum pumps are contained in Section 4 - SIEMENS Vacuum Pumps
- Sewage Discharge Pumps. Details of the sewage discharge pumps are contained in Section 5 - Hidrostal Sewage Pumps.
- Control Panel.
- Isolation Valve for the incoming vacuum line and the suction and discharge of sewage pumps.
- Check Valve
- Lifting Equipment



## **SECTION 2**

### **INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SCHEME**

#### **CONTROL PANEL**

- 2.1 Control Panel**
- 2.2 Field Instruments / Local Electrical Isolation**
- 2.3 System Operation**

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM-SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****2. CONTROL PANEL**

The Control Panel is a wall mounted, front opening cabinet housing the following items.

- PLC and RTU housing and supporting SCADA.
- Multitrode Level Controller  
(Note PLC and Multitrode controller are mounted inside the panel)
- Fascia Indicator Lights for the following:-
 

Vacuum Pump 1	...	pump available light
	...	running light
Vacuum Pump 2	...	pump available light
	...	running light
Sewage Pump 1	...	pump available light
	...	running light
Sewage Pump 2	...	pump available light
	...	running light
- High Liquid Level Alarm
- Low vacuum level alarm (ie. vacuum is greater than operational range -50 kPa)
- Fascia mounted push buttons are provided on the panel for the following:-
  - System Start (manual mode)
  - Lamp test Button
  - Each Vacuum Pump
 

...	start
...	stop
  - Each Sewage Pump
 

...	start
...	stop
- Selector Switches
  - Auto/off/manual
  - Vacuum pump selector switch No. 1/Off/No. 2
  - Sewage pump selector switch No. 1/Off/No.2
- Emergency Stop Button
- Ampere meter on each pump motor
- Hour run meters on each pump motor

**Section 2**

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****2.2 FIELD INSTRUMENTS/LOCAL ELECTRICAL ISOLATION**

- Vacuum Switches
  1. Vacuum Inadequate. Alarm contact switch set -40 kPa.
  2. Vacuum Pump Controls (on/off)
  3. Vacuum Excessive. Alarm contact switch (and panel light) set for vacuum exceeding -80 kPa.
- Vacuum Gauges wall mounted
  - Tank vacuum
  - Mains vacuum
- Tank Level Indication
  - Multitrode 10 point conductivity type probe. Level indication lights are on the pump controller inside the door.
  - Sight Glass
- Local Isolation Switches
  - Sewage pumps
  - Vacuum pumps
- Rising main pressure transducer
- Rising main flow meter

**2.3 SYSTEM OPERATION**

The panel is designed for manual or fully automatic operation.

**2.3.1 AUTOMATIC MODE OPERATION**

Select auto on the selectors switch. In this mode the vacuum pumps will automatically start/stop on initiation from the vacuum switches. Similarly the sewage pumps will start/stop automatically on the level switch (Multitrode). The switching range of all vacuum switches and the liquid level control is variable and have been set at commissioning. They should not require adjustment. If adjustment is thought to be required please contact **AIRVAC-RSM Pty Limited** prior to undertaking any adjustment.

Normally the amber lamps should light up showing all pumps are available.

In this situation the selected duty pump will run until the switch shuts it down and then the other pump becomes the next duty pump. If a pump is unavailable the other will always be selected as the duty unit.

Note that the Multitrode HIGH/HIGH level switch will activate voltage free alarm contacts for telemetry or phone alarm and simultaneously cut out the duty vacuum pump. Duty vacuum pump will not restart until the overriding level switch condition has been corrected. This would be a most unusual occurrence (HIGH/HIGH LEVEL) and it would normally be corrected by the sewage pump lowering the liquid level.

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

In the event a power failure the pump will automatically restart with the return of power. The vacuum collection system will then automatically come back on line as vacuum in the mains permits valves to open and drain the pits.

**2.3.2 MANUAL MODE OPERATION**

Manual operation is selected on the panel with Selector Switch and then system start PB. Initiate the respective pumps as required. In this mode the level and vacuum switches are not functional and both pumps will run until manually shut down.

**2.3.3 NOMINAL SETTINGS OF SWITCHES****Vacuum Switch Function**

PS-1 HHV	Alarm Contact	-80 kPa rising
PS-2 LLV	Vacuum pump starts	-50 kPa
PS-2 HHV	Vacuum pump shut down	-70 kPa
PS-3 LLV	Alarm Contact	-40 kPa falling

**Multitrode Sewage Pump Controller**

HHL	Alarm Contact	Cuts off locks out duty vacuum pump
HL	Sewage Pump Starts	
LL	Sewage Pump Stops	

**Note:**

1. Contacts are adjustable within Multitrodes Indicating Controller Unit (M.T.I.C.)
2. Liquid level is indicated by on face of control by L.E.D.

## **SECTION 3**

### **INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SCHEME**

#### **AIRVAC VACUUM VALVES**

- 3.1 DESCRIPTION**
- 3.2 Principles of Operation**
- 3.3 Controller/Sensor Unit**
- 3.4 Valve Cycle Counter**
- 3.5 Surge Tank**
- 3.6 Field Adjustment of the AIRVAC Valve**
- 3.7 Installation & Commissioning**
- 3.8 Preventative Maintenance**
- 3.9 Collection Station**
- 3.10 Model 5 – AIRVAC Controller/Sensor Unit**  
**Operation & Maintenance**
- 3.11 AIRVAC Controller/Sensor Valve Repair**
- 3.12 Condensed Testing Procedures**
- 3.13 Trouble shooting**
- 3.14 Trouble shooting Chart**
- 3.15 Advice with Problems**
- 3.16 AIRVAC Equipment returned under Warranty**  
**for Warranty**
- 3.17 Record keeping**
- 3.18 Controller & Valves Repair Report Forms**
- 3.19 Training**
- 3.20 AIRVAC Equipment Parts List**





**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****3. AIRVAC VACUUM VALVES****3.1 DESCRIPTION**

The AIRVAC vacuum sewer system has been in use under varied circumstances since 1970 during which time it has proven its ability in such applications as housing developments, schools, small towns and industrial plant.

The AIRVAC system relies on the use of vacuum for the transportation of sewage. Under most conditions, the vacuum pumps will maintain the collection tank and mains system at a negative pressure range of -50 to -70 kPa. Because of its pressure characteristics, the vacuum main may be approached in the same manner as the usual positive pressure force main. For example, installations may be made relatively independent of grade. The piping material used is HDPE Class 6 and the pipe diameters are (90, 110 and 160 mm). The AIRVAC valve separates the collection system, which is under constant vacuum from the house plumbing at atmospheric pressure. This valve is a pneumatically operated device and is designed so that it will not open unless there is a vacuum of approximately -16 kPa in the main and a pre-determined depth of sewage in the holding tank located beneath the valve.

When there is sufficient sewage in the tank and adequate vacuum in the main, the AIRVAC valve opens and the sewage is admitted to the main. This sewage flows through the vacuum main due to the pressure differential of atmosphere behind it and one half atmosphere on the downstream side. At -60 kPa vacuum the total lift available is approximately 6 meters of water column. Part of this lift must be used to overcome pipe friction and fitting losses. Another part must be allowed for the operation of the AIRVAC valve and the remainder may be used for vacuum lift. One and a half meter of water column is reserved to operate the AIRVAC valve thus four and a half metres is available for line losses and lift.

Sewage from the vacuum main is collected at the collection station in a steel tank maintained under vacuum by two vacuum pumps. From the collection tank the sewage is pumped via a Ø110mm rising main to the collecting manhole.

**3.2 PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION**

The AIRVAC 75mm valve is manufactured in ABS and is designed to operate when submerged in water. When correctly installed the AIRVAC valve is capable of handling flows of 2.5 L/s.

As a safety precaution to prevent 'waterlogging' or 'bog down' of the pipework system, the control circuits have been designed not to operate the AIRVAC valve unless 16 kPa vacuum is available in the vacuum main.

The principle components of the AIRVAC valves are the valve body, controller/sensor unit and surge tank. The valve is shown on Figure 2-1 75mm AIRVAC valve. The function of the various components are as follows:

**3.3 CONTROLLER/SENSOR UNIT**

The controller/sensor unit first senses the level of the sewage present in the holding tank. When the sewage level reaches a preset height, the sensor portion of the controller opens a two-way valve. This activates the second portion of the controller, the three-way valve.

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

When activated this valve takes a vacuum supply from the sewer and providing not less than 16 kPa vacuum is available, applies it to the upper piston operator. Evacuation of this operator pulls up the piston and opens the AIRVAC valve. As the valve opens the sewage is evacuated from the holding tank which relieves the sensor pressure. The timing circuit of the controller commences the timing to a preset valve cycle. When the cycle time has expired the three-way valve switches over to connect atmospheric pressure to the operator. The valve spring then starts the piston moving toward the closed position. At around half stroke, the vacuum of the sewer takes over and pulls the valve firmly closed. The valve and controller are now in standby position.

However, in some circumstances, a whole system or just a small portion of a system, is designed to operate at higher air/liquid ratios. The ability to field adjust the air/liquid ratio is a major attraction of the AIRVAC controller/sensor.

**3.4 VALVE CYCLE COUNTER**

An AIRVAC valve operation cycle counter is available for fitting to the standard valve to permit the sewer owner to monitor the quantity of effluent passing through a particular valve. This counter is normally fitted to a valve for a short period only to monitor the number of cycles any one valve is achieving. It is not usually a permanent installation and hence only one or two such counters are normally required for a large system.

**3.5 SURGE TANK**

The surge tank (Figure 2-1) is fitted to the vacuum side of the AIRVAC 75mm valve. The controller vacuum supply is drawn through the surge tank. Fitted to the surge tank is a nylon check valve fitted with an umbrella and duckbill rubber check valve. The purpose of these checks and surge tanks is to absorb the small volume of high pressure water surge that occurs in the controller vacuum tube when the AIRVAC 75mm valve is on its air cycle.

**3.6 FIELD ADJUSTMENT OF THE AIRVAC VALVE****3.6.1 Controller Timing**

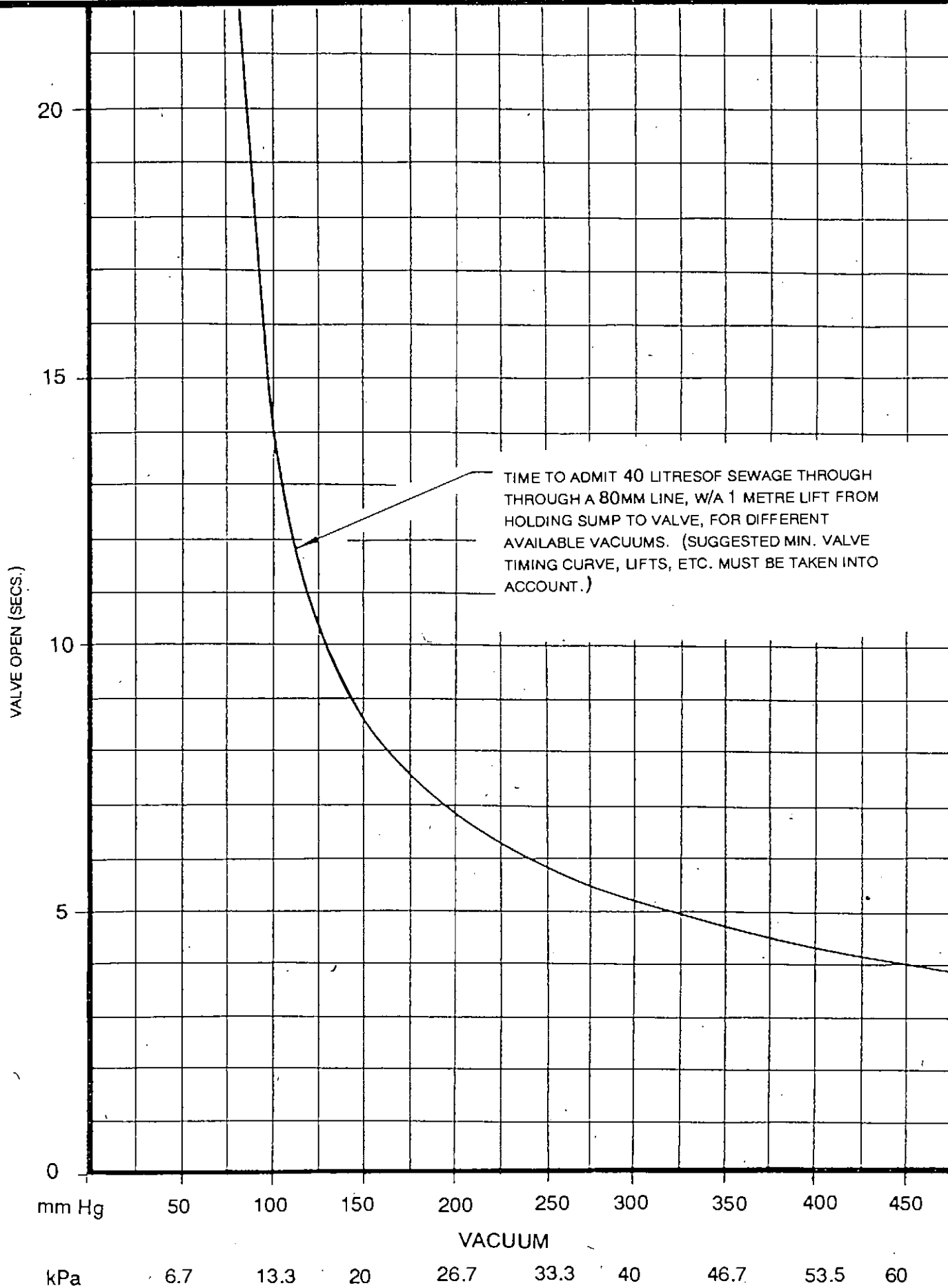
The AIRVAC vacuum main system is designed to operate at a nominal air to liquid ratio of approximately 6:1. The procedures given below are for that ratio. If different air to liquid ratios are required or any portion of the system a separate detailed instruction regarding timing the valve will be given by AIRVAC at the time of system start-up. Figures 2-2 Valve Timing give minimum recommended valve timing required for different vacuum levels.

**3.6.2 Equipment Required**

Small screwdriver (3mm wide blade), stop-watch and a vacuum gauge.

**3.6.3 Procedure**

Remove the side check valve hose and fit the vacuum gauge as shown in Figure 2-3. Check that the sewer vacuum is in excess of 16 kPa. Run water or sewage into the holding tank until the AIRVAC valve cycles. As the valve cycles, time the sewage flow through the valve, ie. start stop-watch immediately when valve opens.



**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

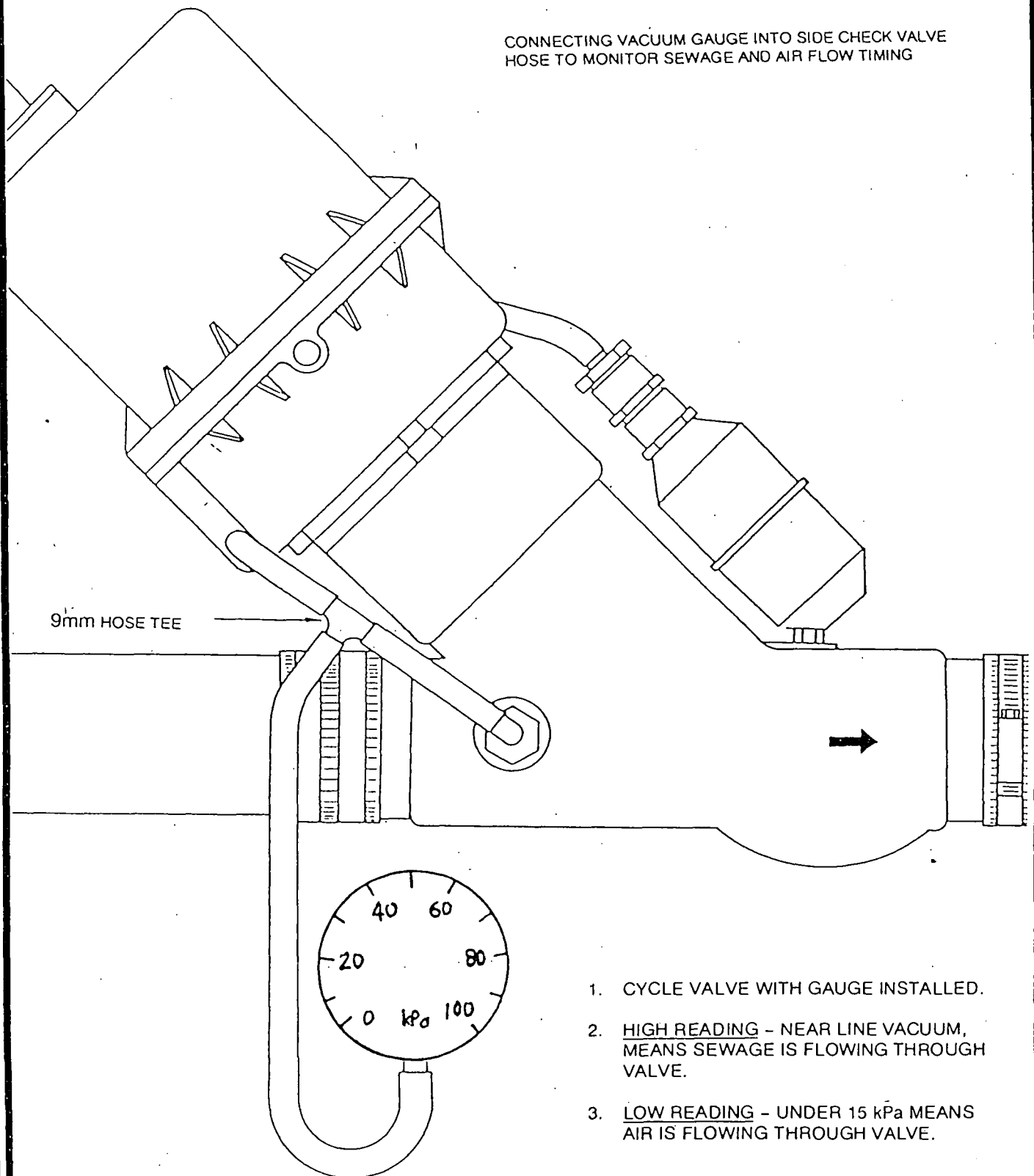
Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

**75mm VALVE TIMING**

**FIGURE 2-2**

CONNECTING VACUUM GAUGE INTO SIDE CHECK VALVE  
HOSE TO MONITOR SEWAGE AND AIR FLOW TIMING



**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

FIELD ADJUSTMENT

**FIGURE 2-3**

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

Watch the vacuum gauge carefully. When the AIRVAC valve cycle commences the gauge will show a vacuum reading. As the valve stops admitting sewage and starts on its air cycle the vacuum gauge will flicker to zero. This point is the end of the sewage cycle. Stop the stop-watch. Usually the sewage time will be 2 to 3 seconds. Run more water into the holding tank and using the stop-watch time a complete AIRVAC valve cycle.

The complete AIRVAC valve cycle time should be double the sewage entry time. For example, 2 seconds for sewage plus 2 seconds for air = 4 seconds open time. If this is not so, re-adjust the controller timing as follows:

Remove the timer cover. The timer valve pin is now exposed. To INCREASE valve timing, turn the centre screw a small amount clockwise or inward. To DECREASE the valve timing turn the centre screw a small amount counter-clockwise or outward. Continue to cycle the AIRVAC valve check and adjust timing until satisfactory.

**REMEMBER:** If at any time a replacement or repaired controller is fitted to an AIRVAC valve, check and adjust the time cycle.

Remove vacuum gauge and re-connect hose to side check valve. Refit timer cover.

**NOTE:** Once an operator has developed his skill, the stop-watch will not be necessary. Simply count the seconds by saying 1001, 1002, 1003, etc.

**3.6.4 Sensor Setting**

The sensor setting of the AIRVAC controller/sensor unit is not adjustable and should be returned to AIRVAC for checking.

If there is real doubt about the performance of a controller/sensor a spare unit can be substituted and the operation level/timing compared. If this indicates a faulty controller/sensor AIRVAC should be consulted and the unit may require servicing.

**3.7 INSTALLATION AND COMMISSIONING****3.7.1 Vacuum Sewers**

The vacuum sewage collection system drawings include profiles, branch connections, location of division valves, crossovers (the connections from the sewer main to the AIRVAC valve) installation of the AIRVAC valve and valve pits.

Incorrect sewer installation and incorrect connections from the sewers to the AIRVAC valves will result in system malfunction and increase operation and maintenance costs.

Wye connections installed other than vertical to the main will cause flooding of the connection or branch sewer. A correctly installed AIRVAC system will require little maintenance.



**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****3.7.2 Valve Pit**

All seams in pit and pipe entrance holes must be tightly sealed to prevent ingress of ground water.

It is important that a sump be formed in the bottom of the buffer tank that has approximately 40 L capacity at a 300mm liquid height. Larger capacities may cause valve malfunction.

The 80mm suction elbow should be placed touching the base of sump and firmly anchored with at least two brackets to the side of the pit.

The 50mm sensor line should be 100 to 150mm from base of sump and firmly anchored to the pit.

Assemble 50mm sensor line using a section of 50mm pipe, chamfer both ends of pipe, install the 50mm AIRVAC sensor cap on one end. See Figure 2-7. Sensor line must be leak tested.

Cap the open end of pipe using no-hub clamp and plug made from a short piece of pipe with a cap glued on. Connect a 9mm hose to the sensor cap, apply air pressure, pinch off hose and connect to a 0-13 kPa magnehelic gauge. Test at 9.8 kPa. There should be zero leakage.

Gravity line stubs should have PVC caps glued in place outside the pit.

After pit installation, cap the 80mm PVC house service vacuum line to allow testing of the complete sewer.

The valve pit shall be hydrostatically tested for infiltration or exfiltration at this time. Method of testing depends upon ground conditions during testing period.

Leakage must be repaired before proceeding.

Install the AIRVAC breather unit as shown on the engineers drawings. For the standard outside breather, it is important that the breather line be laid with a slight fall towards the AIRVAC valve and be leak tested. See Figure 2-8.

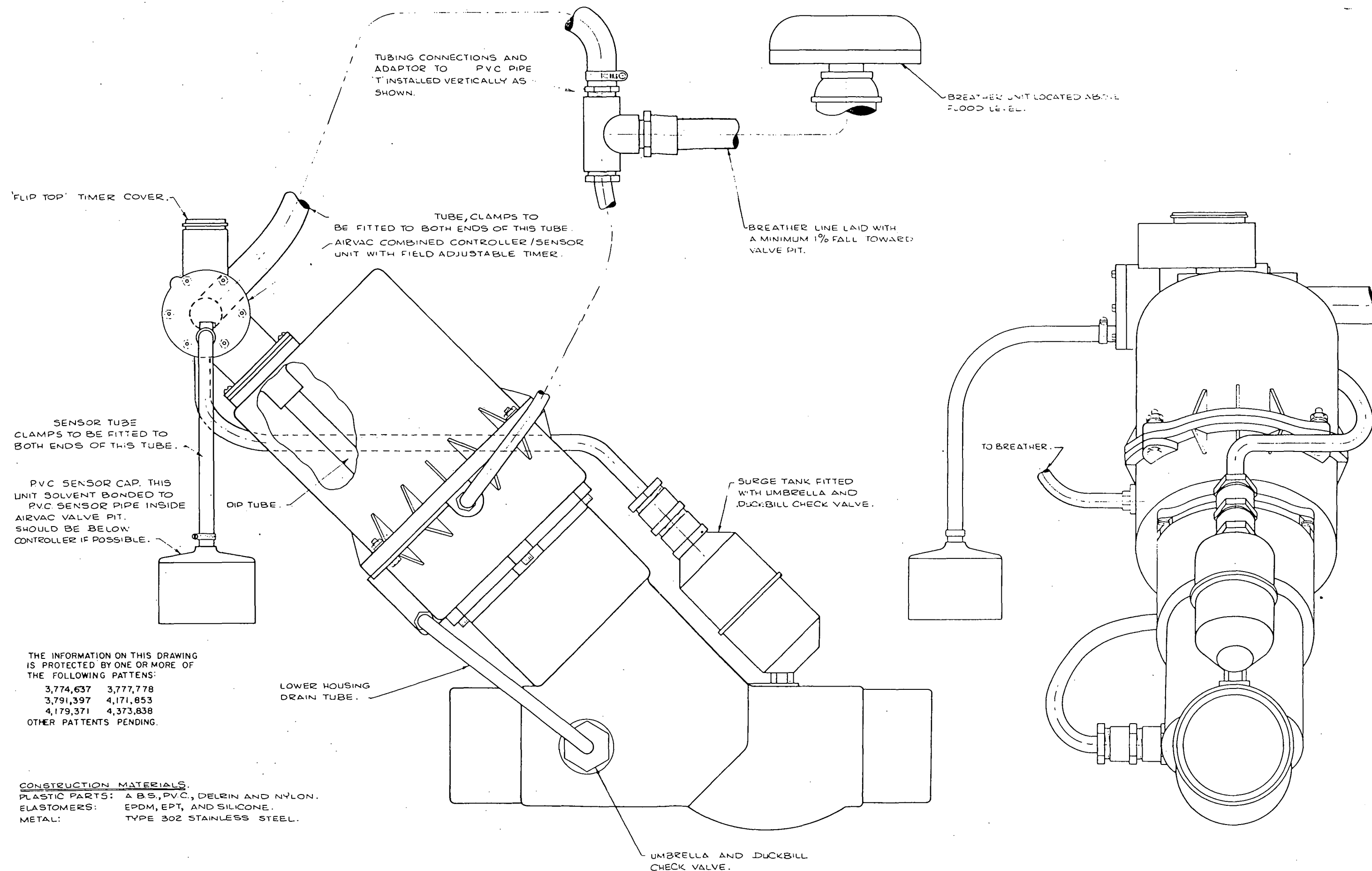
Fabricate a test pipe out of a short length of 20mm PVC pipe, one end fitted with a screwed male adaptor, the other with a cap to which 9mm tube adaptor is fitted.

Remove breather dome, Teflon tape the 20mm male fitting and fit the test pipe. Teflon tape the 12mm male connection in the pit and cap. Blow air by mouth or hand pump into 9mm tubing connected to test pipe, pinch tube to contain air and fit to HIGH port of 0-13 kPa magnehelic gauge, release pinched tube and test at 9.8 kPa for one minute. If pressure is constant, breather line is satisfactory. Should the gauge pressure drop more than 0.25 kPa per minute, remake joints and retest.

Installation is now ready for vacuum testing. After successful vacuum testing the final process is the installation of the AIRVAC valve.

**Section 3**





**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
 283 Penshurst Street,  
 Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
 Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

75mm AIRVAC VALVE

**FIGURE 2-1**





**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

Clean the o-ring groove, o-ring and lower housing sealing face. Replace the o-ring in the screw plug, realign with lower housing and replace six cap screws (Item 17). Replace the lower housing on the screw plug to the lower housing centre port (Figure 2-10). Replace and secure the six cap screws, lock-washers and nuts (Item 3, 4 & 17).

Install a new shaft seal (printed side up) (Item 15) and new bearing (Item 14). Secure the three screws (Item 13).

Coat valve shaft with silicone grease compound (Dow Corning #111) then install shaft with plunger and seat through seal and bearing. Screw on piston place to stop (Item 8). Clean and inspect valve diaphragm #DC-200 apply light coat of silicone oil then place on shaft. Replace piston cup washer and locknut (Item 6, 19 & 24). Tighten locknut until secure. It may be necessary to use two wooden blocks a C-clamp and vice to hold shaft between plunger and screw plug to enable tightening of locknut.

Replace the o-ring (Item 12) on the screw plug and tighten screw plug into clean wye body. Dow Corning #111 grease may be applied to o-ring and threads to ease assembly.

Turn the piston cup such that the "X" in the cup is diagonally at 45° and not vertical and horizontal. The dip tube in the upper housing protrudes into the cup vertically below the locknut.

Thus any leg of the "X" must not be in that position. If the "X" is aligned incorrectly and the valve is assembled and cycled the dip tube will be broken. This may be repaired by aligning the "X" correctly in the piston cup. Using ABS cement glue the dip tube where broken and allow to dry.

Align the spring (Item 5) in the upper housing and place the upper housing in place on the valve. Using spring clamps hold the upper housing to the lower housing. Then install four bolts, washers, lock-washers and nuts.

Apply vacuum to the upper housing and cycle the valve to seat spring and ensure correct operation.

Next test the lower housing and seal for leaks as follows: Refer to Figure 2-11.

Connect a 9 mm hose from the test-box valve testing barb to the lower housing barb of the valve. Be sure the other barb of 75 mm valve lower housing is either connected to the side check valve if present or capped.

Connect vacuum to test box and allow to rise to 35 kPa. Pinch off vacuum supply. The gauge must drop less than 0.8 kPa per minute. If the gauge drops apply vacuum to operator and place caps on both the lower housing spigots.

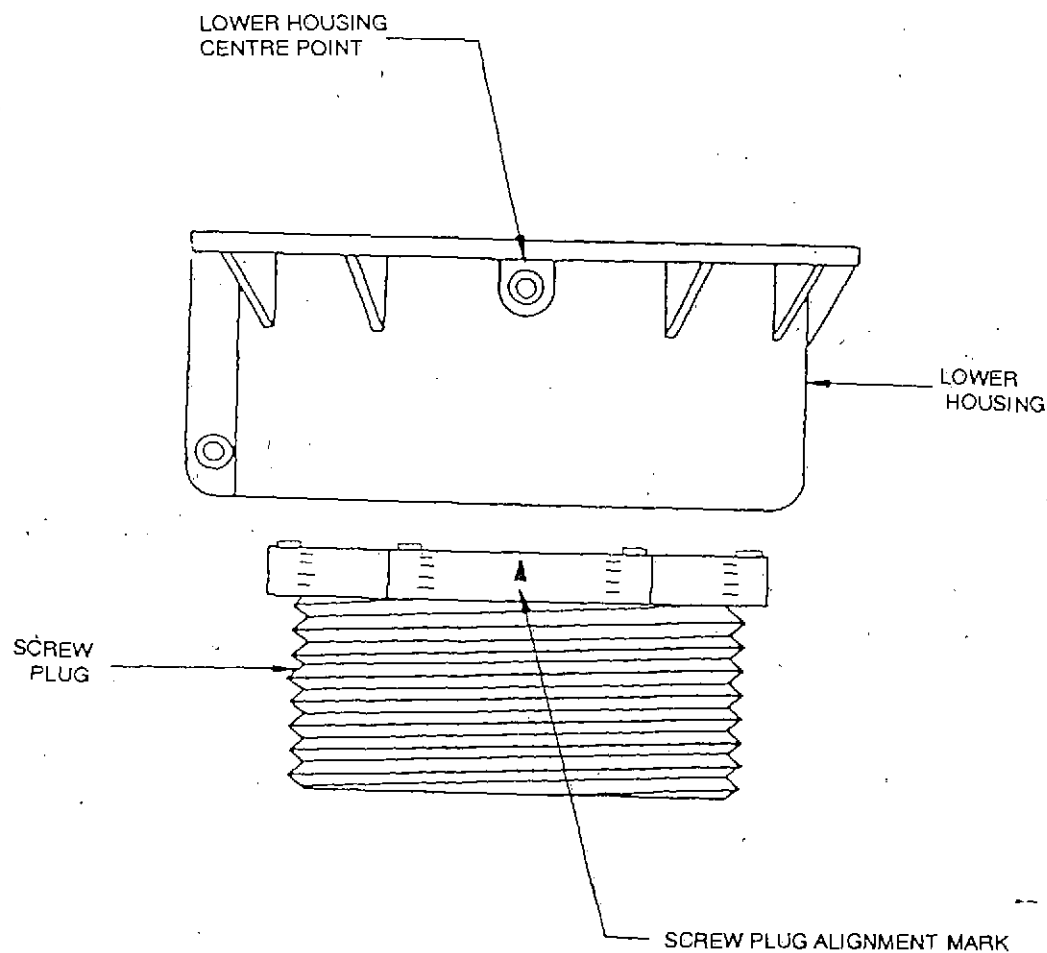
Remove vacuum from operator and immerse in water and watch for bubbles. If no bubbles emerge and it still leaks, then a leak is present from the upper housing to the lower housing. Check for loose nut on shaft in the upper housing.

Unscrew the check valve from the surge tank and dismantle. Wash parts in clean water. Reassemble check valve using new rubber parts.

Repeat above procedure for the lower housing drain check valve. Put Teflon tape on both check valves and install on surge tank and wye body.

**Section 3**





ALIGN LOWER HOUSING CENTER PORT WITH ARROW ON SCREW PLUG THEN BOLT TOGETHER LATEST MODEL SCREW PLUGS, HAVE LOCATING PINS TO PREVENT MISALIGNMENT.

**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

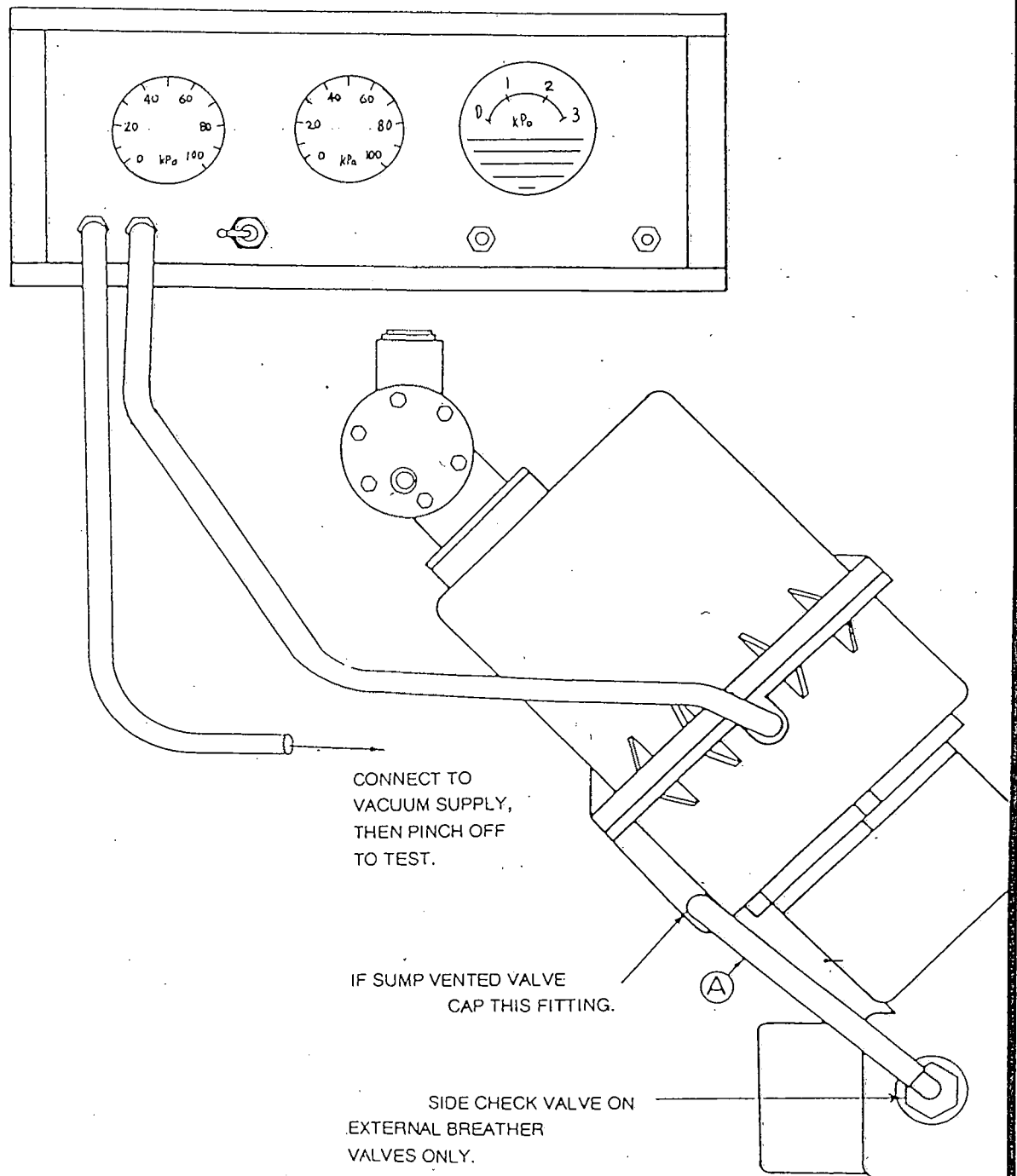
Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

PROCEDURE FOR ATTACHING SCREW  
PLUG TO LOWER HOUSING

**FIGURE 2-10**

TESTBOX SET TO VALVE TESTING



ALLOW VACUUM TO RISE TO 35 kPa AND PINCH OFF SUPPLY. MAXIMUM LEAKAGE 0.8 kPa PER MINUTE. IF A LEAK IS PRESENT, PINCH TUBE AT A. TO ISOLATE CHECK VALVE PRESENT.

**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

LOWER HOUSING TIGHTNESS TEST

**FIGURE 2-11**

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

Clean 6 mm nylon nipple on the surge tank. Apply Teflon tape and refit to the wye body.

Fit a new or re-built controller to the valve using three hex screws. No silicone sealant is necessary when installing the controller.

Connect the 9 mm hose from the side check valve to the lower housing connection. Connect vacuum to the controller and cycle valve. Connect 9 mm hose from surge tank to vacuum connection of controller.

Perform complete valve test (Figure 2-12). Connect hose from test-box to testing tee and connect to controller and valve ports. Connect vacuum and allow to rise to 35 kPa then pinch off supply. Gauge should not drop over 0.8 kPa per minute. If the leak continues, check for a leak in the lower housing, controller, or a missing o-ring on the controller. Return valve to inventory.

### **3.8.2 AIRVAC 50 mm Valve (one only/pump station)**

#### **3.8.2.1 Yearly Maintenance**

No actual valve maintenance is required on a yearly basis. The valve installation and its operation should be inspected once a year as a trouble-shooting procedure. Check for dirt or water in controller valve or tubes. Cycle the valve preferably by running water and monitor the operation. Check valve timing and adjust if necessary.

#### **50 mm AIRVAC Valve Disassembly and Rebuilding**

The valve should be removed and inspected for wear every 10 years. Rebuilding typically required ½ hour to perform and involves replacing the valve seat (AV2-10RSO) shaft seal (AVD-S-83) and check valve rubber umbrellas (AVRU-2).

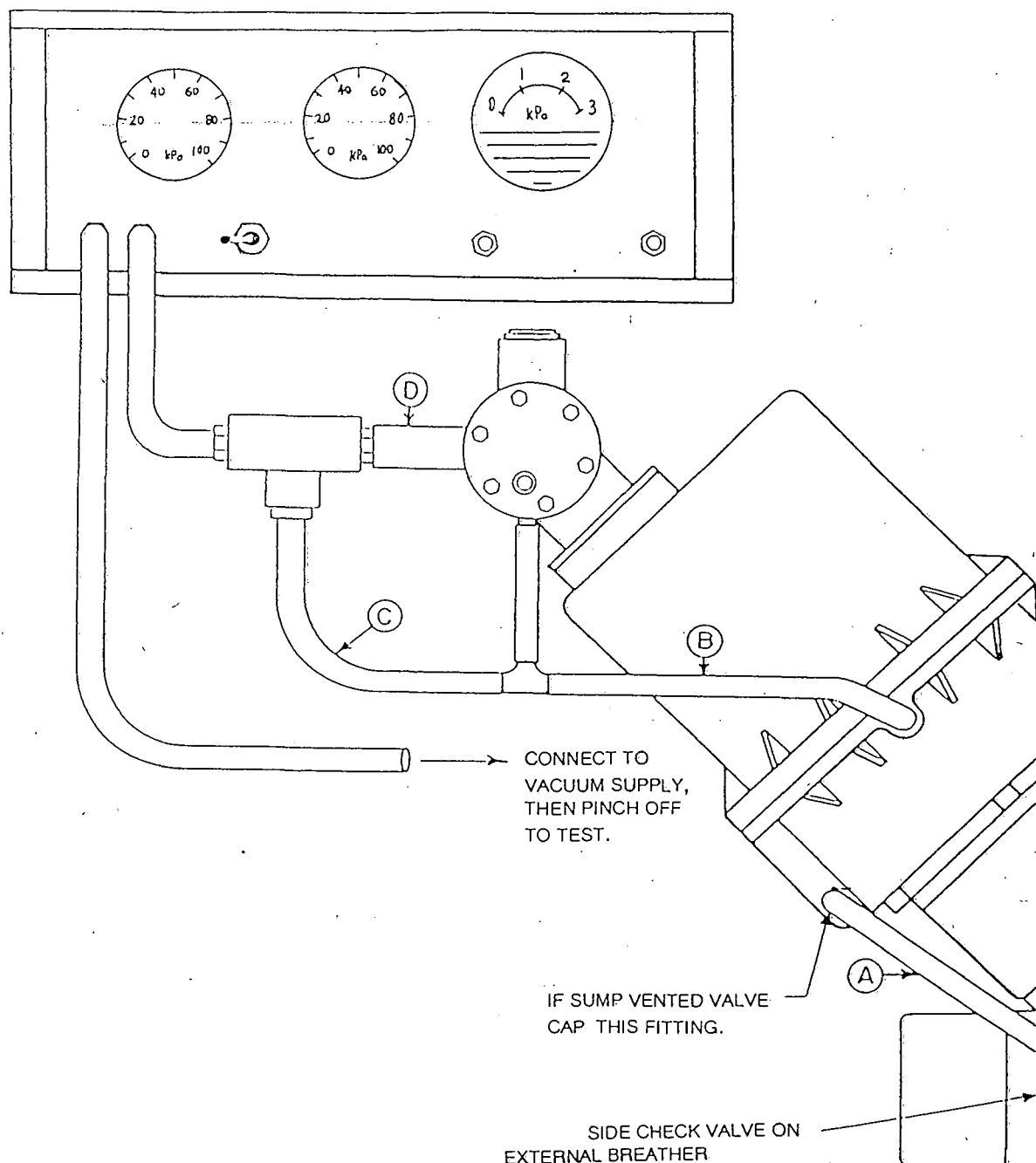
In the workshop first cap the controller spigots and wash the valve. Next remove the vacuum line controller four nuts bolts washers and lock-washers (Item 2, 3, 4 & 12 Figure 2-9) the upper housing (Item 1) and lower housing (Item 11). Remove the locking bolt and the washer securing the diaphragm and cup to the shaft (Item 8, 9 & 10). Pull the shaft out downward through the lower housing (Item 17). To remove the seat remove the locking bolt first (Item 7).

To remove the shaft seal first remove four bolts, shaft seal retainer plate rubber gasket and shaft seal (Items 13, 14, 15 & 16).

All parts should be cleaned prior to re-assembly. Check the shaft for nicks which could cause sticking or seal leakage. Use a fine sandpaper if necessary. Clean any build-up in the bearing area of the lower housing and the umbrella check valve holes.

The rubber umbrella check valve and the shaft seal should also be replaced at this time (Item 13 & 22). A silicone grease lubricant (Dow Corning #111) is available from AIRVAC and should be used on shaft when reassembling. A dry Teflon lubricant (Fluoroglide) was used on the rolling diaphragm at the factory this may be replaced with a silicone oil coating by washing the diaphragm thoroughly in laundry detergent then applying a thin film of #DC-200 silicone oil by hand.

# TESTBOX SET TO VALVE TESTING



ALLOW VACUUM TO RISE TO 35 kPa AND PINCH OFF SUPPLY. MAXIMUM LEAKAGE 0.8 kPa PER MINUTE. IF A LEAK IS PRESENT, PINCH TUBES AT A, B, C, D TO ISOLATE AREA.

## **AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
203 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

## **VALVE TIGHTNESS TEST**

**FIGURE 2-12**





Re-assembly is in reverse order of disassembly. It may be necessary to rotate the shaft to get proper seating of the valve seat. After re-assembly connect vacuum and cycle the valve to check operation. Install an AIRVAC controller/sensor unit on the valve. To perform the lower housing leak test and complete valve leak test follow the steps outlined in the AIRVAC 75 mm valve section (Figures 2-11 & 2-12).

### **3.9 COLLECTION STATION**

Specific preventative maintenance procedures for vacuum pumps and sewage pumps is given elsewhere.

General maintenance items for the collection station are as follows:

#### **3.9.1 Monthly**

Test all alarm systems including auto dialler. Test cycle the AIRVAC sump valve.

Check control panel lights

Check all motor couplings tighten set screws etc. if required.

### **3.10. MODEL 5 - AIRVAC CONTROLLER/SENSOR UNIT OPERATION & MAINTENANCE**

The AIRVAC controller/sensor unit is designed and manufactured by AIRVAC and has been in operation since December 1980. It has proven to be an extremely reliable unit. We recommend in the event of problems with controller/sensor that you substitute a unit known to be operating satisfactorily and if this corrects the problem the faulty unit be sent to us for repair.

#### **3.10.1 AIRVAC Controller Installation**

The AIRVAC 50 mm sensor cap should be installed and pressure tested. To pressure test, cap opposite end of sensor line then connect a 9 mm tube to the sensor cap and "T" in a 0-15 kPa magnehelic gauge. Blow or pump air into the 9 mm tube and cap. The line should be tested at 13 kPa for one minute. If the gauge pressure drops remake joint and retest.

Connect the 9mm tube from 50mm sensor cap to sensor port on controller put hose clamps on both ends of this hose. This tube must be clean and preferably not have any traps. The 50mm sensor cap should be lower than the controller. When the 50mm sensor cap is installed in an in-line installation the 9mm tube must not have any traps and be a minimum of 600mm long.

Mount the breather tee to the valve pit wall slightly higher than the controller. Connect a 9 mm tube from 9 mm connection on breather unit to the 9 mm connection on the side of the valve. Connect a 16 mm tube with two clamps from the breather unit to the 16 mm connection on the end of the controller. There must not be any kinks in this tube and it should not have any traps from the breather to the controller.

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

To set the controller timing install a "T" and vacuum gauge in the tube going to the side check valve (not possible for sump vented valves). Have a stop-watch ready. Run water into the gravity line to operate the valve. When the valve cycles the vacuum gauge will rise to line vacuum while liquid is going through the valve (time this period). Then the gauge will drop to about 17 kPa until the valve closes while air is being taken.

The air time should be equal to the liquid time. First measure the time it took to admit the liquid then adjust the needle valve under the cover on the controller until the total valve open time is twice the time it took to admit the liquid.

A chart is enclosed which is approximate for most cases (Figure 2-2). Measure the vacuum available then check the chart for the minimum timing required. In cases where the valve has a lift in front of it the timing may have to be increased to increase the air to liquid ratio.

To check the sensor setting cycle the controller disconnect the 9 mm tube from the controller to the 50 mm sensor cap. Connect 9 mm tubes to the test-box sensor setting test (Figure 2-5). Slowly blow into the tube watching the magnehelic gauge. When the controller cycles the sensor setting should be in the range 1-1.5 kPa.

Another method of cycling the controller is to pinch the sensor hose then fold it towards the controller until the valve cycles.

### **3.10.2 AIRVAC Controller/Sensor Unit in the Standby Position (Figure 2-15)**

The sensor diaphragm has less than 1 kPa of pressure (Port A).

The sensor seat is sealed by spring force and vacuum, therefore no air is flowing through the air passage into Chamber A.

The vacuum has been equalised in Chamber A & B by the needle valve and orifice; each of which are connected to line vacuum through the open check valve. Spring force holds the three-way valve closed to vacuum.

AIRVAC valve Port C is open to the atmosphere Port D but no air is flowing.

### **3.10.3 AIRVAC Controller/Sensor Unit in the Switched Position (Figure 2-16)**

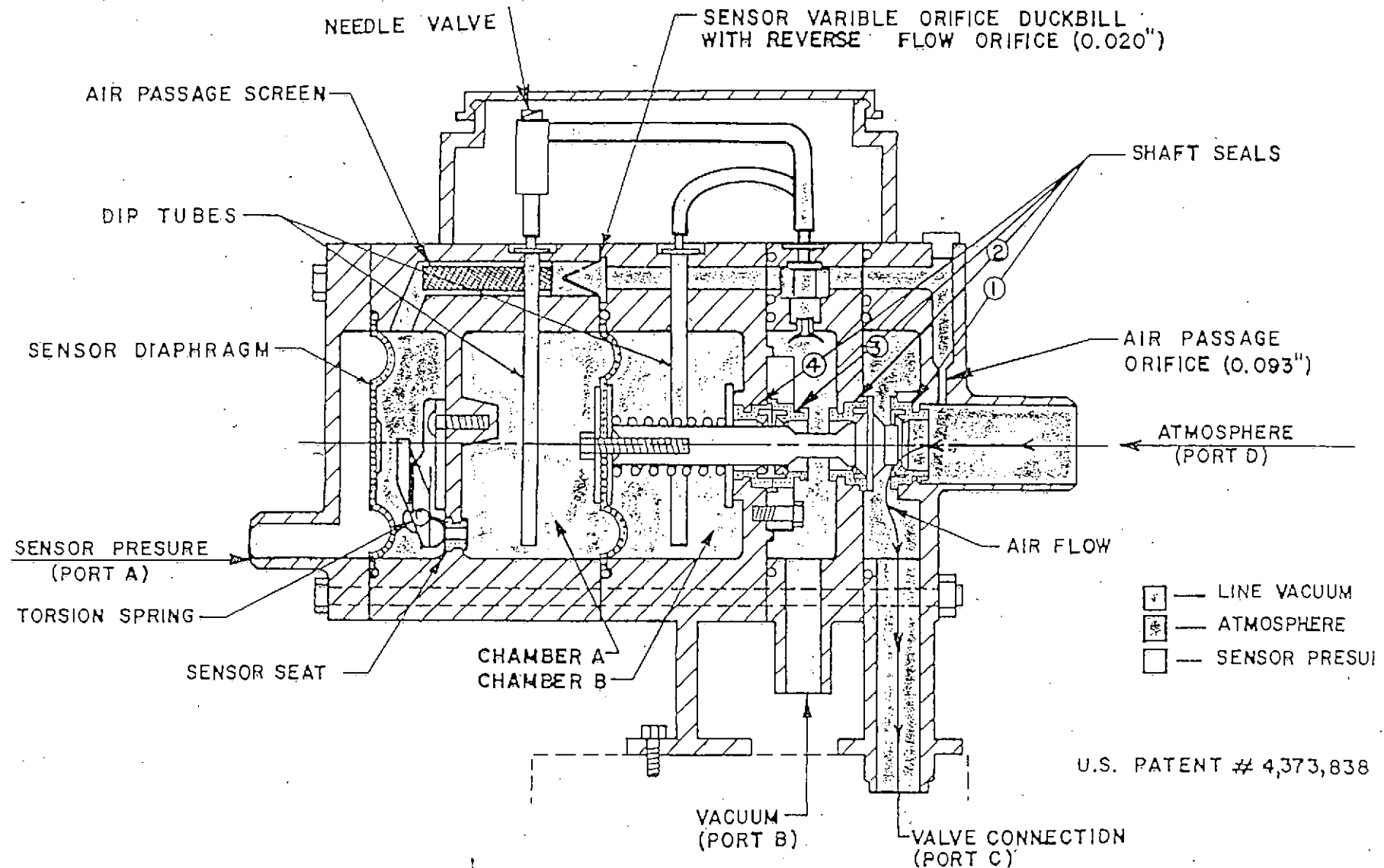
The sensor pressure (Port A) increased closing the gap between the diaphragm and the lever. When the pressure reaches 1.1 kPa the diaphragm pushes the lever lifting the sensor seat. This allows atmospheric air to enter Chamber A from the air passage through the sensor seat.

The vacuum not being equalised across the three-way valve diaphragm causes the diaphragm to be pulled to the right. This opens the vacuum passage and closes the atmosphere Port D.

This allows vacuum (Port B) to pass through the vacuum passage in the shaft to Port C opening the AIRVAC valve.

The sensor pressure immediately drops closing off the sensor seat and air flow through the air passage.





**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

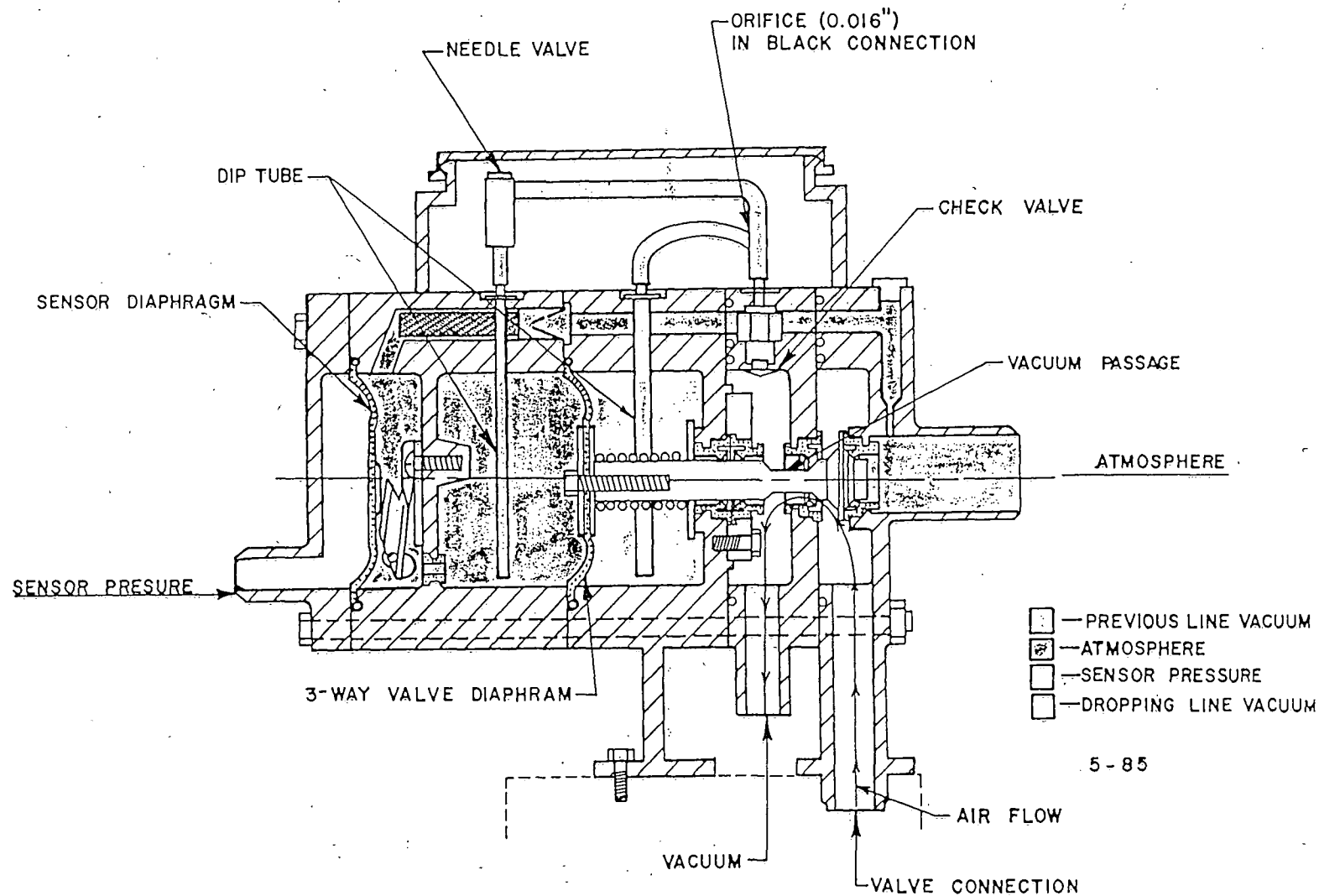
Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

**STANDBY POSITION  
CONTROLLER/SENSOR UNIT**

**FIGURE 2-15**





U.S. PATENT # 4,373,838

**AIR/VAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

**SWITCHED POSITION  
CONTROLLER/SENSOR UNIT**

**FIGURE 2-16**

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

The check valve closes due to dropping line vacuum and Chamber A equalises to Chamber B vacuum through the needle valve and 0.4 mm orifice.

When the vacuum is equalised in Chamber A & B the three-way valve diaphragm shifts back to the left closing the vacuum passage.

Port D is again open and air flows through to Port C which closes the AIRVAC valve. It is now in the standby position.

**3.10.4 Minor Parts****3.10.4.1 Sensor Port A**

Sensor Port A is positioned low to allow draining of condensation back through the sensor line.

**3.10.4.2 Vacuum Port B**

Vacuum Port B is also positioned low to allow moisture to be drawn out of the Chamber. This is also the reason why the sensor seat is positioned as low as possible.

**3.10.4.3 Duckbill**

The purpose of the duckbill in the sensor air passage is to cause an instantaneous vacuum under the sensor diaphragm when the sensor seat is lifted. Therefore allowing Chamber A to come to atmospheric pressure.

**3.10.4.4 Dip Tube**

The purpose of the dip tube is to remove moisture from Chamber A through the needle valve and vacuum Port B.

**3.10.4.5 Orifice Chamber B**

The purpose of the orifice on Chamber B is so that when vacuum is first connected to a controller it is not caused to cycle and so that after a valve cycles the rapidly rising vacuum will not cause a second cycle.

**3.10.4.6 Sensor Surge Suppressor**

The purpose of the AIRVAC sensor surge suppressor is to prevent air flow into the holding tank from setting off the sensor when the AIRVAC valve suddenly closes.

**3.10.4.7 Reverse Flow Orifice**

The purpose of the reverse flow orifice in the sensor variable orifice duckbill is so that as the sensor pressure rises and pushes the sensor diaphragm the air under the sensor diaphragm is allowed to be pushed back through the air passage and the reverse flow orifice.





**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****3.10.4.8 Umbrella Check Valve**

The purpose of the umbrella check valve is to isolate the controller from the dropping line vacuum while the valve is open and give consistent valve timing.

**3.11 AIRVAC CONTROLLER/SENSOR UNIT REPAIR**

This section is provided by way of information only.

For average cycling valve (under 250 cycles per day) the controller should be removed and inspected for wear every five years. The controller should be replaced and returned to the workshop.

Rebuilding typically requires ½ hour to perform and involves replacing the shaft seal (AC 22) greasing the shaft and cleaning all components. The vent connection filter (AC 48) should be replaced on exterior vented valves.

**3.11.1 Controller Repair**

The first step is to clean the exterior of all dirt, etc. This may be done by loosening the timer box capping the tubing connections then immersing the controller in water and cleaning.

The controller should then be fully disassembled cleaned and dried. Use a damp rag to wipe off rubber parts such as check valve and sensor seat etc. Also clean off sensor lever sealing surface controller shaft and check valve sealing surface.

Disassemble needle valve and clean tip of needle if any black build-up is visible. The body may be cleaned by using a damp piece of paper towel on the end of a wire being careful not to damage the seat.

Blow out needle valve body and all tubing. Also blow out all plastic parts and connections before reassembling controller.

Blow air through air passage screen to remove any accumulated particles. If necessary screen may be removed by threading a controller body bolt in then pulling out the filter.

Check that 0.4 mm orifice in tubing connection to Chamber B is clear.

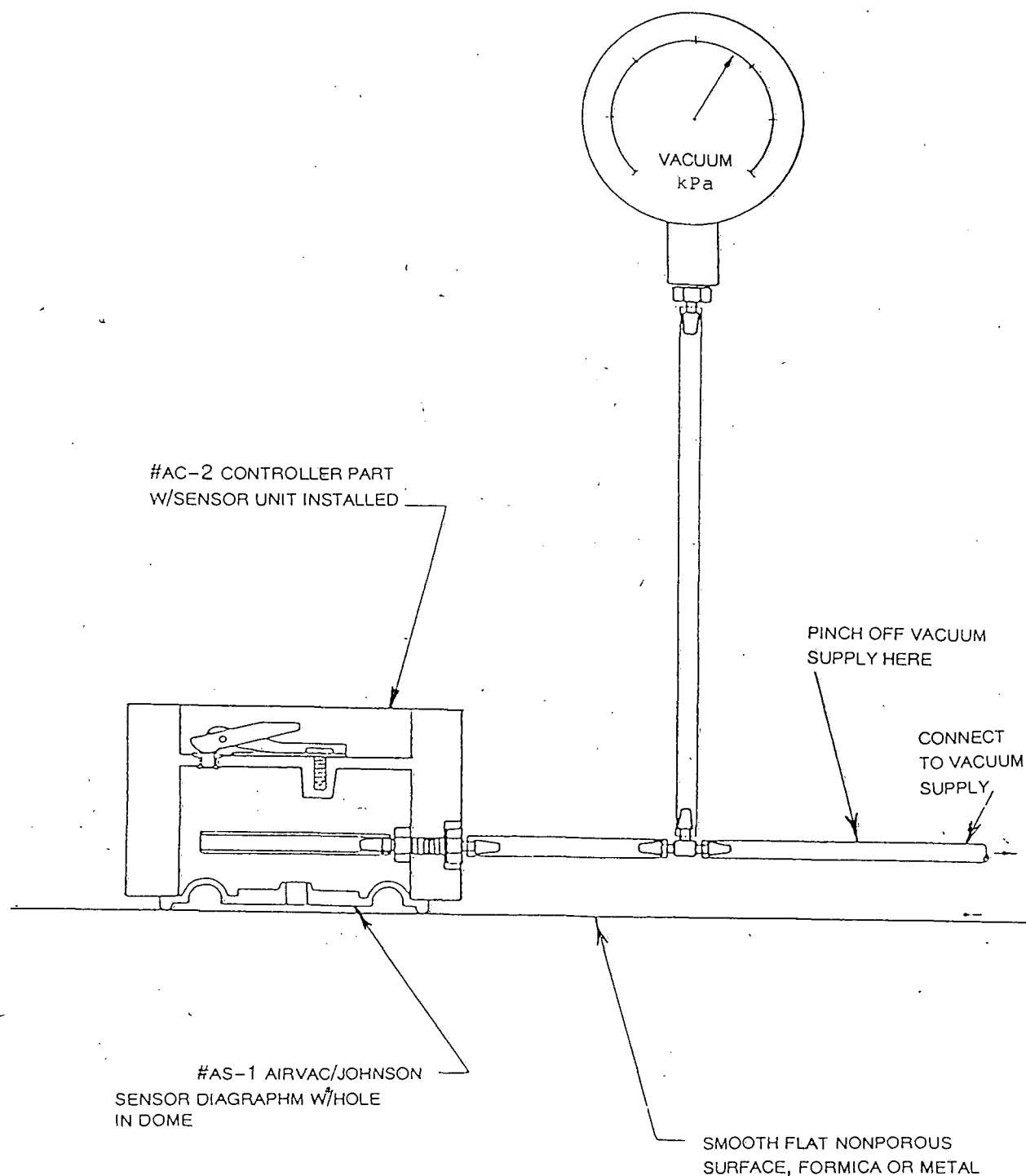
The umbrella check valve must be installed fully with no dirt on check valve or mating surface.

Reassemble sensor unit first and perform sensor seat leakage test before finishing assembly.

**3.11.2 Sensor Seat Leakage Test**

Assemble Part #AC-2 sensor seat and sensor lever unit of controller and connect as in the diagram (Figure 2-17). The Chamber A which you are testing for leakage is best sealed for testing by using a #ASP-1 surge suppressor diaphragm.





**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

**SENSOR SEAT LEAKAGE  
TEST DIAGRAM**

**FIGURE 2-17**



**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

The clean diaphragm should be placed upon a smooth clean surface. The Chamber A should be placed over the diaphragm with the gauge and vacuum already connected. Depress the lever a couple of times then allow the gauge to rise to match your vacuum supply.

Next pinch off the vacuum supply tube with needle nose pliers. Watch the gauge while holding the vacuum supply pinched. If the gauge does not move at all in a 10 second period tap the sensor lever to lower the vacuum in the timing volume to 17 kPa. Now with 17 kPa in the timing volume and the vacuum supply pinched watch the gauge again for any movement in a 10 second interval. If there is no leakage it is okay for use. If it does not pass either test (the vacuum dropped) there is a leak in one of three places.

The sensor lever is not sealing on the rubber seat. In the very early models the sensor unit is adjustable on the sensor seat. This must be aligned and tested as above until it passes.

A loose or cracked tubing spigot.

The #ASP-1 surge suppressor diaphragm or testing surface is not sealing properly. Clean the diaphragm and surfaces or try another diaphragm. Factory experience indicates the #ASP-1 diaphragm seals very easily. Whenever the sensor unit is removed from the #AC-2 controller part the above test should be performed when reassembling to be sure of correct operation.

Next reassemble the three-way valve. Replace any shaft seals that look worn ('v' sealing lip is not sharp). Insert shaft through seal in Part #AC 4 then through two seals in Part #AC 3 (Chamber B). Next apply a very thin film of Fluorosilicone grease Dow Corning Part #FS-3451 to whole shaft visible within Chamber B. Next place fingers on each end of shaft and oscillate within seals to lubricate seals and shaft (Figure 2-18).

If grease is not applied as above unnecessary dirt build-up may result and cause sticking of shaft and premature wear of seals.

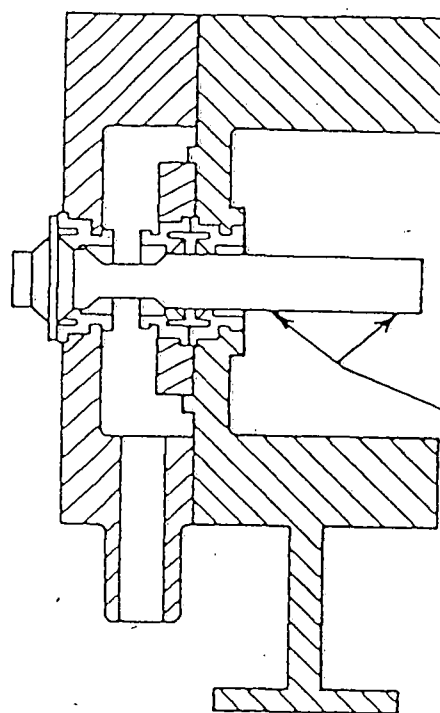
Finish valve assembly and seals etc., into other parts. To finish assembly use a controller assembly jig which is supplied with the AIRVAC controller test-box. Stack the parts on it: Part #AC5 first (breather connection) then valve assembly etc. Three body bolts should then be installed and tightened 10cm Kg. before controller is removed from jig. Install remaining bolts connect tubes to timer box and controller is ready for testing.

After controller passes all tests timer box must be rotated ½ turn to prevent kinking of tubing when re-installed.

### **3.11.3 Water Effects**

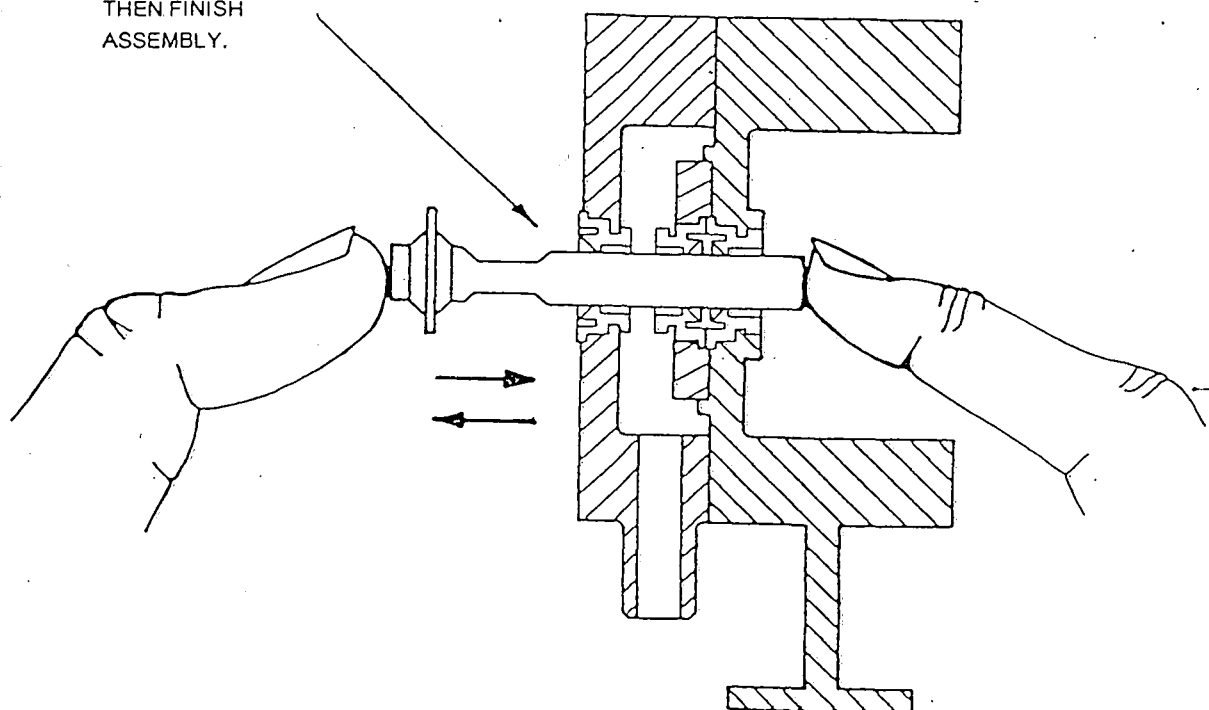
As water enters the breather line it first encounters the "T" where water will flow down the line to the lower housing where it will be sucked out when the valve cycles. Some liquid may run into the 16mm line to the controller (Figure 2-15).

The liquid will enter the atmosphere port and flow down the valve connection into the valve bonnet where it will be sucked out when the valve cycles.



ASSEMBLE PART AC3,4,  
SHAFTSEALS AND SHAFT  
AS SHOWN THEN APPLY  
A VERY THIN FILM OF  
FLUOROSILICONE GREASE.

NEXT OSCILLATE SHAFT  
BETWEEN SEALS TO  
COAT SURFACES OF  
SHAFT AND SEALS.  
THEN FINISH  
ASSEMBLY.



**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

PROPER METHOD OF APPLYING  
GREASE TO CONTROLLER SHAFT

**FIGURE 2-18**

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

If the atmosphere port is filled when the controller cycles some liquid will be pulled through the air passage through the sensor and into Chamber A.

The liquid will be taken out by the dip tube in Chamber A through the needle valve. Liquid has a higher viscosity and therefore the controller will have a long cycle while removing the liquid. The liquid flows out of the needle valve through the tubing and out the check valve. Some liquid will return by other tube and go into Chamber B.

The liquid in Chamber B will not do any harm. The AIRVAC controller has a dip tube within Chamber B to remove any water. This works by removing the water after the valve is pulled up the dip tube through the check valve and out the 9 mm vacuum supply tube.

If a PVC breather line is improperly laid with reverse fall a trap in the line could collect water. When the valve cycles the controller would operate properly the valve will open and the side check valve will also open.

The side check valve will be pulling air through the "T" and against the trapped liquid. If there is over 75 mm of liquid in the trap then approximately 0.74 kPa of vacuum will be put on the controller and in turn on the sensor diaphragm. This vacuum will hold the controller open until the liquid is removed or the breather is disconnected.

The 16 mm breather tube must not be allowed to hang lower than the top of the 75 mm line. Otherwise too much liquid can collect in the pocket and cause a continuous cycle as previously discussed.

In some installations the breather "T" may be lower than the controller. This is not the recommended installation but it will function, though it will not be able to handle as much water if the breather line leaks. As water builds in the breather "T" it can start to rise up the 9 mm lower housing drain tube and the 16 mm controller breather tube.

As the sensor pressure rises it pushes the sensor diaphragm and it will be pushing air out the air passage and breather tube and against the water there.

The resistance of this water will cause the sensor setting to rise in proportion of the level of the water in the 16 mm tube. The controller will cycle and the water will be removed by the lower housing drain and the controller. A small amount may be splashed into the controller air passage where it will be removed upon the next cycle.

#### **3.11.4 Dirt Effects**

The only way dirt may enter the controller is through the 16mm breather connection with the atmospheric air or with water if present.

After entering the breather connection it must pass through the air passage where the air passage screen filter will trap larger particles. Any continuing particles flow to the sensor seat and through when the sensor is triggered. From there they are pulled up the dip tube through the needle valve and check valve then out the vacuum line.

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

A large accumulation of dirt particles can cause clogging of the air passage filter which will hold the controller open. To clean thread a controller body bolt into filter and pull out then blow off. Re-install until flange hits step in hole.

If sufficient dirt particles build up on sensor seat or lever seat will leak causing long time cycles or controller not to close. Remove and clean with a damp rag then re-install and test.

Over a period of time dirt may build up on the needle valve. This will lengthen the set time cycle. If any water is pulled into the controller it is likely some dirt particles will be in the water which may restrict the needle valve. To clean remove needle valve and clean all surfaces of tip with a damp rag. Wind a small piece of paper towel on a small wire (0.7 mm diameter approximately) dampen and rotate in the needle valve body to clean the seat. Blow out with air pressure and re-install needle valve.

A 16 mm vent connection filter and filter bushing (part #AC48, AC47) (see Figure 2-19) are supplied with 'D' model valves (exterior breather). This is a moulded filter that filters the air going to the controller circuitry only, not air flow to the valve. Its purpose is to prevent dirt build-up on the sensor seat and in the needle valve yet allow water flow if present.

### **3.11.5 AIRVAC Controller Testing**

Following are the procedures for testing a controller including an explanation of what is being tested.

After each explanation there is a separate diagram for each test showing the proper procedure and allowable leak rates.

A condensed testing procedure sheet is also included which may be pinned up on your test bench.

#### **3.11.5.1 Component Testing**

Remove the screws from the timer box to expose the tubing.

Connect the vacuum gauges to Chamber A & B (Figure 2-20)

Connect vacuum to the controller

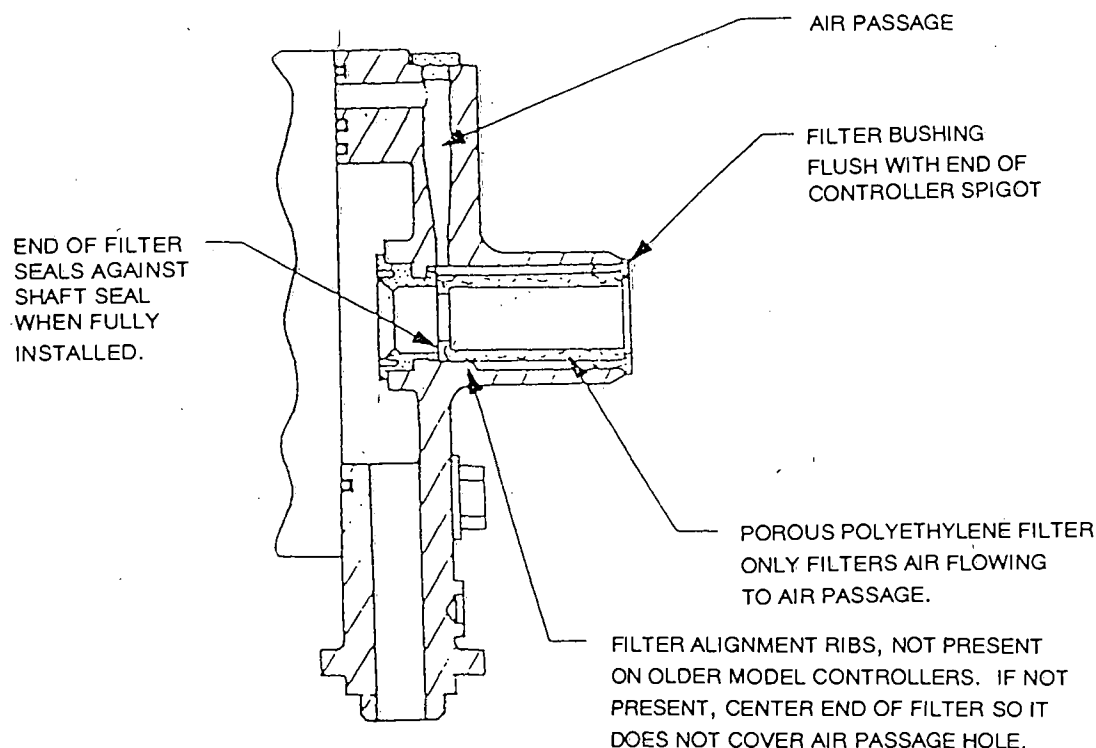
Apply pressure to sensor port to trigger controller. Always cover valve connection while controller is cycling for proper readings. When the controller cycles Chamber A vacuum should drop to 0 kPa. immediately. Chamber B vacuum should remain at line vacuum.

#### **3.11.5.2 Sensor Setting**

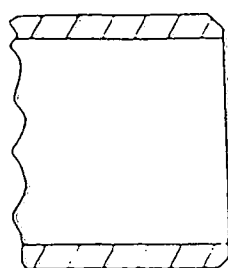
Apply pressure to sensor port through test-box while watching magnehelic gauge. Sensor setting should be between 1-1.5 kPa water gauge. If under 1 kPa check sensor seat for leak (Test C). If over 1.5 kPa change diaphragm or sensor lever unit.



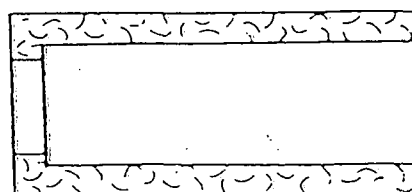
AIRVAC CONTROLLER 16mm VENT CONNECTION FILTER TO BE USED ONLY ON ABOVE GROUND BREATHER VALVES (NOT SUMP VENTED VALVES). COMES STANDARD WITH ALL 'D' MODEL AIRVAC VALVES AND CONTROLLERS WHERE 'D' MODEL VALVES ARE IN USE.



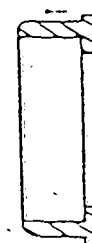
AIRVAC CONTROLLER  
16mm VENT CONNECTION



PART #AC48, 16mm VENT  
CONNECTION POLYETHYLENE  
FILTER



PART #AC47  
FILTER BUSHING



INSTALLATION: 1) PUSH FILTER BUSHING ONTO FILTER; 2) PUSH UNIT INTO CONTROLLER SPIGOT, TAP FILTER BUSHING FULLY INTO PLACE. CAUTION: REVERSING FILTER MAY CAUSE DOUBLE CYCLING OF VALVE.

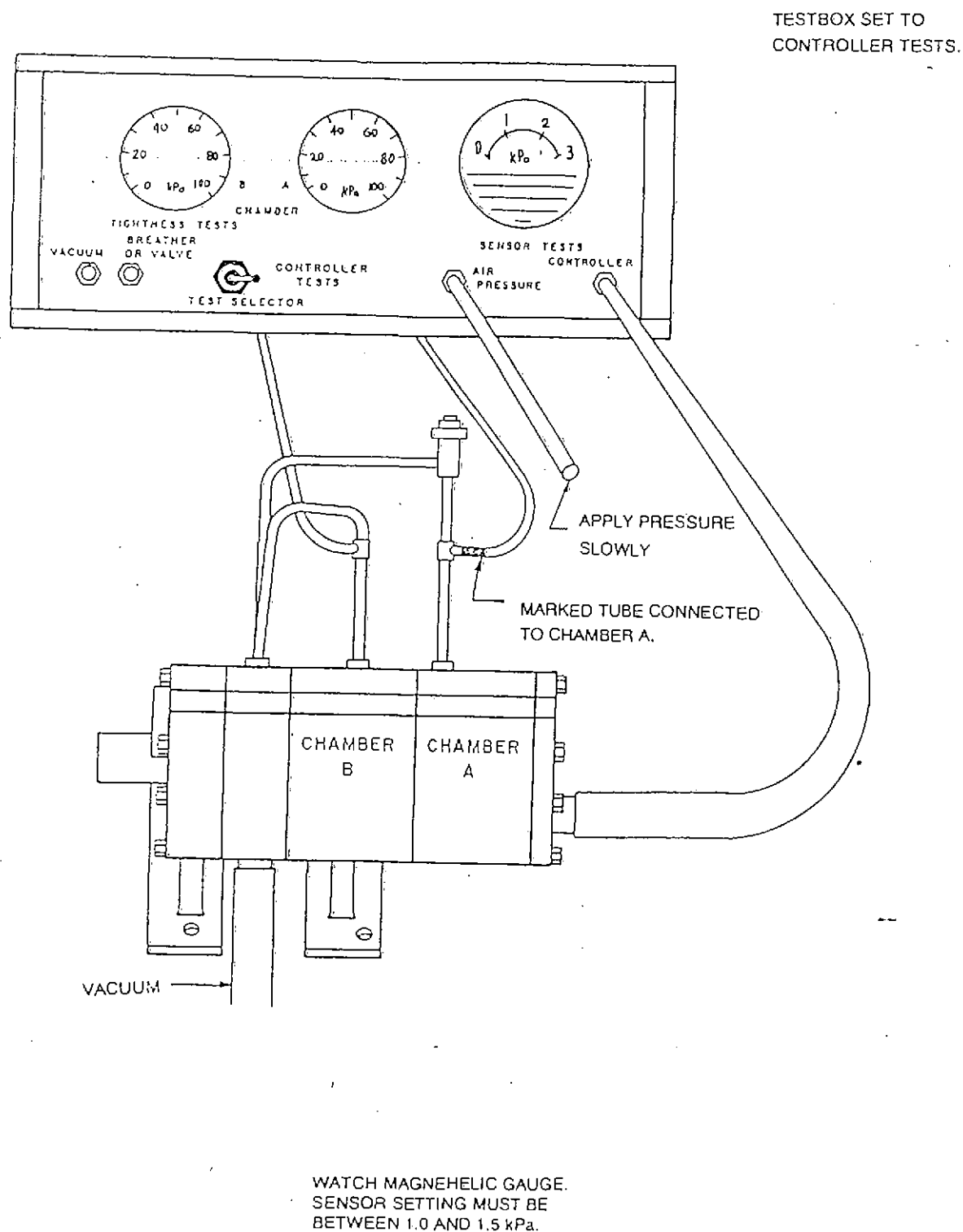
**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

**VENT CONVECTION FILTER**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

**FIGURE 2-19**



**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

SENSOR SETTING TEST

**FIGURE 2-20**

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****3.11.5.3 Sensor Variable Orifice Duckbill**

If pressure is applied very slowly to the sensor port just before the controller cycles Chamber A vacuum may slowly begin to drop. At some point Chamber A vacuum will suddenly go to 0 kPa. This gap where Chamber A vacuum slowly begins to drop until it triggers should always be less than 10 kPa. (Figures 2-21 & 2-22). This gap is controlled by the sensor variable orifice duckbill. If it is larger the duckbill is not completely closing or is damaged.

In the sensor variable orifice duckbill there is a 0.5 mm diameter hole punched in one of the angled faces. If this hole is blocked the sensor will not trigger. The reason is that there is a volume of air trapped between the sensor diaphragm and the sensor duckbill. As pressure is put on the sensor port the sensor diaphragm is pushing against this trapped volume of air and creating pressure in that volume. This will vastly increase the sensor setting. If the air passage orifice is blocked it can also cause the same condition by trapping an air volume.

The air passage orifice is 2.4 mm diameter and if it is partially blocked the sensor can trigger but not enough air may be admitted to allow the Chamber A vacuum to drop to 0 kPa and for the sensor to close (a vacuum may be maintained under the sensor diaphragm).

The needle valve setting will determine just how much the air passage orifice may be blocked before affecting the operation. For example if the air passage is blocked to Ø1 mm and the controller was set for a 10 second timing it would operate fine. If the needle valve was then opened for a shorter timing there would not be enough air flow and the controller would hold open.

**3.11.5.4 Chamber A**

Pinch the Chamber A tube under the needle valve (closing the needle valve will have the same effect). When pinched the Chamber A vacuum should not drop. If it does drop the sensor lever is not sealing the rubber sensor seat 0.3 kPa maximum leakage is allowed.

**3.11.5.5 Valve Diaphragm**

Again pinch off the same connection as above. Now apply pressure to the sensor port. The controller will cycle and the Chamber A vacuum should go to 0 kPa and not rise (approximately 1.6 kPa may register on the gauge, but it should not continue to rise). If it does rise the valve diaphragm is defective or loose.

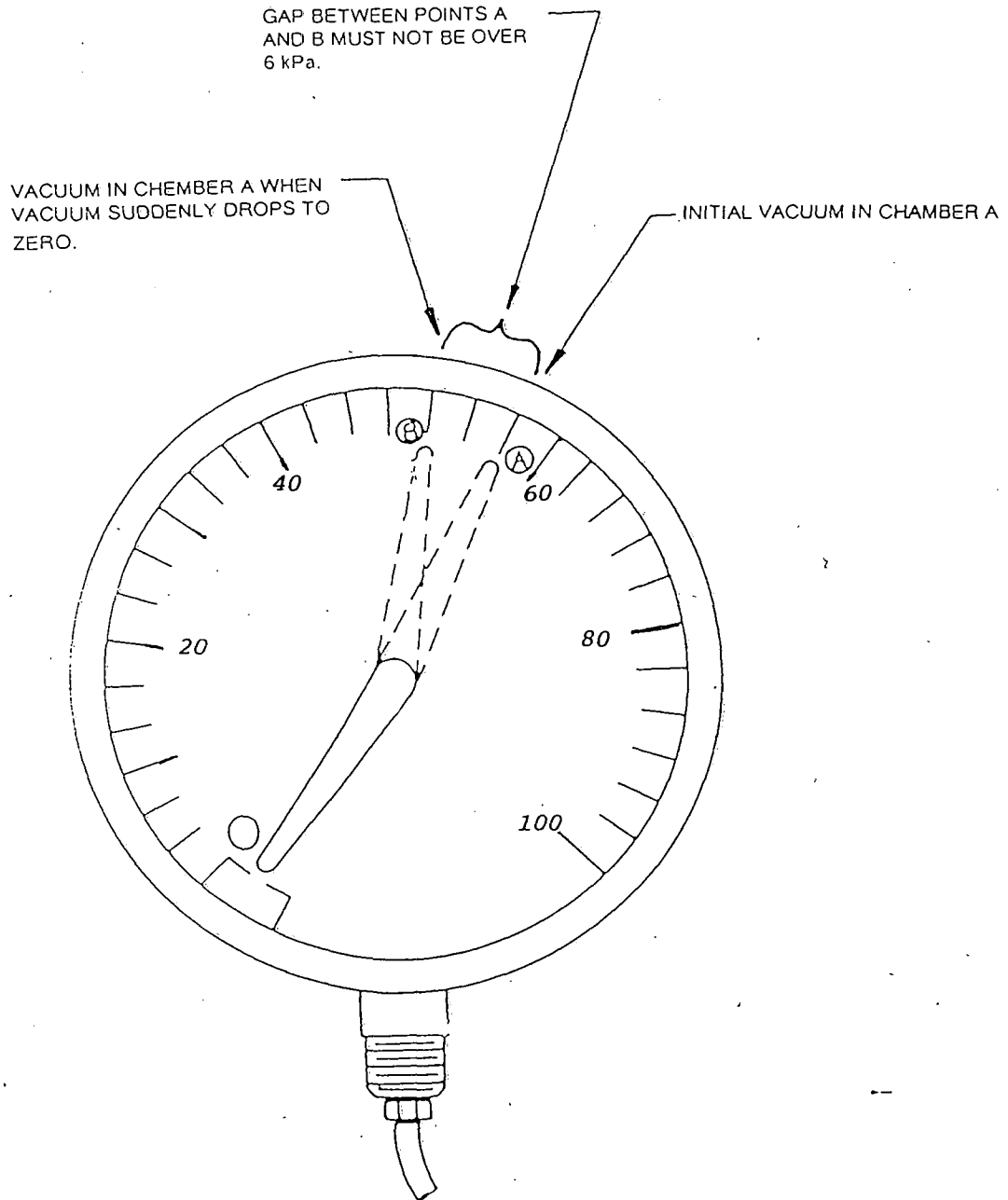
**3.11.5.6 Third Seal**

Disconnect 1.5 mm tube from Chamber B at vacuum chamber. Chamber B gauge will drop to zero. Pinch off hose with needle nose pliers and re-connect hose to vacuum chamber with hose pinched. Gently release hose and allow vacuum to Chamber B to rise to 33.3 kPa vacuum then pinch hose. Vacuum should not increase over 33.3 kPa in 10 seconds.

**3.11.5.7 Check Valve & Fourth Seal Test**

Next disconnect 9 mm vacuum hose from vacuum chamber. The vacuum gauges should not drop. If a leak is present pinch off the 1.5 mm tube from Chamber B to the vacuum chamber and:

**Section 3**



THE INITIAL VACUUM IN CHAMBER A (LINE VACUUM AVAILABLE), BEFORE SENSOR PRESSURE IS APPLIED TO THE CONTROLLER, IS SHOWN AT POINT A.

AS SENSOR PRESSURE IS APPLIED VERY SLOWLY TO THE CONTROLLER, WHEN THE PRESSURE IS VERY NEAR TO THE CONTROLLERS SENSOR SETTING, THE VACUUM IN CHAMBER A MAY SLOWLY BEGIN TO DROP UNTIL IT REACHES A POINT (POINT B) WHERE IT WILL SUDDENLY TRIGGER AND THE CHAMBER A VACUUM WILL INSTANTLY GO TO 0 kPa.

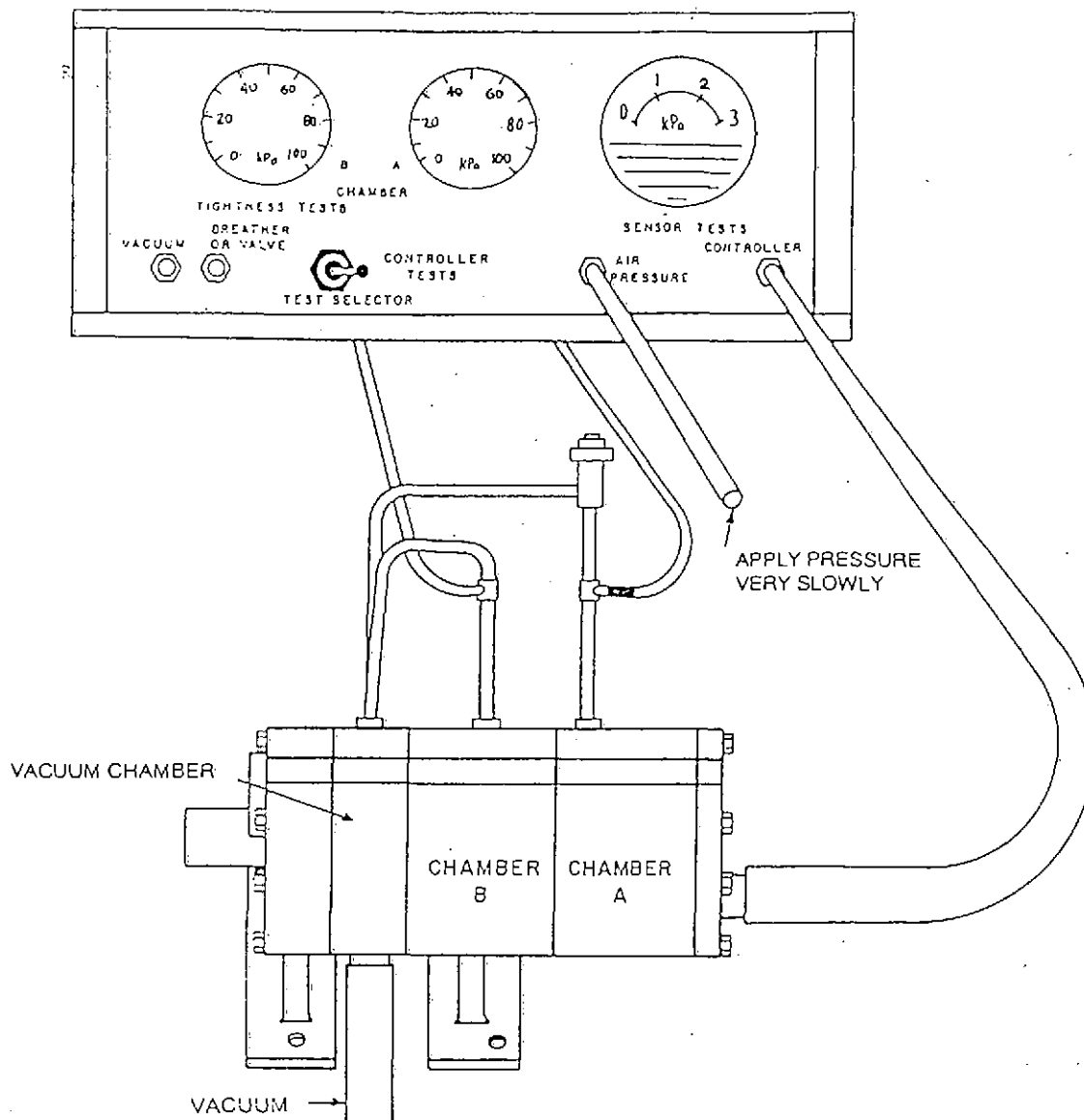
**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

TESTING THE SENSOR VARIABLE  
ORIFICE DUCKBILL

**FIGURE 2-21**

TESTBOX SET TO CONTROLLER  
TESTS

BLOW VERY SLOW AND WATCH CHAMBER A  
GAUGE. VACUUM SHOULD NOT DROP SLOWLY  
FOR OVER 6 kPa BEFORE SUDDENLY  
DROPPING TO ZERO.

# AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

VARIABLE ORIFICE  
DUCKBILL TEST

FIGURE 2-22

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

1. If the Chamber B gauge no longer drops but the Chamber A gauge continues then the check valve is leaking.
2. If the Chamber B gauge continues to drop then the fourth seal is leaking.
3. The check valve and fourth seal each should leak less than 3.33 kPa in 10 seconds. If the leak continues when pinching off both 1.5mm tubes at the vacuum chamber a leak is present in the fluidics, cracked spigot or needle valve proceed to pinch fluidics to isolate leak.

**3.11.5.8 Controller Exterior**

Connect a test tee with hose to controller 16 mm air port 9 mm vacuum port 9 mm sensor port a vacuum supply and vacuum gauge. Cover the controller valve connection tightly then pinch off the vacuum supply. The vacuum gauge should not drop over 0.8 kPa per minute. A controller that does not pass this test will leak water from the valve pit into the controller. Check for a cracked plastic part or leaking 1.5 mm tube or fitting.

**3.11.5.9 Sensor Diaphragm**

With test tee connected as above (Figure 2-31) disconnect 9 mm hose from sensor port and plug hose. Do not cap sensor port. Pinch off vacuum supply to test tee. The vacuum gauge should not drop faster than it did in the previous test. If it does a hole is present in the sensor diaphragm.

**3.11.5.10 Second Shaft Seal & Sensor Seat**

With the vacuum connected to the controller cover the valve connection and the atmosphere port. This tests the second shaft seal and the sensor seat (which was previously tested) for leaks. If either leaks, vacuum will build up under the sensor diaphragm and trigger the sensor (the sensor diaphragm may be watched for movement).

**3.11.5.11 First Shaft Seal**

Close the needle valve and trigger the controller (cover the valve connection). Cover the atmosphere port. You are now testing the first shaft seal. If vacuum builds or the sensor diaphragm moves the seal is leaking.

**3.12 CONDENSED TESTING PROCEDURES**

After assembly, the following tests shall be made on the controllers with vacuum gauge connected to Chamber B and manometer connected to Chamber A:

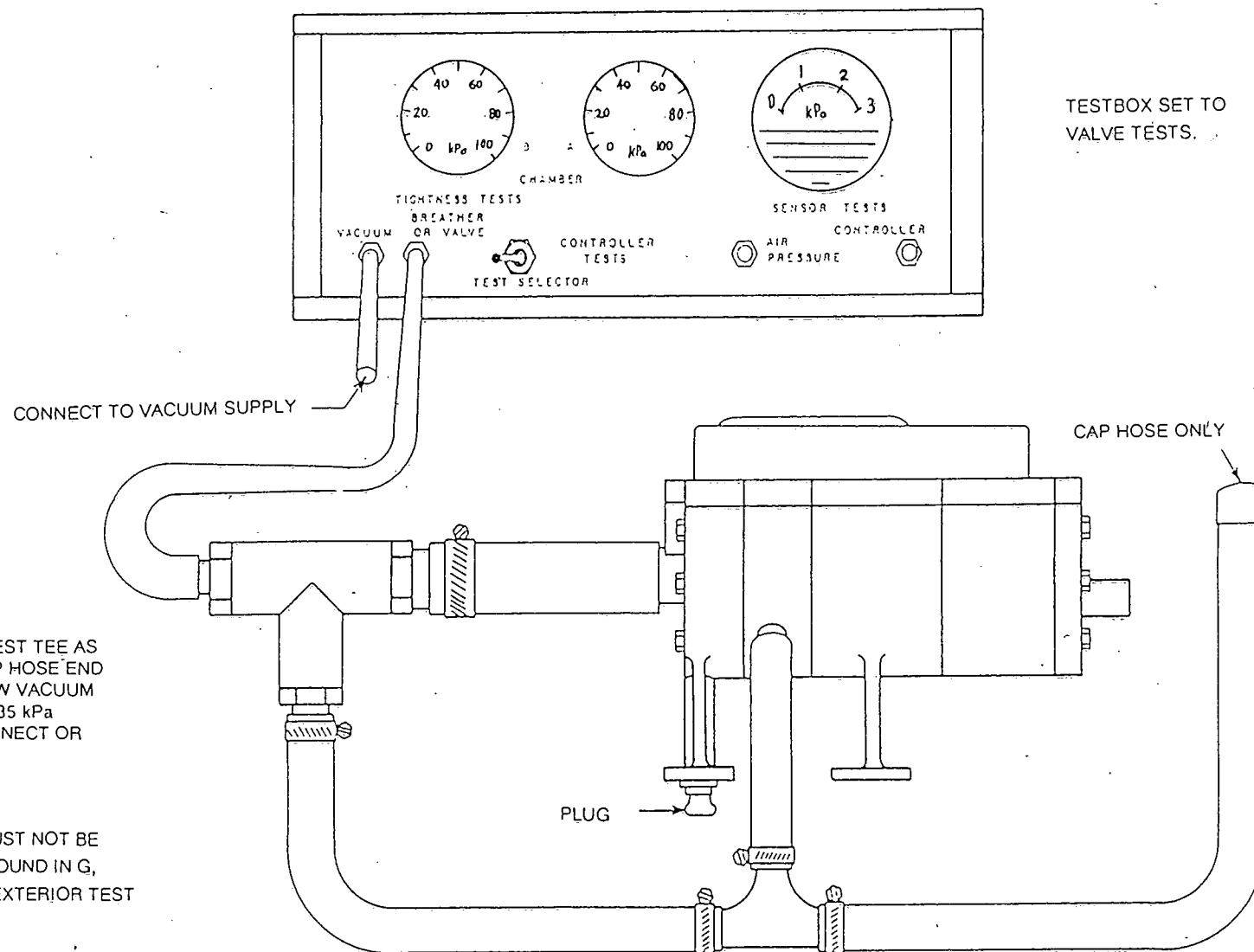
**3.12.1 Sensor Setting**

Must be between 1-1.5 kPa. Apply pressure very slowly.

**3.12.2 Sensor Variable Orifice Duckbill**

Cycle controller with extremely slow steady pressure rise. Vacuum in Chamber A should not drop under 6.8 kPa. Before controller triggers and Chamber A vacuum drops to zero.





**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

SENSOR DIAPHRAGM

**FIGURE 2-31**



**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****3.12.3 Chamber A**

Block vacuum supply to Chamber A as above and trigger sensor. Vacuum in Chamber A should drop and not rise.

**3.12.4 Third Seal Test**

Disconnect hose from Chamber B to vacuum chamber. Pinch hose with needle nose pliers, re-connect hose to vacuum chamber with hose pinched. Gently release hose and allow vacuum in Chamber B to rise to 33.9 kPa. vacuum, then pinch hose. Vacuum in Chamber B should not rise over 3.39 kPa in 10 seconds.

**3.12.5 Check Valve and Fourth Seal Test**

Disconnect 9 mm vacuum supply from controller. If Chamber B vacuum drops, then pinch hose from Chamber B to vacuum chamber:

If Chamber B gauge no longer drops, but Chamber A gauge continues, then check valve is leaking.

If Chamber B gauge continues to drop, the fourth seal is leaking.

The check valve and fourth seal each should leak less than 3.33 kPa in 10 seconds.

**3.12.6 Complete Controller Leak Test**

Connect test tee to all controller ports, manometer and vacuum supply. Cap controller valve connection port. Pinch off vacuum supply. Leakage must be under 0.8 kPa per minute.

**3.12.7 Sensor Diaphragm**

Connect test tee to all controller ports, except sensor port, manometer and vacuum supply. Cap controller valve connection. Sensor port must not be capped. Pinch off vacuum supply. Leakage must not be greater than any leakage found in Step G-

**3.13 TROUBLE SHOOTING**

Malfunctions of the AIRVAC system can be divided into three (3) parts:

- i. vacuum collection lines;
- ii. AIRVAC valve; and
- iii. collection station.

**3.13.1 Vacuum Collection Lines**

Malfunctions of the collection lines may be divided into three (3) categories:

- a. break in the vacuum lines;
- b. closed isolation valves and
- c. AIRVAC valve malfunction.

The operator will observe a low vacuum in the station. He should then determine the cause of the low vacuum using the following approach.

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****Break in the Vacuum Line**

Shut the vacuum mains isolation valve and observe the vacuum gauge to ascertain whether the leak is in the main of the collection tank/accessories. If the vacuum leak is determined to be in the mains system close the division valve on main in the street.

Usually due to excavation work being carried out in the area. Check utility companies for areas where work is in progress. Use isolation valves if necessary to locate leaks and repair.

**Closed Isolation Valves**

An isolation valve may accidentally be left shut in which case a section of vacuum line will not have vacuum. This will give the same symptoms as a valve(s) failed to open.

**Close off the leaking line**

Build-up the vacuum in the other lines to clear out as much sewage as possible. Close off the non-leaking lines. Open the leaking line. Go to the division valve located halfway on the leaking sewer. Close it off.

Go to each valve pit and by listening determine which valve is malfunctioning and correct the problem. Check on which side of the division valve the leak is located.

If no AIRVAC valves are found to be malfunctioning, a break in the vacuum piping exists. Check for underground construction in the area by utility companies and possible cutting of the lines.

**3.13.1.3 AIRVAC Valve Malfunction**

If the valve failed to close, it will show up as a low vacuum alarm.

If the valve failed to open, it will show up the same as a blocked gravity lateral, ie. as the sump fills, the home owner will experience surcharging at yard gully.

**3.13.2 AIRVAC Valve**

When a fault is found to be due to a defective valve or controller, the complete valve or controller should be exchanged. The faulty unit can then be overhauled at the workshop or returned to AIRVAC for service.

**3.13.2.1 Valve failed to close**

Disconnect vacuum from controller. If the valve closed then:

- a. Controller is faulty.
- b. Pressure is present on the sensor due to blocked sensor line or a blocked suction line.
- c. Breather line is restricted by dirt on vent dome or a water trap in breather line because of improper slope, or the breather line is broken and blocked.

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

If after checking above and the AIRVAC valve still fails to close, the fault is in the valve. Remove the valve and fit a spare. At the workshop strip the valve and check for a blocked controller port, damaged shaft or bearing, rags, rocks, etc., jammed in the body, nuts off shaft, etc. Repair and put valve into spare inventory.

**3.13.2.2 Valve fails to open**

Remove vacuum hose from the controller. Remove 16 mm breather hose from the controller air port and insert vacuum hose. If the valve opens, the problem is not in the valve.

If the valve does not open, check to ensure 16 kPa vacuum is available by fitting a vacuum gauge to the surge tank. If 16 kPa is not available, remove the surge tank to check if vacuum is available in sewer. If vacuum is available to the sewer, the problem is in the surge tank.

With no vacuum available at the sewer, the problem could be:

- a. station failure;
- b. closed isolation valve;
- c. damaged vacuum sewer; or
- d. AIRVAC valve open at a different location.

If the problem is not in the valve, re-connect the vacuum hose to the controller. Remove the hose from the 50 mm sensor cap and apply pressure at this hose to cycle the controller. If the AIRVAC valve opens, this indicates the problem is in the 50 mm sensor line. This line may be blocked or leaking.

On the combined holding tank and valve pit installation, pull out the 50mm sensor line and inspect for blockage or leakage.

If the valve fails to operate when pressure is applied to the sensor hose, the controller is faulty and should be replaced. Advise **AIRVAC-RSM Pty Limited** and return faulty item.

**3.14 TROUBLE SHOOTING CHART (Figure 2-32)****3.14.1 AIRVAC Valve**

The purpose of the AIRVAC valve is to isolate vacuum from the gravity lateral.

**PROBLEMS****1.1 Nuts or Bolts Off Shaft**

- a. valve will not open

**1.2 Shaft Out of Round, Nicked or Dirt Build-up**

- a. valve may not open
- b. valve may not closed

**1.3 Torn Rubber Diaphragm**

- a. valve will not open

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****1.4 Foreign Material in Wye Body**

- a. valve will not open
- b. valve will not close

**1.5 Defective Bearing**

- a. hanging valve on downward travel preventing closing

**1.6 Broken Seat Preventing Valve from Closing****1.7 Not Adequate Vacuum to Seat Valve Causing Vacuum Leak****1.8 Blocked Dip Tube or Lower Housing Ports**

- a. valve will not close

**3.14.2 AIRVAC Controller/Sensor Unit**

The purpose of the AIRVAC controller/sensor unit is to activate the valve.

**PROBLEMS:****2.1 Valve Will Not Open**

- a. low vacuum (sump vent valve closed if present)
- b. sensor air pressure blocked
- c. sensor diaphragm damaged
- d. 0.5 mm orifice blocked or tube kinked
- e. water in sensor chamber
- f. 2.5 mm air passage orifice blocked
- g. leaking valve diaphragm

**2.2 Valve Will Not Close**

- a. water in timing volume and needle valve
- b. 2.5 mm air passage orifice blocked
- c. needle valve closed or blocked
- d. shaft in controller sticking
- e. sensor seat leaking
- f. 0.05 mm orifice blocked or tube kinked

**2.3 Water in Sensor Line and Controller Fails**

- a. leaking sensor tubing connection or sensor diaphragm. Clamps on all connections
- b. leaking surge suppressor

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****2.4 Unable to Adjust Controller for Long Timing  
(12 seconds)**

- a. leak in 3-way valve diaphragm loose on shaft (closing needle valve does not prevent controller from timing out).
- b. cracked diaphragm plate
- c. leaking Chamber B seal #4 (in field use when the valve is cycled, Chamber B vacuum will drop faster than usual because of dropping line vacuum if seal is leaking)
- d. bad controller check valve – leaking
- e. check valve in vacuum line to controller is leaking.

**2.5 After Valve is Cycled and Closes, it Triggers Again for a Second Short Cycle**

- a. third seal is leaking
- b. bad surge suppressor or excessive sensor line back pressure (consult AIRVAC)

**2.6 Covering Valve Connection and the Atmosphere Port Sets off the Controller**

- a. bad #2 shaft seal – leaking
- b. sensor seat leaking

**2.7 Controller Works but Vacuum Flow is Low and Vacuum is Leaking through Atmosphere Port**

- a. bad shaft seal on air port #1

**3.14.3 Surge Tank**

The purpose of the surge tank is to prevent backwash due to differential pressure when the valve opens and the sewage passes.

**PROBLEM****3.1 Valve Will Not Open**

- a. sewage in the surge tank inlet is blocking vacuum flow or check valves are reversed

**3.14.4 50 mm Sensor Line**

The purpose of the 50 mm sensor line is to trap air within to operate the sensor.

**PROBLEM****4.1 Valve Will Not Open**

- a. no-hub clamp installed incorrectly
- b. solvent bonded joints leak
- c. Ø50 mm line too close to bottom of tank. If sensor line is closer to the bottom of the tank than the Ø80 mm suction line, a vacuum may be created in the sensor line.

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

- d. 9 mm hose from 50 mm sensor cap to controller installed incorrectly or not clamped

**4.2 Valve Will Not Close**

- a. line incorrectly graded, creating blockage holding pressure on sensor line.
- b. Ø80 mm suction line blocked. Sewage not being removed from tank

**4.3 Valve Cycles Frequently**

- a. length of Ø50 mm line too long
- b. ground infiltration

**3.14.5 Breather Line**

The purpose of the breather line is to supply atmospheric air for the controller and valve operation.

**PROBLEMS**

**5.1 Valve Will Not Open**

- a. 20 mm line blocked

**5.2 Valve Will Not Close**

- a. 20 mm line blocked
- b. screen on breather dome blocked

**3.14.6 Vacuum**

The purpose of vacuum is to operate the valve and to aid in the transport of sewage.

**PROBLEMS**

**6.1 Valve Will Not Open**

- a. no vacuum at Collection Station
- b. 9 mm vacuum hose blocked
- c. surge tank blocked
- d. isolation valve closed
- e. broken vacuum line
- f. less than 16 kPa vacuum available.

**3.14.7 Gravity House Service Line**

The purpose of the gravity house service line is to allow the sewage from the home to flow by gravity to the AIRVAC valve pit.

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****PROBLEMS****7.1 Valve Cycles a Second Cycle After Sensor is Triggered**

- a. excessive back pressure on gravity line due to extremely long gravity line. Install a special orifice in 50mm sensor cap to eliminate

**7.2 Valve Cycles Several Cycles After Sensor is Triggered and When Vacuum Gauge is Hooked into Side Check Valve Hose Vacuum does not Drop on Air Cycle**

- a. gravity line is not properly laid, Pockets in gravity line are collecting sewage. When valve cycles, it empties holding tank, applies vacuum to gravity line and closes. Then sewage is pulled from gravity line pocket to tank which triggers valve.

**3.14.8 Collection Station**

A vacuum sewage collection station is similar to the district pumping station of a gravity scheme which is fed by several lift stations. The main difference is that the vacuum station is fitted with two (2) vacuum pumps.

**Loss of Vacuum****PROBLEMS**

- 8.1 If the vacuum is low and the vacuum pumps are running, the leak is in one of the sewers.
- 8.2 If no leaks are found in the sewers, the problem could be insufficient liquid inside the vacuum pumps (liquid ring vacuum pumps only) or leaking check valves.
- 8.3 Vacuum reading is low and the vacuum pumps are not running. The vacuum pumps will be 'locked off' by the high sewage level probe by overloads in the pump starters, by a faulty vacuum switch or no electric power present.

**3.14.9 Discharge Pumps****PROBLEMS****9.1 Loss of Prime is the Main Problem Associated with the Discharge Pumps. This can be caused by:**

- a. incorrect or faulty seats fitted to the force main check valves
- b. faulty mechanical shaft seals
- c. seal pressurising system malfunction
- d. blocked equalising line
- e. leaking gaskets between the check valve flanges and the pump discharge connection
- f. sand in collection tank

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****9.2 Pumps Locked Off by the Motor Overloads**

- a. This situation may be caused by a blocked pump or a pump in which a mechanical failure has occurred.

**3.15 ADVICE WITH PROBLEMS**

Any operator who is uncertain of the cause of any malfunction with the AIRVAC valve or system is requested to telephone AIRVAC for advice on (02) 417 8133.

**3.16 AIRVAC EQUIPMENT RETURNED UNDER WARRANTY FOR WARRANTY**

When AIRVAC valves or controller/sensor units are returned to the supplier, they should be tagged to indicate: (1) valve pit number and location; and (2) failure symptom(s).

All failures should be recorded on the AIRVAC valve card index.

**3.17 RECORD KEEPING**

Accurate records are essential for controlling operation and maintenance costs. AIRVAC recommends that, as a minimum, a register of consumer complaints, AIRVAC valve failures and collection station breakdowns should be made.

Each AIRVAC valve installation should be maintained with a card for each AIRVAC valve installation. These cards should list:

- AIRVAC valve installation reference number and date installed.
- AIRVAC controller/sensor reference number and date installed.
- Any AIRVAC valve malfunctions.
- Preventative maintenance due dates.
- Maintenance carried out.
- Details of any spare parts fitted.

Suggested layout for record register and cards shown in Figure 2-33 & 2-34.

**3.18 CONTROLLER AND VALVE REPAIR REPORT FORMS**

The following forms may be used by maintenance personnel to report their findings for later reference. Examination may find a valve frequently in for repair or other patterns.

**3.19 TRAINING**

Training of the system operators is an important part of any sewage scheme. The AIRVAC system will require no more maintenance than a high quality gravity system.

AIRVAC recommends that the system operator be available during the construction and commissioning phases of an AIRVAC system. At that time, the AIRVAC site



LOCATION. VALVE NUMBER		LINE.	
Maintenance Due.	Maintenance Completed.	SPARE PARTS USED.	Initials.

FRONT

FAILURES AND COMPLAINTS LOG.				
Date	PROBLEM.	REASON.	REMEDY.	Initials.

REAR

**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

VALVE CARD INDEX

**FIGURE 2-33**

DATE AND TIME	HOURS RUN BY VACUUM PUMPS.			HOURS RUN BY SEWAGE PUMPS		Hours Run By Standby Generator.	Flow Meter.	Power Meter Reading.	WEATHER.	OPERATOR'S INITIALS.
	#1	# 2	#3	#1	#2					

DAILY OPERATING LOG

FAILURES & COMPLAINTS REGISTER

DATE AND TIME OF REPORT.	FAILURE OR COMPLAINT.	CAUSE.	SPARES USED.	Time Repairs Completed.	Operator's Signature.

**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

DAILY OPERATING LOG  
FAILURES & COMPLAINTS REGISTER

FIGURE 2-34

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

representative will be available to give "on-the-job" training. AIRVAC is willing to train any replacement operators.

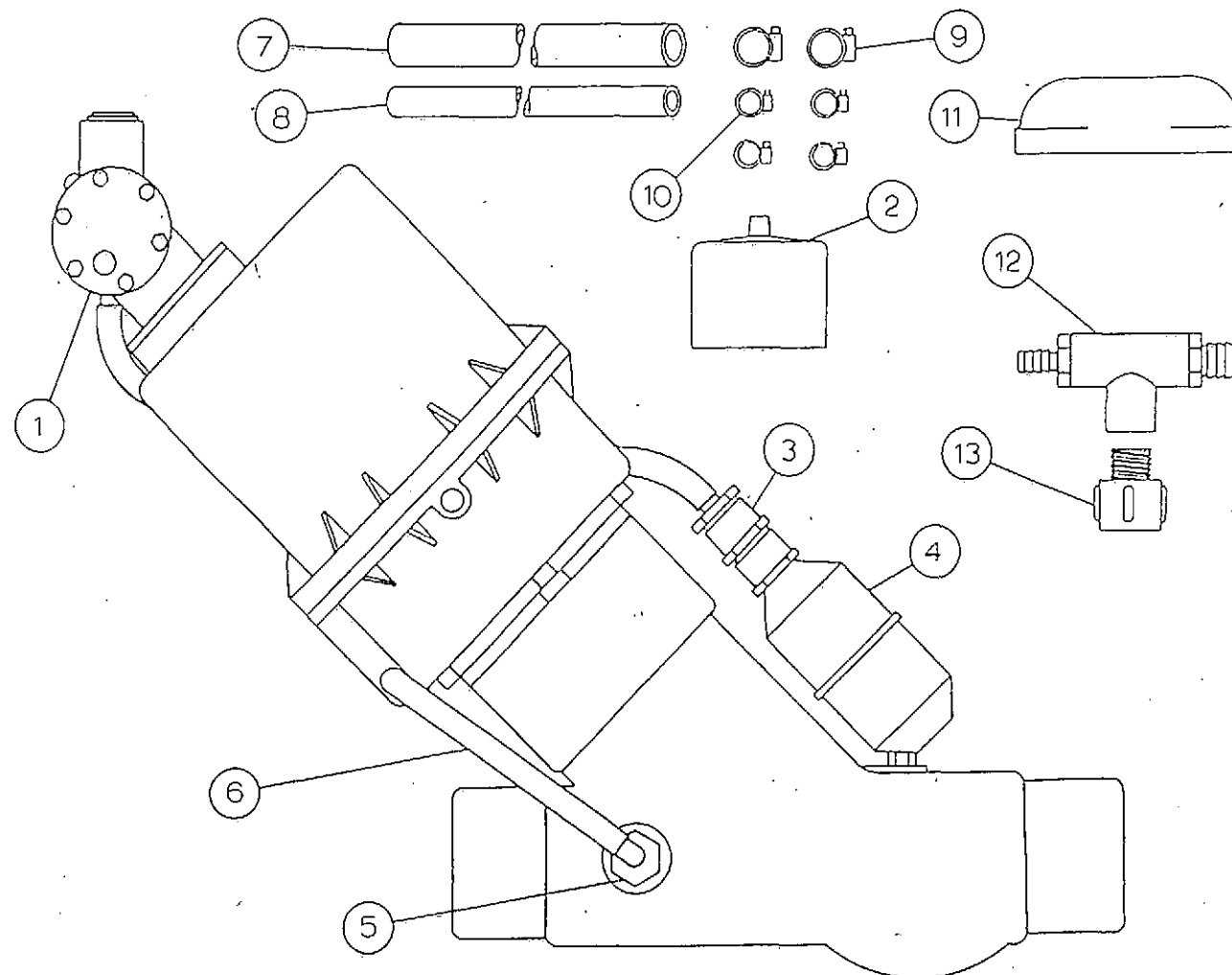
The AIRVAC training program includes:

- Installation of AIRVAC valve, valve pit, holding tanks, crossovers and sewers as most owners make minor additions to their system.
- Trouble shooting procedures. Faults are set up in the demonstration rig for trainees to locate and rectify.
- Record keeping.

### **3.20 AIRVAC EQUIPMENT PARTS LIST**

The following detail of parts diagrams and ordering information.

Figure 2-35	Standard 75 mm Valve Package
Figure 2-36	Part No for 75 mm Valve for Above Ground Venting.
Figure 2-37	Parts List for 75 mm AIRVAC Valve
Figure 2-38	Exploded View 50 mm AIRVAC Valve
Figure 2-39	Parts List for 50 mm AIRVAC Valve
Figure 2-40	Exploded View of Controller
Figure 2-41	Parts List for Controller



**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

**STANDARD 75mm  
VALVE PACKAGE**

**FIGURE 2-35**

Item No.	Part No.	Part Description	No. Per Unit	Item No.	Part No.	Part Description	No. Per Unit
1	AC	AIRVAC Controller/Sensor Unit	1				
2	ACS-1	2" Sensor Cap	1				
3	CHST-83	Surge Tank Check Valve	1				
4	ST-83	Surge Tank with Check Valve and Nipple	1				
5	CHLH-83	Lower Housing Check Valve	1				
6,8	38T	$\frac{3}{8}$ " ID Tubing	7.5 ft				
7	58T	$\frac{5}{8}$ " ID Tubing	3 ft				
9	C58	$\frac{5}{8}$ " Clamp	2				
10	C38	$\frac{3}{8}$ " Clamp	4				
11	BD	Breather dome	1				
12	BT	$\frac{1}{2}$ " Breather Tee with $\frac{3}{8}$ " Hose $\frac{5}{8}$ " Hose Adaptor	1				
13	PV12	$\frac{3}{4}$ " PVC Adaptor	1				
14	ASP-D	Blue Coloured - 'D' Model Sensor Surge Suppressor	1				

## AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068  
G-Pulse ID IMS866

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

PART NUMBERS FOR 75mm  
VALVES FOR ABOVE GROUND  
VENTING

FIGURE 2-36

Active 10/12/2014

Page 73 of 316

Item No.	Part No.	Part Description	No. Per Unit	Item No.	Part No.	Part Description	No. Per Unit
1	AVD3-13B	Dip Tube	1	20	AVD-B-03	1/4" - 20 x 1 1/2" Bolt	2
2	AVD3-1B	Upper Piston Housing	1	21	AVD3-5B	Conical Plunger	1
3	AVD-HN-O	1/4" Hex Nut	10	22	AVD-R-OB	Rubber Valve Seat	1
4	AVD-LW-O	1/4" Lock washer	10	23	AVD3-7B	Retaining Washer	1
5	AVD-SP-O	Spring	1	24	AVD-LN-1	1/2" - 13 Locknut with nylon insert	2
6	AVD3-3	Piston Cup	1	25	NST-83	Nylon Tube Adaptor	1
7	AVD-D-O	Rolling Diaphragm	1	26	DD-83	Rubber Duckbill Check Valve	2
8	AVD3-4	Piston Plate	1	27	RW-83	Rubber Washer	4
9	PTA-83 (WTSP-78)	3/8" Tubing Adaptor	2	28	NMA-83	3/4" Nylon Adaptor	4
10	AVD3-2	Lower Piston Housing	1	29	UCV-83	Rubber Umbrella Check Valve	2
11	AVD-B-01	1/4" - 20 x 1 1/4" Bolt	2	30	STB-83	Surge Tank body	1
12	AVD-S-02	O-Ring	2	31	NNI-83	1/4" Nylon Nipple	1
13	AVD-SC-7B	6-32 x 5/8" Hex Head Bearing Screw	3	32	AVD3-11	Wye Body	1
14	AVD3-12B	Bearing - blue	1	33	NEL-83	Nylon Ell Tube Adaptor	1
15	AVD-S-83	Wiper Shaft Seal	1	34	AVD-W-O	1/4" x 5/8" Flat washer	8
16	AVD3-10	Screw Plug	1	35	AVD-S-014	014 O-Ring	1
17	AVD-B-02	1/4" - 20 x 3/4" Socket Head Cap Screw	6				
18	AVD3-SS	Stainless Steel Shaft	1				
19	AVD-W-1	1/2" x 1 1/8" Flat washer	3				

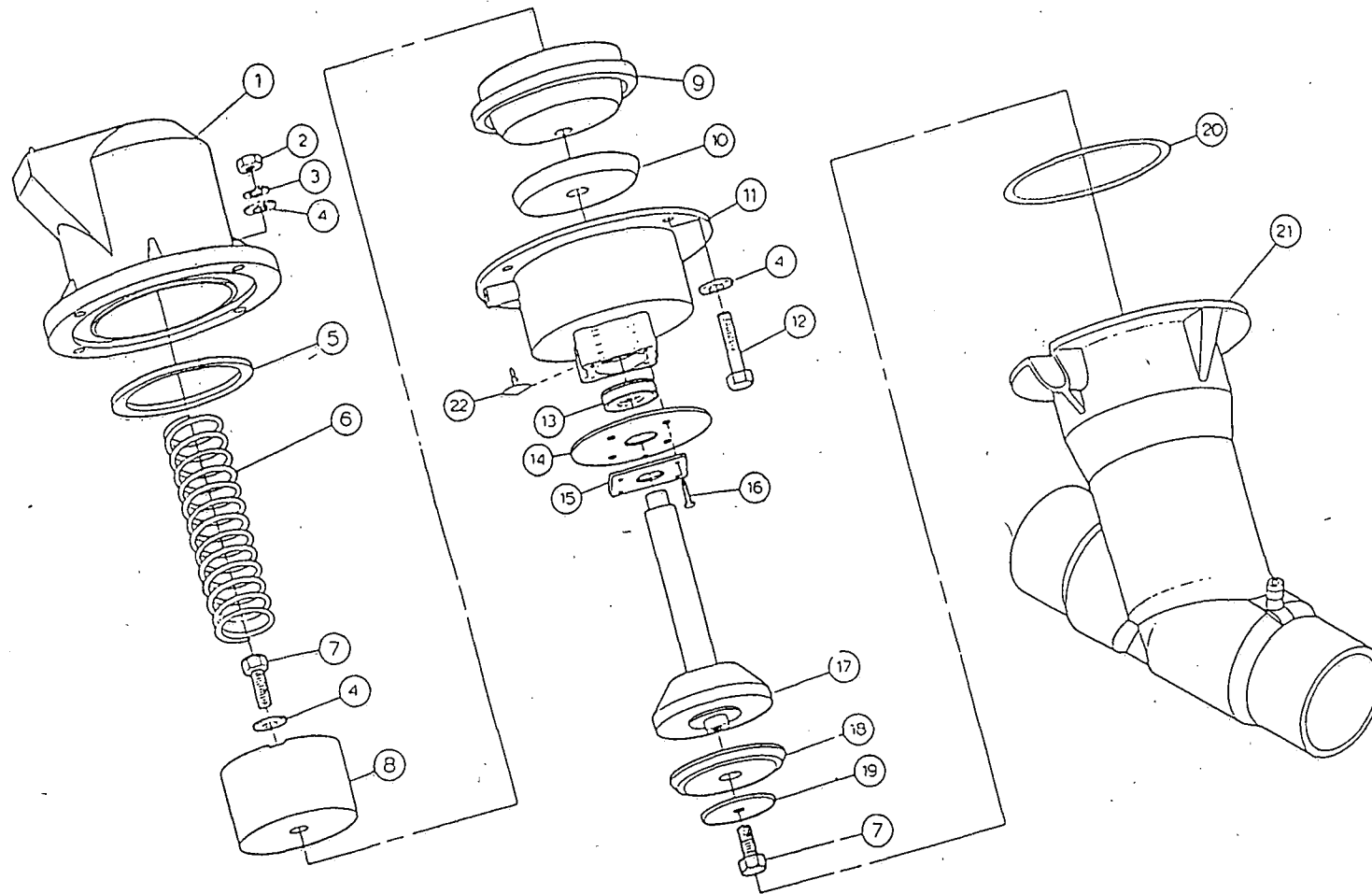
## AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimilie: (02) 417 8162

PARTS LIST FOR  
75mm AIRVAC VALVE

FIGURE 2-37



**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimilie: (02) 417 8162

EXPLODED VIEW  
50mm AIRVAC VALVE

FIGURE 2-38

Item No.	Part No.	Part Description	No. Per Unit	Item No.	Part No.	Part Description	No. Per Unit
1	AV2-6	Valve Bonnet	1	20	AV2-150R	O-Ring	1
2	AVD-HN-O	¼" - 20 Hex Nut	4	21	AV2-1	Wye Body	1
3	AVD-LW-O	¼" Lock washer	4	22	AVRU-2	Orange Silicone Rubber Umbrella	1
4	AVD-W-O	¼" Washer	9	23	RW-32	Rubber Washer	1
5	AV2-23OR	Square Ring	1	24	NMT-38	⅜" Hose x ¼" MPT Adaptor	1
6	AV2-7S	Spring	1	25	NFT-38	⅜" Hose x ¼" FPT Adaptor	1
7	AV2-LB-O	¼" - 20 x ¾" Locking Bolt	2	26	UCV-83	Rubber Umbrella Check Valve and Plate Assembly	1
8	AV2-5	Diaphragm Cup	1				
9	AV2-11RD	Valve Diaphragm	1				
10	AV2-4	Diaphragm Plate	1				
11	AV2-2	Lower Housing	1				
12	AVD-B-02	¼" - 20 x 1 ⅝" Bolt	4				
13	AVD-S-83	Shaft Seal	1				
14	AV2-12RB	Rubber Baffle/Gasket	1				
15	AV2-8M	Shaft Seal Retainer	1				
16	AV2-B-08	8-32 x ⅜" Bolt	4				
17	AV2-3	Shaft and Piston	1				
18	AV2-10RS	Valve Seat	1				
19	AV2-9M	Seat Retaining Washer	2				

## AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED

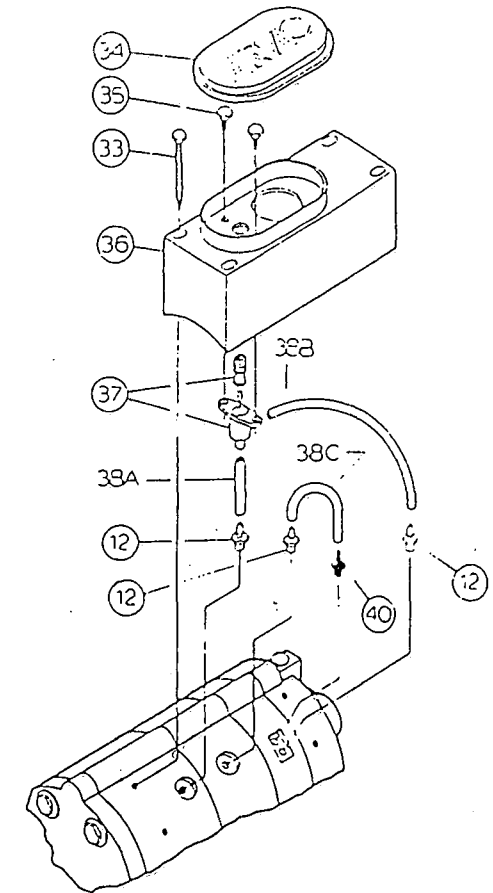
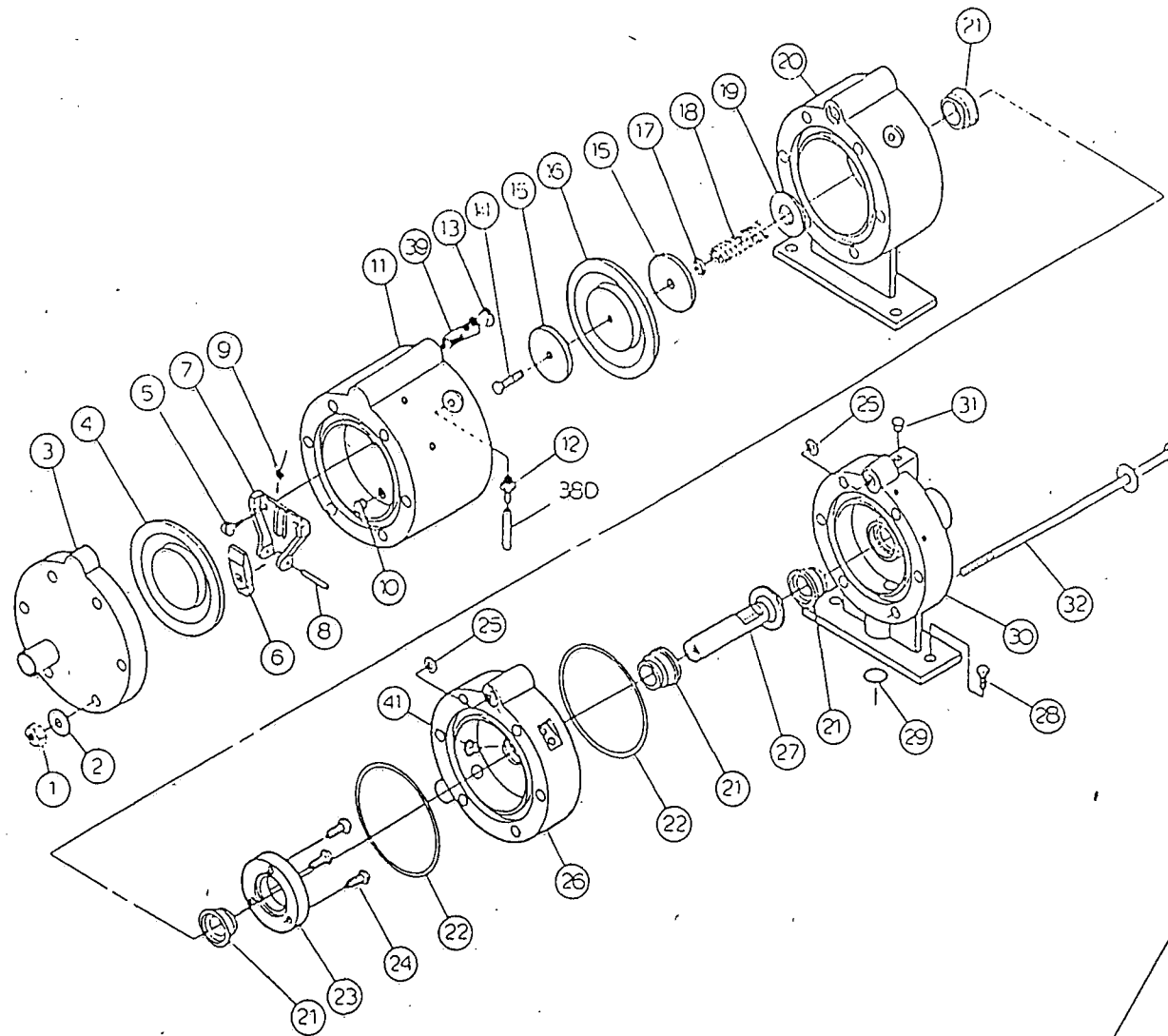
Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

PARTS LIST FOR  
50mm AIRVAC VALVE

FIGURE 2-39





**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

Active 10/12/2014

**EXPLODED VIEW OF CONTROLLER**

**FIGURE 2-40**

Item No.	Part No.	Part Description	No. Per Unit	Item No.	Part No.	Part Description	No. Per Unit
1, 2, 32	AC-31	10-24 x 4 1/8" Bolt Nut and Washers	6	22	AC-39	031 O-Ring	2
3	AC-1	Sensor End Plate	1	23	AC-7	3rd Seal Mounting Plate	1
4	AC-24	Sensor Diaphragm	1	24	AC-35	6 x 1/8" Self Tap Screw 3rd Seal Mounting Plate	3
5	AC-32	4 x 1/16" Self Tap Sensor Screw and Washer	2	25	AC-40	009 Air Passage O-Ring	2
6	AC-14	Sensor Lever	1	26	AC-4	Vacuum Chamber	1
7	AC-13	Sensor Base	1	27	AC-12	Shaft	
8	AC-33	.078" Dix. x 1/8" Roll Pin	1	28	AC-38	8-32 x 1/8" Hex Head Screw Mounting to Valve	2
9	AC-17B	Sensor Spring	1	29	AC-42	013 Controller Mounting O-Ring	1
10	AC-21	Sensor Seat	1	30	AC-5	Air and Valve Connection	1
11	AC-2	Chamber A	1	31	AC-10	Air Passage Plug	1
12	AC-26	1/16" Tubing Adaptor for Solvent Welding (Yellow no/orifice)	3	33	AC-37	8 x 1 1/2" Self Tap Screw Timer Box	4
13	AC-25	Sensor Variable Orifice Duckbill	1	34	AC-15	Timer Cover	1
14	AC-34	6 - 32 x 1/2" Hex Head Shaft Screw	1	35	AC-36	6 x 1/16" Self Tap Screw Needle Valve	2
15	AC-9	Valve Diaphragm Plate	2	36	AC-11	Timer Box	1
16	AC-23	Valve Diaphragm	1	37	AC-18	Needle Valve	1
17	AC-41	007 Shaft Screw O-Ring	1	38	116T	1/16" Clear Tubing	12 - 3/8"
18	AC-16S	Valve Spring	1	39	AC-43	Air Passage Filter	1
19	AC-8	Spring Washer	1	40	AC-27	1/16" tubing Adaptor for Solvent Welding (Black w/orifice)	1
20	AC-3	Chamber B	1	41	AC-46	Umbrella Check Valve	1
21	AC-22	Shaft Seal	4				

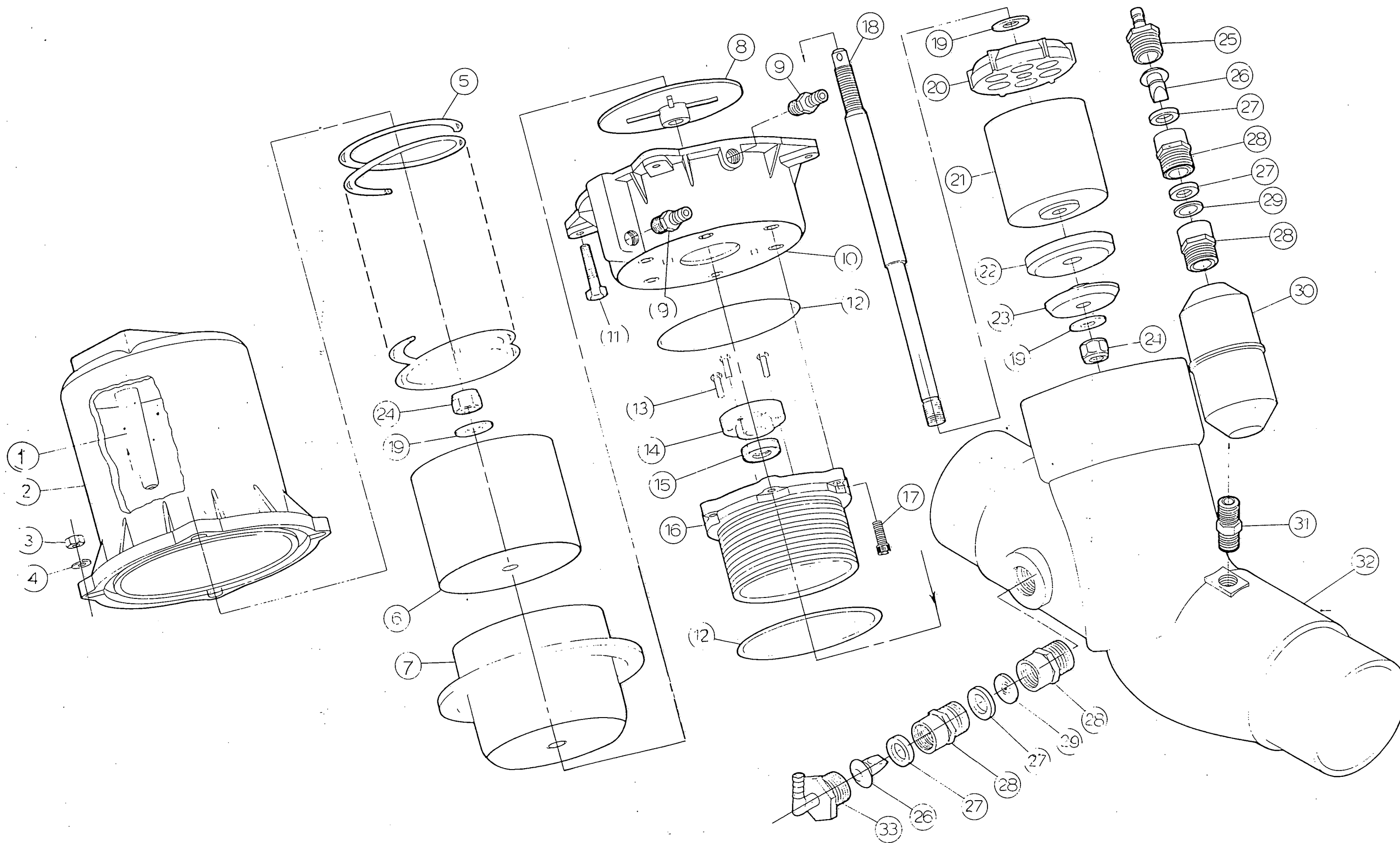
## AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

### PARTS LIST FOR CONTROLLER

### FIGURE 2-41



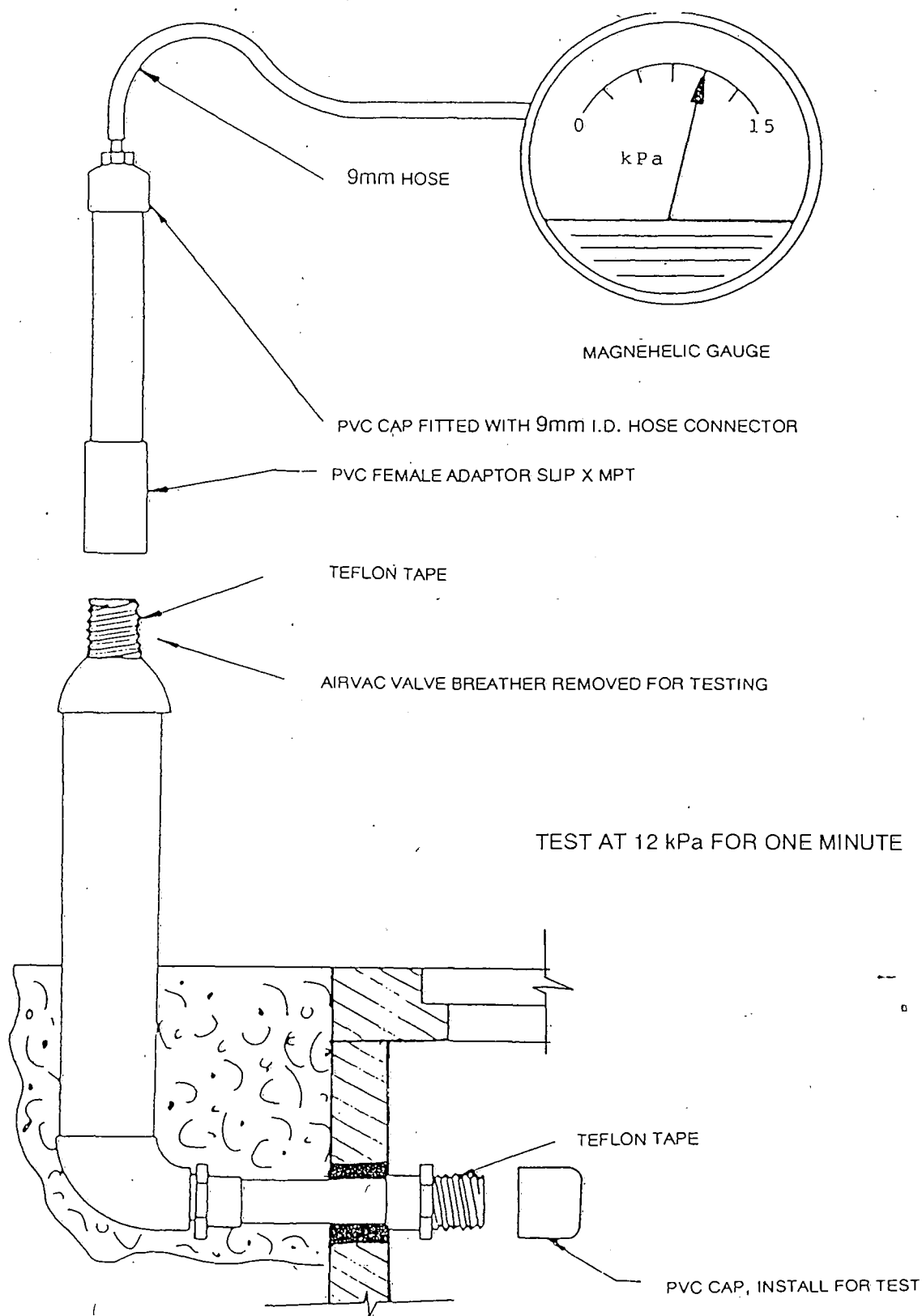
# **AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

EXPLODED VIEW 75mm VALVE

FIGURE 2-9



**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

**BREATHER LINE TESTING**

**FIGURE 2-8**

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****3.7.3 AIRVAC Vacuum Valve**

Remove cover.

Increase the cut out in the Ø80mm line to a total of 365mm.

After cut out is made trim and debur the cut ends with a file or sandpaper.

Slide no-hub soil clamp onto both ends of valve. Carefully roll the diaphragms back atop themselves providing ample room to insert the AIRVAC valve.

Slide stainless steel clamps of No-Hubs onto vacuum sewer and suction line.

Install the vacuum side of the AIRVAC valve so that the rolled diaphragm seats against the vacuum sewer. Unroll diaphragm.

Align the opposite end of the valve with rolled diaphragm to the suction line. Unroll diaphragm.

Check both No-Hubs for proper fit. Check that index in No-Hub diaphragms are seated between pipe and valve, otherwise a leak will form when tightening clamps. The AIRVAC valve must be positioned in a vertical position.

Slide stainless steel clamp portions of No-Hubs over the diaphragms with securing bolts in vertical position and equally tighten clamps until snug. Be sure smooth portion of the corrugated band slides inside the other end of the band. Using a "T" handle torque wrench, tighten both No-Hub clamps. Torque should not exceed 0.693 kg.m or 60 in.lb.

Connect 9mm tube with clamps from sensor cap to controller sensor port. Tighten the clamps on both of these connections. Sensor surge suppressor will not be required.

Blow out breather line to remove any dirt or liquid. Cap and pressure test breather as previously described. Install breather "T" on breather line sealing with Teflon tape. "T" must be nearly vertical with 16mm connection turned up.

Connect a piece of 9mm hose from lower connection on "T" to lower housing centre port.

Connect 16mm tube with clamps from "T" to the controller air port. Tighten clamps at both of these connections.

If the AIRVAC valve installation is being made to an operating sewer system, the controller timing should be set at this stage. The controller sensor setting should be 1 – 1.5 kPa and is not adjustable. It should be checked however to ensure proper operation.

**3.7.4 Crossovers**

A cross-over is defined as the connection from the AIRVAC valve to the vacuum sewer main. It is important that crossovers are installed with the wye connection at the main in the vertical position. The Ø80mm PVC or Ø90 HDPE cross-over shall be laid with a fall of not less than 0.2% or 50mm, whichever is greater, towards the vacuum main. The recommended method of connection of the cross-over to the vertical wye fitting is through a long radius elbow.

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****3.8 PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE****3.8.1 AIRVAC 75mm Valve**

Maintenance products required:

The following products are required during valve disassembly and cleaning or replacement of the component to which the product is applied.

For application to valve shafts to lubricate shaft seal and bearings:  
Dow Corning #111 compound silicone lubricant.

THIS SHOULD NEVER BE USED IN AN AIRVAC CONTROLLER as it will damage the controller shaft seals. This may also be applied to the screw plug thread and o-ring for easier threading into the wye body.

For application to valve rolling diaphragms:  
Dow Corning #200 silicone fluid, 350 centistokes viscosity. The diaphragm must be fully cleaned by soap and water then dried. Apply a thin coat of oil by hand to the entire surface of the diaphragm.

For assembly of check valve components or rubbing connections:

Leaklock thread sealant. Available in jars with brush applicator.  
This is a blue thread sealant which should be re-applied if unit was originally assembled using this. It is a hard setting thread sealant which will seal leak paths yet allow disassembly. The product may be dissolved with isopropyl alcohol.

For application AIRVAC controller shafts:

Dow Corning Molykote #FS-3451, No. 2 consistency  
Fluorosilicone grease. Cat No. 47633-16.

Just a very small amount of this is required during controller overhaul so a tube lasts a very long time. This grease may be used on valve shafts if the other grease is not available. Refer to controller maintenance section for proper application procedure.

Any other products required are locally available such as Teflon thread seal tape.

**3.8.1.1 Yearly Maintenance**

No actual valve maintenance is required on a yearly basis. The valve installation and its operation should be inspected once a year as a trouble-shooting procedure. Check for dirt or water in controller, valve or tubes. Clear above ground vent screens of spider webs etc. Screens may require replacement. Cycle the valve preferably by running water and monitor the operation. Check valve timing and adjust if necessary.

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****3.8.1.2 75mm AIRVAC Valve Disassembly and Rebuilding**

Routine maintenance of the valve is normally handled by an AIRVAC trained operator. However in this system with only 6 or 7 valves we expect it will be more expedient to substitute a valve known to be in good order and forward the valve in question to us for service. The following instructions 3.8.1.2 through 3.8.2.1 however describe the maintenance procedures should you elect to service the valves yourselves. For average flow values less than 1 L/s the valve should be removed and inspected for wear every 10 years.

The valve should be replaced and returned to the workshop. Rebuilding typically required ½ hour to perform and involves replacing the valve seat (AVD-R-O) shaft seal (AVD-S-83) and bearing (AVD3-12B). Check valve rubber components should also be replaced (UCV, DD-83 and RW-83).

For average flow valves greater than 1 L/s the valve should be re-built every four years or 500,000 cycles.

In the workshop wash the valve, remove all tubing, controller, surge tank and side check valve. Apply vacuum to the upper housing to open the valve. Place vinyl caps to the two 9mm hose connections on the lower housing. Disconnect the vacuum from the upper housing. The valve will now remain open. Unscrew complete operator from wye body. Remove vinyl caps from lower housing.

**NOTE:** If the valve is unscrewed with the piston in the closed position, the rolling diaphragm may become twisted causing the valve to malfunction when it is reassembled.

Inspect the wye fitting for hard water scale build-up. If scale is present soak whole fitting in 15% muriatic acid solution for 10-15 minutes. Rinse thoroughly with water. Check to see that all scale is removed. Repeat acid soaking if necessary.

**CAUTION: OBSERVE THE CORRECT SAFETY PRECAUTIONS WHEN USING MURIATIC ACID.**

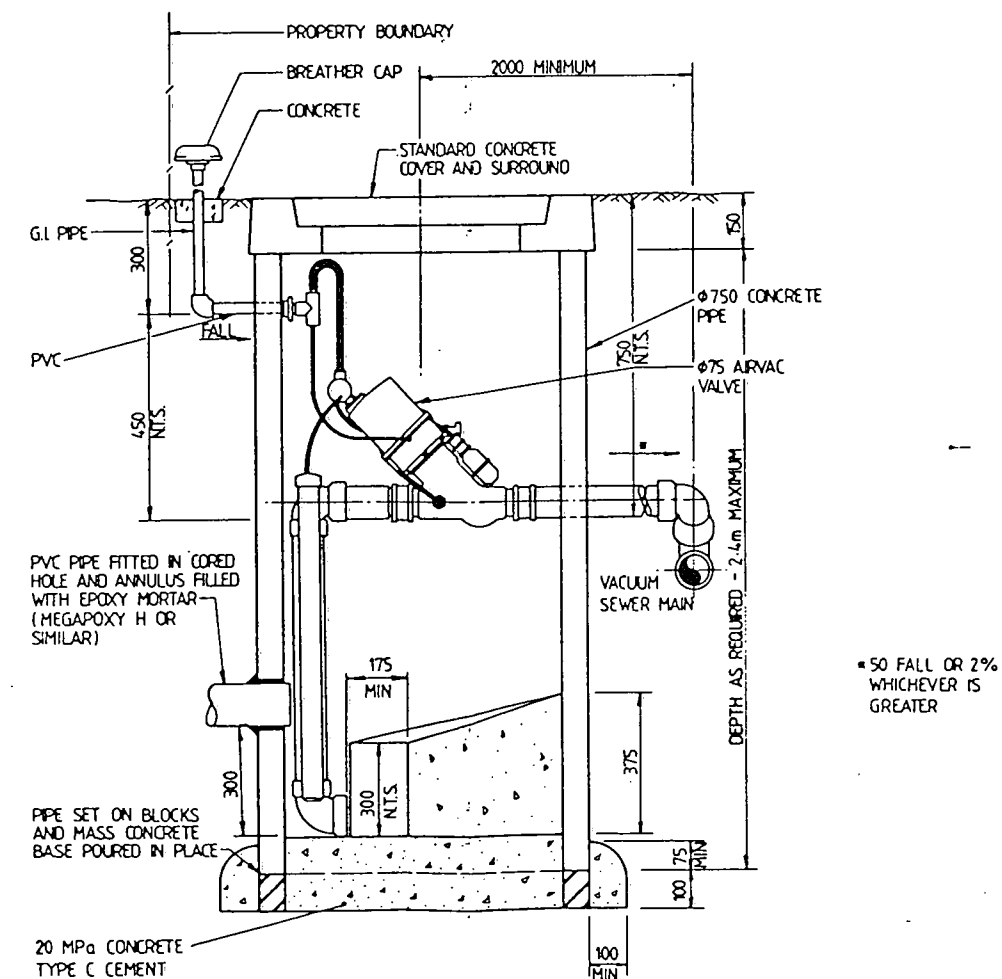
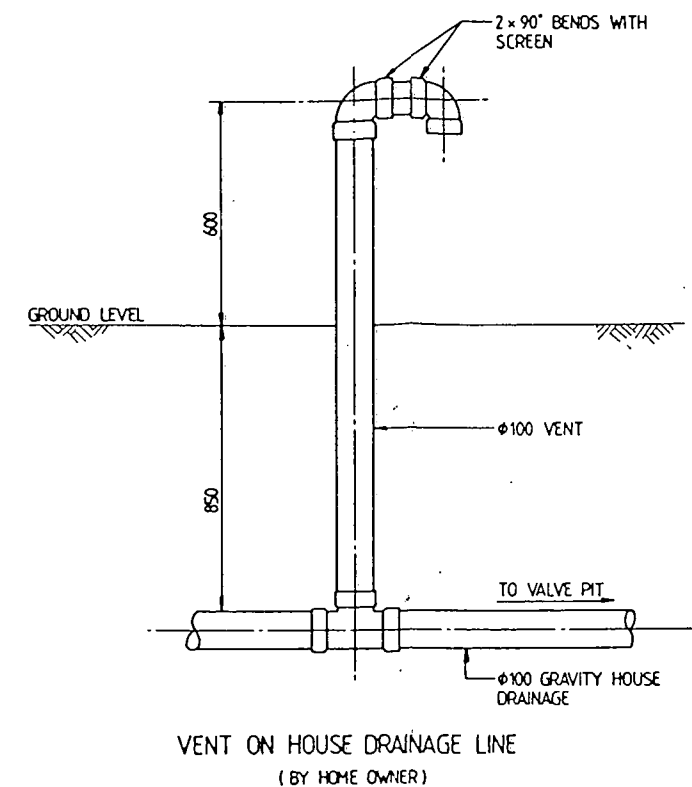
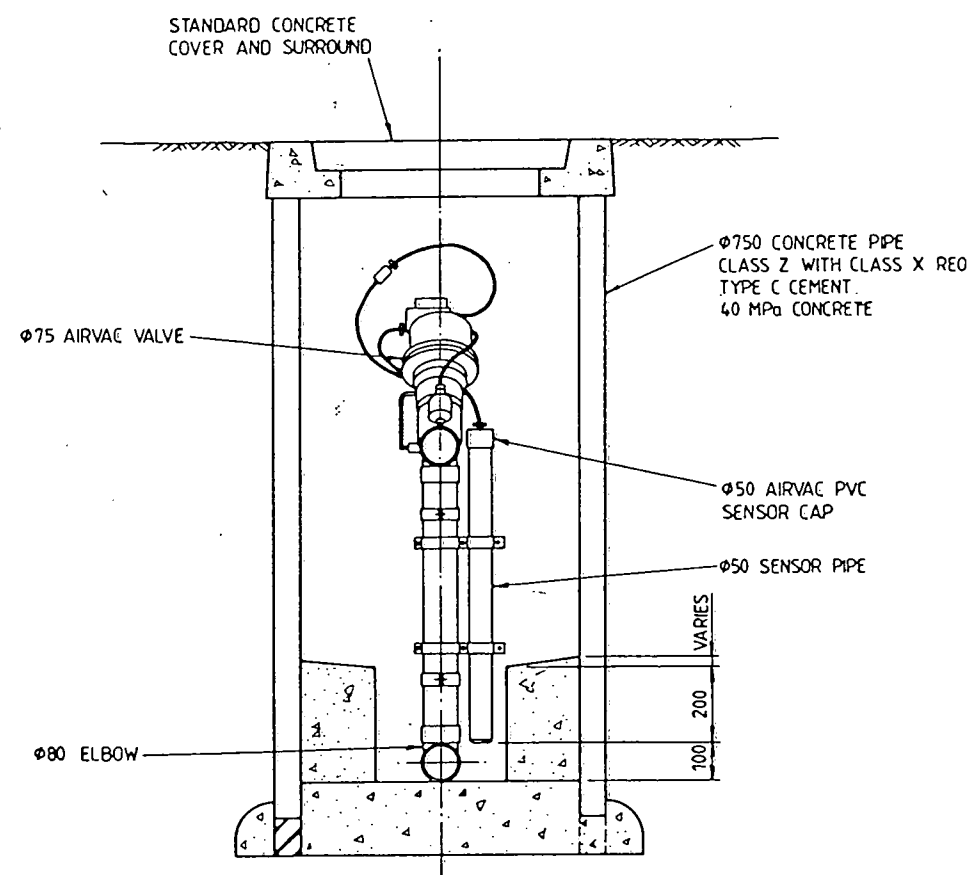
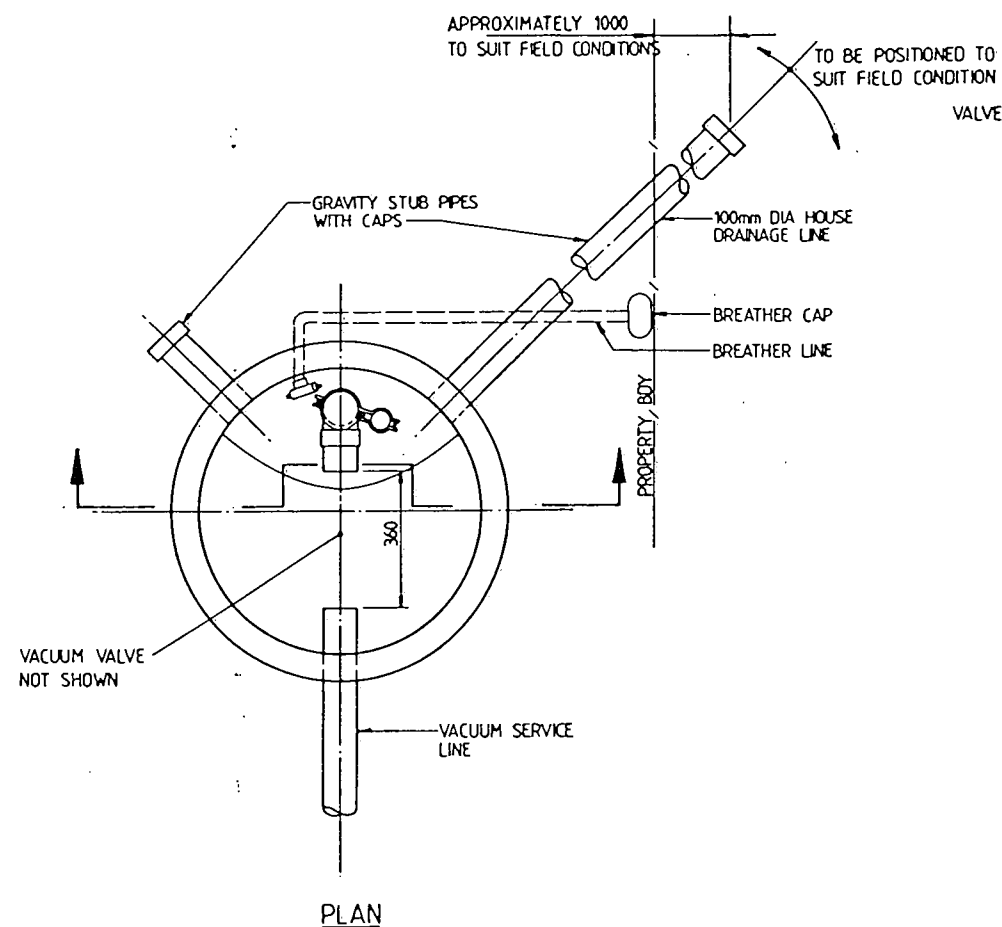
Remove the four nuts, bolts and lock-washers (Items 3, 4, 11 & 34) of Figure 2-9 and remove the upper housing. Remove the diaphragm cup and piston plate (Items 6, 7 & 8). Pull the shaft and plunger out downward through the screw plug (Item 16) and set aside.

If piston and seat need to be removed from the shaft the procedure is as follow:

Clamp shaft in PADDED vice jaws (wooden blocks work well for this). Loosen locknut on seat and remove retaining washer, seat plunger, plunger guide and washers (Items 19, 20, 21, 22 & 23). The shaft must never be clamped with a metal wrench or vice that could nick shaft in the seal or bearing area.

Remove the three bearing screws, bearing and shaft seal (Items 13, 14 & 15) from the screw plug. The lower housing may now be disassembled from the screw plug by removing the six cap screws (Item 17). This need not be disassembled under normal maintenance.

Remove the lower housing from screw plug and remove the o-ring (Item 12) from groove in the screw plug.



**AIRVAC - RSM PTY LIMITED**

Suite 11,  
283 Penshurst Street,  
Willoughby, N.S.W. 2068

Telephone: (02) 417 8133  
Facsimile: (02) 417 8162

VALVE PIT

FIGURE 2-7











## **SECTION 4**

### **INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SCHEME**

#### **SIEMENS VACUUM PUMPS**



# SIEMENS

## ELMO-F-Vakuumpumpen

## 2BV2

ELMO-F vacuum pumps

Pompes à vide ELMO-F

Bombas de vacío ELMO-F

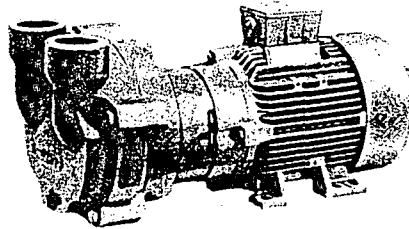
Pompe a vuoto ELMO-F

ELMO-F-vakuumpumpar

Betriebsanleitung/Instructions

EWN-Bestell-Nr./Order No. 610.41 184/21 b

Reparaturanleitung/Repair Instructions



### Betriebsanleitung

#### Beschreibung

##### Anwendung und Betriebsbedingungen

Die Vakuumpumpen sind einstufige Flüssigkeitsring-Gaspumpen in Blockbauform. Sie sind für Dauerbetrieb ausgelegt. Als Betriebsflüssigkeit wird normalerweise Wasser, in Sonderfällen werden auch Säuren, Laugen, Lösungsmittel usw. verwendet (der Werkstoff der Pumpenteile muß den aggressiven Betriebsflüssigkeiten oder aggressiven Gasen angepaßt sein). Geringe Mengen leichter Schwebstoffe oder Flüssigkeiten können mitgefördert werden. Bei größeren Mengen sind Abscheider vorzuschalten.

Bei ELMO-F-Vakuumpumpen mit (Ex)e-G3-Motoren sind die entsprechenden Sicherheitsvorschriften zu beachten.

Der kleinste Ansaugdruck der Vakuumpumpen beträgt – bei Wasser von 15 °C als Betriebsflüssigkeit – 40 mbar (30 Torr), bei vorgeschalteten Gasstrahlern 11 mbar (8 Torr).

Die Betriebsflüssigkeit (vorwiegend Wasser) muß frei von Fremdkörpern sein. Sie wird zum Teil mit dem Gas aus dem Druckstutzen ausgeschoben und muß deshalb laufend ergänzt werden. Die Temperatur der Betriebsflüssigkeit beeinflusst das Saugvermögen. Sie sollte mit 5 bis 15 °C der Pumpe zugeführt werden. Die Vakuumpumpe saugt die Betriebsflüssigkeit auch selbsttätig bis zu einer Saughöhe von ca. 1 m an. Die Druckleitung darf bei Betrieb ohne aufgebauten Abscheider nicht mehr als 0,5 m über Pumpendruckstutzen geführt werden bzw. der Gegendruck darf 1,1 bar (absolut) nicht überschreiten.

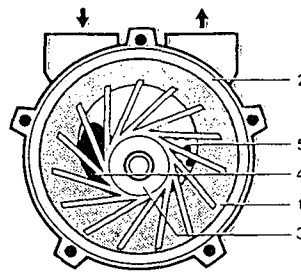
##### Bauart und Wirkungsweise

Die Pumpe arbeitet nach dem Flüssigkeitsringprinzip. In einem exzentrisch zur Welle gelegenen, zylindrischen Pumpengehäuse ist ein Laufrad angeordnet, welches die Antriebsleistung auf einen Flüssigkeitsring überträgt, der sich beim Inbetriebsetzen der Pumpe konzentrisch zum Gehäuse bildet.

Bei Bewegung der Flüssigkeit nach außen wird Gas durch den Saugschlitz in der Steuerscheibe angesaugt, nach innen verdichtet und durch den Druckschlitz in der Steuerscheibe ausgeschoben.

- 1 Flüssigkeitsring
- 2 Pumpendeckel
- 3 Laufrad
- 4 Saugschlitz
- 5 Druckschlitz

Schematischer Schnitt durch den Arbeitsraum  
(vom Motor her gesehen)



- 1 Liquid ring
- 2 Pump cover
- 3 Impeller
- 4 Suction port
- 5 Discharge port

Section through the compression chamber  
(viewed from the motor)

Die Welle ist mit einer Gleitringdichtung abgedichtet. Als Lager sind Rillenkugellager eingebaut.

The shaft is sealed off with sliding-ring packings. The pumps have deep-groove ball bearings.

© Siemens AG 1982

1



## Betriebsflüssigkeit

Die Pumpe benötigt während des Betriebes laufend Betriebsflüssigkeit (im Normalfall Wasser). Sie wird zum Teil mit dem verdichteten Gas durch den Druckstutzen in den Abscheider ausgeschoben. Der Flüssigkeitsring muß deshalb kontinuierlich durch neue, kühle Betriebsflüssigkeit ergänzt werden. Neben der eigentlichen Arbeitsfunktion des Flüssigkeitsringes hat die Betriebsflüssigkeit die Aufgabe, die Verdichtungswärme abzuführen, die Spalte zwischen Laufrad und Steuerscheibe abzudichten und die Gleitringdichtung zu schmieren.

Die Temperatur der Betriebsflüssigkeit beeinflusst das Saugvermögen. Je niedriger die Temperatur ist, desto mehr wird das Saugvermögen durch Kondensation der Dampfanteile aus dem Fördergas erhöht. Deshalb ist möglichst kühle Betriebsflüssigkeit (in der Regel Wasser von 5 °C bis 15 °C) der Pumpe zuzuführen. Eine Betriebsflüssigkeitstemperatur von > 15 °C mindert das Saugvermögen der Pumpe gegenüber den Listendaten; sie darf 80 °C nicht überschreiten.

Bezüglich der Betriebsflüssigkeitsart ist zu beachten, daß die von der Flüssigkeit berührten Teile hinsichtlich des Werkstoffes geeignet sind bzw. angepaßt werden müssen. – Bitte anfragen!

Die Betriebsflüssigkeit muß frei von Feststoffen, wie z. B. Sand, sein, da sonst starker Verschleiß im Gehäuse auftritt.

## Montage und Bedienung

### Aufstellung

Zum Schutz der Motoren gegen Überlastung sind stets Motorschutzschalter zu verwenden. Diese müssen auf den im Leistungsschild angegebenen Nennstrom eingestellt sein.

Der Saugleitung ist eine mit möglichst geringem Widerstand ausgelegte Rückschlagklappe (4, siehe Seite 3) vorzusehen, um ein Rückströmen von Gas oder Betriebsflüssigkeit bei Betriebsunterbrechungen zu vermeiden.

Zum Einstellen des Betriebsflüssigkeitsstromes ist in die Flüssigkeitsleitung nach dem Absperrventil (11) ein Regelventil (10) einzubauen, welches nach dem Einstellen nicht mehr betätigt wird und so einen gleichmäßigen Betriebsflüssigkeitsstrom gewährleistet.

Die druckseitig abzuleitende Betriebsflüssigkeit sollte zur Kontrolle über Trichter abgeführt werden.

### Schaltungen

#### a) Kühlterschaltung

wird bevorzugt, wenn genügend Betriebsflüssigkeit zur Verfügung steht und ein niedriger Ansaugdruck erzielt werden soll. Die zugeführte Betriebsflüssigkeit wird druckseitig vollständig abgeleitet und durch neue Flüssigkeit ersetzt.

#### b) Sparschaltung (mit Abscheider)

wird verwendet, um Betriebsflüssigkeit zu sparen. Ein Teil der im Abscheider abgeschiedenen Betriebsflüssigkeit wird der Vakuumpumpe ungekühlt wieder zugeleitet, der andere Teil wird durch neue Flüssigkeit ersetzt. Die dazu notwendige Verteilung wird mit dem Abscheider geliefert.

#### c) Vorschalten eines Gasstrahlers

wird angewandt, wenn Ansaugdrücke kleiner 40 mbar (30 Torr) benötigt werden. Kleinster Ansaugdruck bei Wasser von 15 °C als Betriebsflüssigkeit 11 mbar (8 Torr).

#### d) Schaltung für Pumpen mit Kavitationsschutz

wird angewandt, wenn Kavitationsgeräusche auftreten (überhöhte Betriebsflüssigkeitstemperatur bzw. bei Dampfabsaugung). An der Kavitationsschutzöffnung (17) kann bei größeren Ansaugdrücken Wasser und Geräusch austreten. Es ist deshalb eine Leitung (18) so zu verlegen, daß diese in den Abscheider oder in den Betriebsflüssigkeitsablauf mündet. Es muß gewährleistet sein, daß durch diese Leitung nur Luft angesaugt werden kann. Deshalb ist darauf zu achten, daß diese Leitung nicht unterhalb der Betriebsflüssigkeitsoberfläche endet.

## Working liquid

The pump requires working liquid (normally water) during operation. Some of this is expelled together with the compressed gas, to the separator through the discharge nozzle. The liquid ring therefore has to be continually replenished with fresh, cool working liquid. Besides its proper function of making up the liquid ring, the working liquid also dissipates the heat developed by compression, seals the gap between the impeller and the port plates and lubricates the sliding-ring packing.

The suction capacity depends on the temperature of the working liquid. The lower the temperature the higher the suction capacity rises due to condensation of the vapour content of the medium. For that reason working liquid which is as cool as possible should be employed (normally water at 5 to 15 °C). A working-liquid temperature above 15 °C reduces the suction capacity of the pump as stated in the performance data; it must not exceed 80 °C.

With respect to the type of working liquid, care must be taken to see that parts coming into contact with the liquid are of suitable material. If necessary, please enquire.

The working liquid must not contain any solid materials, e.g. sand, otherwise the casing will be subjected to heavy wear.

## Installation and operation

### Setting up

Motor protection circuit-breakers should always be fitted to safeguard the motors against overload. These must be set to the rated current given on the rating plate.

A check valve (4; see page 3) designed to offer as little resistance as possible should be fitted in the suction pipe to prevent gas or working liquid from flowing back into the pump if operations is interrupted.

A control valve (10) should be fitted in the working-liquid pipe downstream of the shut-off valve (11) in order to control the working-liquid flow. To ensure uniform flow this valve should not be readjusted.

The working liquid to be carried away on the pressure side should be drained off through funnels to enable it to be checked.

### Working liquid connections

#### a) Cooling-circuit connection

This is preferred where there is an ample supply of working liquid and where a low suction pressure is required. The working liquid discharged from the pump is completely drained off and replaced by fresh liquid.

#### b) Economy-circuit connection (with separator)

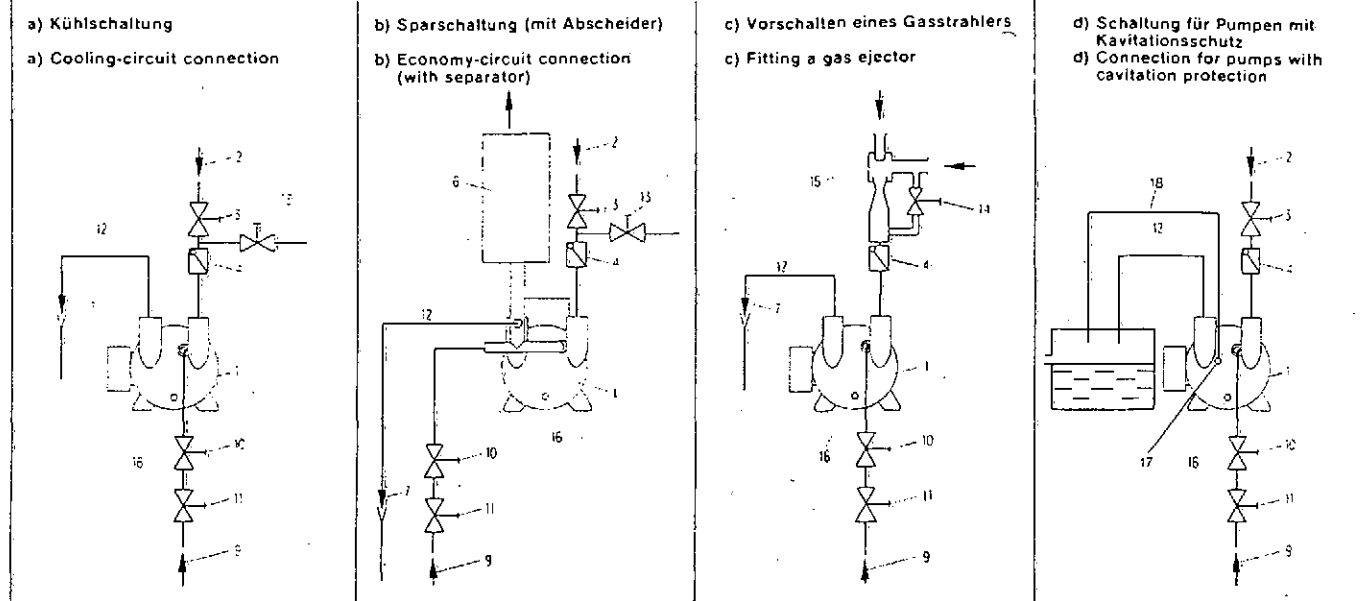
This connection is used where working liquid must be used sparingly. Part of the working liquid recovered from the discharge in the separator is recirculated to the pump without cooling, the remainder being replaced by fresh liquid. The required distribution pipe is supplied with the separator.

#### c) Fitting a gas ejector

This connection is used where suction pressures below 40 mbar (30 Torr) are required. The minimum suction pressure with water at 15 °C used as a working liquid is 11 mbar (8 Torr).

#### d) Connection for pumps with cavitation protection

This connection must be employed if the sound of cavitation has been heard (caused by excessive working-liquid temperature or by the extraction of vapour). Water may flow out of the anti-cavitation hole (17) and noise may also be heard at extremely high suction pressures. A line (18) must therefore be laid which terminates either in the separator or the working-liquid drain. Steps must be taken to ensure that this line sucks in air only, for which reason it is essential to prevent it from terminating below the surface of the working liquid.



- 1 ELMO-F-Vakuumpumpe  
2 Saugleitung  
3 Schieber  
4 Rückschlagklappe  
6 Flüssigkeitsabscheider  
7 Überlauf  
9 Betriebsflüssigkeitszuführung  
10 Regelventil

- 11 Absperrventil (Magnetventil)  
12 Druckleitung  
13 Luftschnüffventil  
14 Schieber (bei Bedarf)  
15 Gasstrahler  
16 Spül- und Entleerungsbohrung  
17 Kavitationsschutzöffnung  
18 Leitung

- 1 ELMO-F vacuum pump  
2 Suction line  
3 Shut-off valve  
4 Check valve  
6 Separator  
7 Overflow  
9 Working-liquid feed  
10 Control valve

- 11 Shut-off valve (solenoid)  
12 Discharge line  
13 Blow valve  
14 Shut-off valve (as required)  
15 Ejector  
16 Flushing and draining outlet  
17 Anti-cavitation hole  
18 Line

### Erste Inbetriebnahme

Alle Anschlußöffnungen sind bei Lieferung verschlossen, um ein Eindringen von Fremdkörpern zu vermeiden. Die Verschlüsse sind erst beim Anbringen der Rohrleitungen zu entfernen. Beim Anbau der Rohrleitungen an die Pumpe und an den Flüssigkeitsabscheider sind Verspannungen zu vermeiden.

Schieber (3) schließen.

Regelventil (10) und Absperrventil (11) öffnen und Vakuumpumpe mit Betriebsflüssigkeit auffüllen.

Soll die Betriebsflüssigkeit selbst angesaugt werden, so ist die Pumpe über den Saug- oder Druckstutzen mit Betriebsflüssigkeit aufzufüllen.

### Pumpe nicht trocken laufen lassen!

Pumpe kurz einschalten – Drehrichtung prüfen (Vergleich der Drehrichtung des Motorlüfters (501 A; siehe Seite 24) mit Pfeil auf Pumpengehäuse (002 A)).

Schieber (3) öffnen.

Pumpe einschalten.

Nennbetriebsflüssigkeitsstrom überprüfen und evtl. mit Regelventil (10) korrigieren.

Einstellen des Betriebsflüssigkeitsstromes:

Während einer Zeiteinheit ist der am Überlauf (7) austretende Betriebsflüssigkeitsstrom in ein Gefäß zu leiten und auszuliefern oder mit einem Flüssigkeitsmengemesser einzustellen.

Typ	Nennbetriebsflüssigkeitsstrom (Wasser)			
	Kühlschaltung		Sparschaltung	
2 BV	m <sup>3</sup> /h	l/min	m <sup>3</sup> /h	l/min
2060	0,20	3,3	0,12	2,0
2061	0,23	3,8	0,12	2,0
2070	0,28	4,7	0,15	2,5
2071	0,45	7,5	0,25	4,2

Sofern Pumpe stark zu kreischen beginnt (Kavitationsgeräusch), ist am Schnüffventil (13) so viel Luft einzulassen, bis das Geräusch zurückgeht.

### Initial operation

All the openings of the pump are closed off at the factory to prevent the ingress of foreign bodies. These plugs should not be removed until the lines are fitted. When fitting the lines to the pump and separator ensure that they are not subjected to stress or tension.

Close shut-off valve (3).

Open control valve (10) and shut-off valve (11) and fill vacuum pump with working liquid.

If the pump is to run in self-priming operation, fill it with working liquid via the suction or discharge nozzles.

### Never let the pump run dry.

Switch on motor briefly – check direction of rotation (compare direction of rotation of motor fan (501 A; see page 24) with arrow on pump casing (002 A)).

Open shut-off valve (3).

Switch on pump motor.

Check working-liquid flow rate and correct with control valve (10) if necessary.

Adjusting the flow rate:

Collect working-liquid discharge from overflow (7) in a vessel over a given period and measure in litres or alternatively fit a flow meter.

Type	Working-liquid flow rate (water)			
	Cooling connection		Economy connection	
2 BV	m <sup>3</sup> /h	l/min	m <sup>3</sup> /h	l/min
2060	0,20	3,3	0,12	2,0
2061	0,23	3,8	0,12	2,0
2070	0,28	4,7	0,15	2,5
2071	0,45	7,5	0,25	4,2

If the pump starts to screech (cavitation) admit air through the blow valve (13) until the noise decreases.



## Anfahren und Abstellen

Anfahren: Pumpe einschalten – sofort Absperrventil (11) öffnen.

Abstellen: Absperrventil (11) schließen – Pumpe sofort ausschalten.

**Achtung:** Wird die Pumpe bei einem Eintrittsdruck  $< 100$  mbar abgeschaltet, so ist die Saugseite (zwischen Rückschlagklappe (4) und Pumpe (1)) gleichzeitig mit dem Abschalten der Pumpe zu belüften. (Nicht erforderlich bei Pumpen mit Kavitationschutz.)

Bei automatischem Betrieb ist das Absperrventil (11) durch ein vom Motorbetrieb abhängiges Magnetventil in der Betriebsflüssigkeitszuleitung zu ersetzen. Dabei bedeutet Pumpe eingeschaltet = Ventil offen; und Pumpe ausgeschaltet = Ventil geschlossen.

Das Regelventil (10) bleibt bei Betriebsunterbrechung eingestellt.

## Betriebshinweise

Pumpe nicht trocken laufen lassen!

Bei einem Betriebsflüssigkeitsstrom von  $> 2,5 \times$  Nennbetriebsflüssigkeitsstrom oder bei Überschreitung des Gegendruckes von 1,1 bar (absolut) wird der Motor überlastet.

Bei Absaugung von heißen Gasen und Dämpfen ab  $80^\circ\text{C}$  empfehlen wir eine Erhöhung des Betriebsflüssigkeitsstromes bis auf das max. 2,5fache oder einen Vorkondensator.

Belastung mit dem geförderten Gas oder der Betriebsflüssigkeit einkörniger Schmutz in die Pumpe, so kann dieser während des Betriebes durch die unten liegende Spülbohrung G  $\frac{1}{4}$  (siehe "Schaltungen") ausgespült werden, um den Verschleiß des Laufrades (047 A; siehe Seite 24) und Pumpengehäuses (002 A) bzw. Festsetzen des Laufrades (047 A) zu verhindern.

Bei feststehendem Laufrad (047 A) ist in das Wellenende auf der Außenlüfterseite eine Schraube M 10 bzw. M 12 einzudrehen. Damit kann die Welle freigedreht werden (Lüfterhaube (500 A) vorher abnehmen). **Achtung!** Vor dem Einschalten ist die Schraube wieder zu entfernen und die Lüfterhaube (500 A) wieder aufzusetzen.

## Wartung

### Allgemeines

Wenn stark kalkhaltiges Wasser als Betriebsflüssigkeit verwendet wird, ist die Betriebsflüssigkeit zu enthärten oder die Vakuumpumpe in entsprechenden Zeiträumen mit einem Entkalker zu spülen.

Für längerem Stillstand (ca. 4 Wochen) oder bei Frostgefahr Pumpe komplett entleeren und anschließend konservieren, d. h.,  $\frac{1}{2}$  Liter Konservierungsmittel in Saug- oder Druckstutzen füllen und Pumpe kurz einschalten. Sollte das Laufrad trotzdem einmal festsetzen, empfehlen wir, die Pumpe mit 10prozentiger Oxalsäure zu füllen und diese ca. 30 Minuten einwirken zu lassen.

### Schmierung

Nach normalen Betriebsbedingungen (50 Hz) für Motorisierstoffklasse B oder F gilt:

Nach etwa 10 000 Betriebsstunden, jedoch nach maximal  $2\frac{1}{2}$  Jahren, sind die Rillenkugellager (007 A und 008 A) und benachbarten Fetträume von Altfett und anderen Verunreinigungen zu säubern. Lager und angrenzende Fetträume in Nilos-Ring (032 A), Lagerdeckel (027 A) und Lagerschild (400 A) sind mit neuem Fett zu versehen.

Fettsorte: Mikrogel Wälzlagerfett Aero Shell Grease 16 oder leichtwertiges Schmierfett DIN 51825/DIN 51502-KTC E 2 R (Schmierfett auf Syntheseölbasis).

Fettfüllung: Ca. 50 % des freien Raumes im Rillenkugellager und ca.  $\frac{2}{3}$  des benachbarten Fettraumes im Nilos-Ring (032 A), im Lagerdeckel (027 A) und im Lagerschild (400 A); siehe Seite 25.

Das Mischen verschiedener Fettsorten ist zu vermeiden.

## Starting-up and shutting-down

Starting-up: Switch on motor and immediately open shut-off valve (11).

Shutting-down: Close shut-off valve (11) and immediately switch off motor.

**Note:** If the pump is shut down at a suction pressure of less than 100 mbar, the suction side (between check valve (4) and pump (1)) should be vented while the motor is switched off. This is not necessary in the case of pumps with cavitation protection.

In automatic operation the shut-off valve (11) is replaced by a solenoid valve in the working-liquid feed line whose operation depends on the motor, i.e. when the latter is switched on the valve is open and when it is switched off the valve is closed.

The control valve (10) remains closed during a pause in operation.

## Operating guidelines

Never let the pump run dry.

The motor will be overloaded if the working-liquid flow exceeds 2.5 times the rated value or the maximum backpressure (absolute) of 1.1 bar.

When pumping gases and vapours at high temperatures (from  $80^\circ\text{C}$  upwards), we recommend fitting an upstream condenser or raising the working-liquid flow rate by a maximum of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  times the normal rate.

If fine-particled dirt is borne into the pump together with the gas or working liquid, it can be washed out during operation through the flushing outlet G  $\frac{1}{4}$  underneath (see diagram, part 16 in "Working-liquid connections") in order to prevent wear to the pump casing (002 A) and the impeller (047 A; see page 24) and also to obviate seizing of the latter.

If the impeller jams, an M10 or M12 bolt should be screwed into the shaft extension on the motor fan side so that the shaft can be turned freely (remove the fan cowl (500 A) first).

**Warning:** Before switching on remove the bolt and replace the fan cowl.

## Maintenance

### General remarks

If very hard water is used as a working liquid, it must either be softened or the vacuum pump flushed with a deliming agent at appropriate intervals.

Before long shutdowns (approximately 4 weeks) or if there is any risk of freezing, the pump should be completely drained and half a litre of anti-corrosive solvent poured into the suction or discharge nozzle and the pump then briefly switched on. Should the impeller nevertheless seize, we recommend that the pump be filled with a 10 % solution of oxalic acid and that this be left to act for approximately 30 minutes.

### Lubrication

The following applies to normal operating conditions (50 Hz) and class B or F insulation:

Proceed as follows after approximately 10 000 hours of operation or a maximum of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  years: The deep-groove ball bearings (007 A and 008 A) and the adjacent grease chambers should be cleaned of old grease and other impurities, after which the bearings and grease chambers in the Nilos ring (032 A), bearings cap (027 A) and endshield (400 A) should be regreased.

Types of grease: Microgel rolling-contact bearing grease; Aero-Shell Grease 16 or equivalent to DIN 51825/DIN 51502 - KTC E 2 R (grease on a synthetic oil base).

Grease charge: approximately 50 % of the empty space in the deep-groove ball bearing and approximately  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the adjacent grease space in the Nilos ring (032 A), in the bearing cap (27 A) and in the endshield (400 A); see page 25.

Do not mix different types of grease.

## Störungen und deren Beseitigung.

Störungen	Ursache	Abhilfe
Motor läuft nicht an, kein Laufgeräusch	Unterbrechung in mindestens zwei Leitungen der Stromversorgung	Sicherungen, Klemmen und Zuleitung prüfen
Motor läuft nicht an, Brummgeräusch	Unterbrechung in einer Leitung der Stromversorgung Pumpe sitzt fest	Sicherungen, Klemmen und Zuleitung prüfen Pumpe durchdrehen (siehe unter „Betriebshinweise“), evtl. entleeren und säubern (siehe unter Rep.-Anlgt. Pkt. 1.1 und 1.2, wobei das Ausdrücken der evtl. im Deckel feststehenden Steuerscheibe entfällt), oder siehe auch „Pumpe blockiert“.
Pumpe blockiert	Laufrad feststehend Laufrad defekt Pumpe verkalkt Motorlager defekt	Siehe „Motor läuft nicht an, Brummgeräusch“ Laufrad ersetzen (siehe Rep.-Anlgt. Pkt. 2.1 u. 2.2) siehe unter Wartung Lager ersetzen (siehe Rep.-Anlgt. Pkt. 4.1 und 4.2)
Motorschutzschalter löst nach Einschalten wieder aus	Kurzschluß in der Wicklung Motor überlastet  Gegendruck im Druckstutzen zu hoch mitgeführter Flüssigkeitsanteil zu hoch Pumpe sitzt fest	Wicklung prüfen lassen Betriebsflüssigkeitsstrom drosseln Gegendruck verkleinern  Flüssigkeitsanteil verkleinern Siehe „Motor läuft nicht an, Brummgeräusch“ oder „Pumpe blockiert“
Pumpe erzeugt kein Vakuum	keine Betriebsflüssigkeit vorhanden  große Undichtheit in der Anlage falsche Drehrichtung	Zufuhr des Betriebsflüssigkeitsstromes am Überlauf prüfen Anlage abdichten Drehrichtung ändern durch Vertauschen von 2 elektr. Anschlußleitungen
Pumpe erzeugt zu geringes Vakuum	Pumpe zu klein Betriebsflüssigkeitsstrom zu gering Betriebsflüssigkeit zu warm $>15^{\circ}\text{C}$ Gasstrahler nicht passend  Gasstrahler verschmutzt kleine Undichtheit in der Anlage Gleitringdichtung undicht	größere Pumpe einsetzen Betriebsflüssigkeitsstrom bis zum 2.5fachen erhöhen Betriebsflüssigkeitsstrom kühlen bzw. erhöhen passenden Gasstrahler einsetzen Gasstrahler reinigen Anlage abdichten Gleitringdichtung überprüfen
Anomale, kreischende Geräusche	Kavitation der Pumpe  Betriebsflüssigkeitsstrom zu groß	am Luftschnüffelventil mehr Luft einlassen oder Gasstrahler vorschalten Betriebsflüssigkeitsstrom prüfen und reduzieren
Pumpe undicht	Dichtungen	Dichtungen überprüfen

## Reparaturanleitung

()-Angaben siehe Seite 24

## Allgemein

**Achtung!** Vor Beginn der Arbeiten ELMO-F-Vakuumpumpen sichtbar vom Netz trennen. Saug-, Druck- und Betriebsflüssigkeitsleitungen (2,9 und 12, siehe Seite 3) entfernen und nach Beendigung aller Arbeiten unverspannt wieder anschließen. Es empfiehlt sich, vor Demontearbeiten die Pumpe zu entkalken! Bei Reparatur alle Teile gründlich reinigen, evtl. nacharbeiten und auf Wiederverwendbarkeit prüfen.

ELMO-F-Vakuumpumpen in (Ex)e-Ausführung dürfen nur in von der PTB anerkannten Werkstätten repariert bzw. müssen von einem Sachverständigen abgenommen werden.

## Faults and their remedy

Fault	Cause	Remedy
Motor does not start, no running sound	Fault in at least two phase conductors	Check fuses, terminals and supply line
Motor does not start, Humming sound	Fault in one phase conductor Pump jammed	Check fuses, terminals and supply line Rotate pump by hand (see "Operating guidelines"), drain and clean (see "Instructions for repairs", Points 1.1 and 1.2, it not being necessary to press out the port plate jammed in the cover). See also "Pump blocked".
Pump blocked	Impeller jammed Impeller defective  Pump furred by hard water Motor bearing defective	See "Motor does not start, Humming sound" Replace impeller (see "Instructions for repairs", Point 2.1 and Point 2.2)  See "Maintenance" Replace bearing (see "Instructions for repairs", Points 4.1 and 4.2)
Motor-protection circuit-breaker trips after switching on	Interturn short-circuit Motor overloaded  Backpressure at discharge nozzle too high Proportion of entrained liquid too high Pump jammed	Have winding checked Reduce working-liquid flow rate Reduce backpressure Reduce proportion See "Motor does not start, Humming sound" or "Pump blocked"
Pump does not produce a vacuum	No working liquid available  Serious leak in the system Incorrect direction of rotation	Check working liquid at overflow Seal system Reverse direction of rotation by interchanging two phase leads
Pump produces insufficient vacuum	Pump too small Working-liquid flow rate too low Working liquid too warm (above $15^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) Gas ejector not suitable Gas ejector dirty Small leaks in system Sliding-ring packing defective	Use larger pump Increase rate by up to 2.5 times Cool working liquid or increase rate Fit suitable gas ejector Clean it Seal system Check sliding-ring packing
Unusual screeching noise	Pump cavitating  Working-liquid flow rate too high	Let more air through blow valve or fit gas ejector Check and reduce working-liquid flow rate
Pump leaking	Seals	Check seals

## Instructions for repairs

(For Nos. in () see page 24)

## General remarks

**Note:** Before beginning any work on the ELMO-F vacuum pumps isolate them from the supply. Remove suction, pressure and working-liquid lines (2,9 and 12, see page 3) and after conclusion of repairs connect them up again, ensuring that they are not subjected to stress or tension. It is recommended that the pump be delimed before dismantling it. When conducting repairs, clean all parts thoroughly, remachine them if necessary and check them for further use.

(Ex)e ELMO-F vacuum pumps must be repaired only in workshops approved by the German Federal Testing Authority (PTB) or be acceptance tested by an authorized official.

Pumpe senkrecht auf Lüfterhaube (500 A) stellen; Schrauben (063 A) lösen; Pumpendeckel (061 A) abnehmen; Steuerscheibe (048 B) mit Dichtung (057 A), Fangplatte (051 A) und Ventilplatte (050 A) abnehmen und voneinander trennen. Bei feststehender Steuerscheibe (048 B) im Pumpendeckel (061 A) kann durch die Spülbohrung (16, siehe Seite 3) mit einem Bolzen  $\varnothing 10 \times 24$  lang für 2BV206 bzw.  $\varnothing 10 \times 30$  lang für 2BV207, durch Eindrehen der Verschlußschraube (068 A) die Steuerscheibe (048 B) aus dem Pumpendeckel (061 A) gedrückt werden.

## 2 Montage der Deckeldichtung bzw. Steuerscheibe

Steuerscheibe (048 B) mit Dichtung (057 A), Fangplatte (051 A) und Ventilplatte (050 A) komplettieren und auf Pumpengehäuse (002 A) auflegen. Dabei ist darauf zu achten, daß die in der Steuerscheibe (048 B) befindliche Aussparung (4 mm breit, 9 mm tief) mit dem im Pumpengehäuse (002 A) befindlichen Zentrierstift (037 A) übereinstimmt. Pumpendeckel (061 A) auflegen und mit Schrauben (063 A) am Pumpengehäuse (002 A) anschrauben. Pumpe wieder auf Motorfüße stellen.

### 1.1 Demontage von Laufrad und Gleitringdichtung (GLRD)

Pumpe senkrecht auf Lüfterhaube (500 A) stellen. Schrauben (063 A) lösen, Pumpendeckel (061 A) abnehmen – dabei ist darauf zu achten, daß die Steuerscheibe (048 B) beim Abnehmen des Pumpendeckels (061 A) nicht herunterfällt. Laufrad (047 A) abziehen (mit Abziehvorrichtung, über in die Laufradnabe eingeschraubte Schrauben). Paßfeder (006 A) aus der Motorwelle herausnehmen, Toleranzring (048 A) entfernen, Gleitringdichtung (035 A) mit Scheibe (036 A) abziehen. (Zur leichteren Demontage der GLRD Welle vor der Dichtung mit Öl benetzen).

Gegenring der GLRD mit, falls vorhanden, Abdrückring (034 A) aus dem Pumpengehäuse (002 A) mit zwei Hebeln, z. B. Schraubendreher, durch die seitlichen Schlitze am Pumpengehäuse (002 A) nach vorne abhebeln und entfernen. Bei stark verkalkter Pumpe Demontage nach Punkt 3.1.

### 2.2 Montage der GLRD und des Laufrades

Abdrückring (034 A), falls vorhanden, und Gegenring der GLRD (035 A) in das Pumpengehäuse (002 A) einsetzen. (Leichtere Montage des Gegenringes, wenn O-Ring mit Öl benetzt ist.)

Dabei ist zu beachten, daß der im Pumpengehäuse (002 A) befindliche Stift (030 A), falls vorhanden, in die Aussparung des Gegenringes paßt. Motorwelle am Sitz der Gleitringdichtung (035 A) leicht einölen. Gleitringdichtung (035 A) mit Scheibe (036 A) auf Motorwelle schieben. Paßfeder (006 A) und Toleranzring (048 A) in die Motorwelle einlegen. Der Toleranzring (048 A) nach jeder Demontage durch einen neuen zu ersetzen. Laufrad (047 A) auf die Welle aufziehen, so daß ein Spalt zwischen Laufrad (047 A) und Steuerscheibe (048 B) von 0,1 bis 0,15 mm entsteht. Kontrolle des Spaltes: Pumpe läuferseitig auf Wellenende stellen. Lineal anstelle der Steuerscheibe (048 B) auf Pumpengehäuse (002 A) legen und Luftspalt zwischen Lineal und Laufrad (047 A) prüfen (z. B. mit Fühllehre). Mit Ventilplatte (050 A), Fangplatte (051 A) und Dichtung (057 A) komplettierte Steuerscheibe (048 B) auf das Pumpengehäuse (002 A) aufsetzen. Fixierung der Steuerscheibe (048 B) erfolgt durch Zentrierstift (037 A), wie unter Punkt 1.2 beschrieben.

Pumpendeckel (061 A) aufsetzen und mit Schrauben (063 A) anschrauben. Pumpe auf Motorfüße stellen. Pumpe muß sich nach Montage leicht durchdrehen lassen (von Hand Motorlüfter drehen). Dazu Schrauben (503 A) lösen und Lüfterhaube (500 A) abnehmen. Am Außenlüfter (501 A) drehen. Lüfterhaube (500 A) wieder aufsetzen und mit Schrauben (503 A) festschrauben.

### 3.1 Demontage des Pumpengehäuses

Die „Demontage von Laufrad und Gleitringdichtung“ (Punkt 1), wobei das Heraushebeln des Gegenringes mit, falls vorhanden, Abdrückring (034 A) aus dem Pumpengehäuse (002 A) entfallen kann, da bei der weiteren Demontage der Gegenring mit dem Pumpengehäuse (002 A) von der Welle abgezogen werden kann. Schrauben (503 A) lösen, Lüfterhaube (500 A) abnehmen, Sicherungsring (507 A), falls vorhanden, entfernen. Außenlüfter (501 A) abziehen und Paßfeder (505 A), falls vorhanden, bzw. Toleranzring (043 A), falls vorhanden, aus der Welle nehmen.

Schrauben (025 A) lösen, dabei auf Einlegemuttern (082 C), falls vorhanden, achten (werden bei der Montage wieder benötigt). Pumpengehäuse (002 A), Lagerschild (026 A) und Motorrotor (005 A) vom Motorgehäuse mit eingedrücktem Ständerbolzen (001 A) trennen. Schrauben (038 B) lösen und Pumpengehäuse (002 A) von Lagerschild (026 A) und Laufer (005 A) trennen. Bei stark verkalkter Gleitringdichtung (035 A) Pumpengehäuse (002 A) mit Abziehvorrichtung über Wellenspiegel abziehen.

Place the pump vertically on the fan cowl (500 A); slacken bolts (063 A); remove pump cover (061 A); lift off the port plate (048 B) together with the gasket (057 A), catch plate (051 A) and valve plate (050 A), then separate them from each other (if the port plate (048 B) jams, it can be forced out of the pump cover (061 A) through the flushing outlet (16, see page 3) by turning in a 10 mm dia. x 24 mm bolt (for 2BV206) or a 10 mm dia. x 30 mm one (for 2BV207).

## 1.2 Fitting the cover gasket and port plate

Fit the port plate (048 B) with gasket (057 A), catch plate (051 A) and valve plate (050 A) together and mount them on the pump casing (002 A). Ensure that the recess (4 mm wide, 9 mm deep) in the port plate coincides with the centering pin (037 A) in the casing. Now mount the pump cover (061 A) and screw it to the casing with the bolt (063 A). Put the pump back on its feet.

### 2.1 Dismantling the impeller and sliding-ring packing

Place the pump vertically on the fan cowl (500 A), slacken the bolt (063 A) and remove the pump cover (061 A), ensuring that the port plate (048 B) does not fall out. Pull the impeller (047 A) by means of a puller tool attached to the bolts screwed into the impeller hub. Withdraw the featherkey (006 A) from the motor shaft, remove the spacer ring (048 A) and pull off the sliding-ring packing (035 A) with washer (036 A). (To facilitate removal of the packing, coat that part of the shaft protruding from the packing with oil).

Now prise the backing ring off the sliding-ring packing – together with the forcing-off ring (034 A) – through the slot in the side of the casing (002 A) by using two screwdrivers, for example, as levers and take it out. Observe Point 3.1 if the pump is furred with lime.

### 2.2 Fitting the sliding-ring packing and the impeller

Insert the forcing-off ring (034 A), if one is fitted, and the backing ring of the sliding-ring packing (035 A) in the pump casing (002 A). It is easier to fit the backing ring if the O-ring has been lubricated with oil.

Ensure that the pin (030 A) in the pump casing (002 A) coincides with the recess in the backing ring. Oil the motor shaft lightly at the seat of the sliding-ring packing (035 A). Now push the sliding-ring packing together with the washer (036 A) onto the motor shaft. Insert the featherkey (006 A) in the motor shaft and fit spacer ring (048 A). The spacer ring should be replaced every time the sliding-ring packing and impeller are dismantled. Mount the impeller (047 A) on the shaft so that a gap of 0.1 to 0.15 mm remains between the impeller and the port plate (048 B). Check the gap as follows: Set the pump vertically on the fan cowl. Place a rule – instead of the port plate (048 B) – on the pump casing (002 A) and check the air gap between the rule and the impeller (e.g. with a thickness gauge). Mount the valve plate (050 A), catch plate (051 A) and gasket (057 A) together with the port plate (048 B) on the pump casing (002 A). The port plate (048 B) is then secured by means of the centering pin (037 A) as described under Point 1.2.

Place the pump cover (061 A) in position and screw it on with the bolts (063 A). Now put the pump back on its feet. After assembly, the pump must rotate easily (turn the fan by hand); to do so, remove bolts (503 A) and take off the fan cowl (500 A). Turn the outer fan (501 A), then replace the cowl and tighten up the bolts (503 A).

### 3.1 Dismantling the pump casing

Proceed as described in "Dismantling the impeller und sliding-ring packing" (Point 2.1); it is not necessary to lever the packing ring (or forcing-off ring (034 A) if fitted) out of the pump casing (002 A) because the packing ring can be withdrawn from the shaft together with the casing during further dismantling. Unscrew bolts (503 A), remove fan cowl (500 A) and also the circlip (507 A), if fitted. Withdraw outer fan (501 A) and featherkey (505 A), or remove spacer ring (043 A) from shaft, if fitted.

Unscrew bolts (025 A), retaining nuts (082 C), if fitted, (required for assembly). Separate pump casing (002 A), endshield (026 A) and motor rotor (005 A) from motor frame (001 A), containing the stator core. Unscrew bolts (038 B) and separate pump casing (002 A) from endshield (026 A) and rotor (005 A). If sliding-ring packing (035 A) is heavily scaled, pull the pump casing (002 A) off over the end of the shaft with the puller tool.



### 3.2 Montage des Pumpengehäuses

Pumpengehäuse (002 A) mit Schrauben (038 B) und Federringen (038 A) an Lagerschild (026 A) anschrauben. Lageranstellung (018 A) – bestehend aus einer Federscheibe und evtl. einer oder mehreren Ausgleichsscheiben in den Lagerschild (400 A) einlegen. Motorläufer (005 A) mit Lagerschild (026 A) und Pumpengehäuse (002 A) in Motorgehäuse mit eingedrücktem Ständerpaket (001 A) einführen, Einlegemuttern (082 C), falls vorhanden, in die im Motorgehäuse (001 A) dafür vorgesehenen Taschen einlegen und Motorgehäuse mit Lagerschild (026 A) mit Schrauben (025 A) verschrauben.

Paßfeder (505 A), falls vorhanden, bzw. Toleranzring (043 A), falls vorhanden, in die Welle einlegen (der Toleranzring (043 A) ist nach jeder Demontage durch einen neuen zu ersetzen). Außenlüfter (501 A) bündig mit Wellenende bzw. bis Anschlag an Paßfeder (505 A), falls vorhanden, aufdrücken und mit Sicherungsring (507 A), falls vorhanden, sichern. Weitermontage wie „Montage der GLRD und des Laufrades“ (Punkt 2.2).

#### 4.1 Demontage Läufer und Rillenkugellager (siehe Seite 25)

Wie „Demontage von Laufrad und GLRD“ (Punkt 2.1) und „Demontage des Pumpengehäuses“ (Punkt 3.1).

Schrauben (028 A) lösen und Lagerschild (026 A) vom Läufer (005 A) nehmen. V-Ring (033 A) abziehen, Nilos-Ring (032 A) abnehmen, Rillenkugellager AS (007 A) mit Abziehvorrichtung von Welle abziehen, Hülse (031 A) abnehmen. Lagerdeckel (027 A) abnehmen.

Rillenkugellager BS (008 A) und Cox-Ring (428 B) mit Abziehvorrichtung abziehen, Hülse (017 A), falls vorhanden, abnehmen.

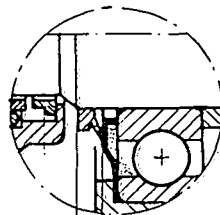
#### 4.2 Montage Läufer und Rillenkugellager (siehe Seite 25)

Neue Rillenkugellager (007 A und 008 A) mit Schmierfett nach Tabelle Seite 25 füllen. Hülse (017 A), falls vorhanden, und neuen Cox-ring (428 B) aufschieben. Rillenkugellager (008 A) mit Vorrichtung aufdrücken, dabei auf Lage der Z-Scheibe achten (Z-Scheibe muß an der dem Läuferpaket abgewandten Seite sein).

Lagerdeckel (027 A) aufstecken, Hülse (031 A) aufschieben und Rillenkugellager (007 A) mit Vorrichtung aufdrücken. Nilos-Ring (032 A) und V-Ring (033 A) aufschieben. Welle muß im Bereich des V-Ring-Sitzes fettfrei sein.

Einbauraum für V-Ring (033 A) bei:

2BV2 060	8.2 - 0.5 mm
2BV2 061	
2BV2 070	
2BV2 071	9.7 - 0.5 mm



Einbauraum für V-Ring (033 A) — Fitting dimensions for V ring (033 A)

### 3.2 Assembling the pump casing

Bolt pump casing (002 A) to endshield (026 A) using bolts (038 B) and spring washers (038 A). Insert bearing contact set (018 A), consisting of a spring washer and possibly one or more endfloat washers, in the endshield (400 A). Insert motor rotor (005 A) with endshield (026 A) and pump casing (002 A) into motor frame containing the stator core (001 A). If fitted, insert nuts (082 C) in recesses provided in motor frame (001 A) and bolt motor frame to endshield (026 A) using bolts (025 A).

If fitted, insert featherkey (505 A) in motor shaft or fit spacer ring (043 A). The spacer ring should be replaced every time the pump casing is dismantled. Fit outer fan (501 A) flush with shaft end or until in contact with featherkey (505 A), if fitted, and secure with circlip (507 A), if fitted. Continue assembly as described in "Fitting the sliding-ring packing and the impeller" (Point 2.2).

#### 4.1 Dismantling the rotor and deep-groove ball bearings (see page 25)

Proceed as described in "Dismantling the impeller and sliding-ring packing" (Point 2.1) and "Dismantling the pump casing" (Point 3.1).

Unscrew bolts (028 A) and remove endshield (026 A) from rotor (005 A). Remove V ring (033 A), Nilos ring (032 A) and remove drive-end bearing (007 A) from the shaft with the puller tool. Remove spacer sleeve (031 A) and inner bearing cap (027 A).

Pull off non-drive-end bearing (008 A) and Cox ring (428 B) with puller tool and remove sleeve (017 A), if fitted.

#### 4.2 Fitting the rotor and ball bearing (see page 25)

Fill new ball bearings (007 A und 008 A) with grease in accordance with Table on page 25. Push on sleeve (017 A), if fitted, and new Cox ring (428 B). Force on ball bearing (008 A) with fitting tool, paying attention to the position of the serrated lock washer (this must be on the side facing away from the rotor core).

Fit bearing cap (027 A) and push on sleeve (031 A) and force on ball bearing (007 A) with fitting tool. Push on Nilos ring (032 A) and V ring (033 A). There must not be any grease on the shaft near the V ring seat.

Lagerschild (026 A) auf Läufer (005 A) aufschieben und mit Schrauben (028 A) Lagerdeckel (027 A) anschrauben.

Weitermontage wie „Montage des Pumpengehäuses“ (Punkt 3.2) und „Montage der GLRD und des Laufrades“ (Punkt 2.2).

#### 5.1 Demontage Motorgehäuse mit eingedrücktem Ständerpaket

Schrauben (503 A) lösen, Lüfterhaube (500 A) abnehmen. Sicherungsring (507 A), falls vorhanden, herausnehmen. Außenlüfter (501 A) abziehen und Paßfeder (505 A), falls vorhanden, bzw. Toleranzring (043 A), falls vorhanden, aus der Motorwelle herausnehmen.

Schrauben (401 A) lösen, dabei auf Einlegemuttern (408 A), falls vorhanden, achten (werden bei der Montage wieder benötigt) und Lagerschild (400 A) abnehmen. Schrauben (025 A) lösen, dabei auf Einlegemuttern (082 C), falls vorhanden, achten (werden bei der Montage wieder benötigt) und Motorgehäuse mit eingedrücktem Ständerpaket (001 A) von der Pumpe trennen.

Push endshield (026 A) onto rotor (005 A) and secure bearing cap (027 A) with bolts (028 A).

Continue assembly as described in "Assembling the pump casing" (Point 3.2) and "Fitting the sliding-ring packing and the impeller" (Point 2.2).

#### 5.1 Dismantling the motor frame with stator core

Unscrew bolts (503 A) and remove fan cowl (500 A). Remove circlip (507 A), if fitted. Remove outer fan (501 A) and remove featherkey (505 A) or spacer ring (043 A), if fitted, from motor shaft.

Unscrew bolts (401 A), retaining nuts (408 A), if fitted, (required for assembly) and remove endshield (400 A). Unscrew bolts (025 A) and retaining nuts (082 C), if fitted, (required for assembly) and separate motor frame with stator core (001 A) from the pump.

## 5.2 Montage Motorgehäuse mit eingedrücktem Ständerpaket

Motorgehäuse mit eingedrücktem Ständerpaket (001 A) über Motorläufer (005 A) schieben. Einlegemuttern (082 C), falls vorhanden, in die im Motorgehäuse (001 A) dafür vorgesehenen Taschen einlegen und Motorgehäuse (001 A) mit Schrauben (025 A) an Pumpe anschrauben. Überprüfen, ob Lageranstellatz (018 A) – bestehend aus einer Federscheibe und eventuell einer oder mehreren Ausgleichscheiben – in den Lagerschild (000 A) eingelegt ist. Dann Lagerschild (400 A) auf Motorwelle schieben. Einlegemuttern (408 A) in die im Motorgehäuse (001 A) dafür vorgesehenen Taschen einlegen und Lagerschild (400 A) mit Schrauben (401 A) an Motorgehäuse (001 A) anschrauben. Paßfeder (505 A), falls vorhanden, bzw. Toleranzring (043 A), falls vorhanden, in die Motorwelle einlegen (der Toleranzring (043 A) ist nach jeder Demontage durch einen neuen zu ersetzen), Außenlüfter (501 A) bündig mit Wellenende bzw. bis Anschlag an Paßfeder (505 A), falls vorhanden, aufdrücken und mit Sicherungsring (507 A), falls vorhanden, sichern.

Außenlüfter (501 A) von Hand drehen; Pumpe muß sich nach der Montage leicht durchdrehen lassen.

Lüfterhaube (500 A) aufsetzen und mit Schrauben (503 A) anschrauben.

## 5.2 Fitting the motor frame with stator core

Push motor frame with stator core (001 A) over rotor (005 A) and insert nuts (082 C), if fitted, in the recesses provided in the motor frame and secure frame to pump with bolts (025 A). Check whether bearing contact set (018 A), consisting of one spring washer and one or more end-float washers, is fitted in the end-shield (400 A). Push endshield (400 A) onto motor shaft. Insert nuts (408 A) in recesses provided in motor frame (001 A) and secure endshield (400 A) to motor frame with bolts (401 A). Fit featherkey (505 A) or spacer ring (043 A), if fitted, to motor frame (the spacer ring should be replaced every time the pump casing is dismantled). Press on outer fan (501 A) until flush with shaft end or as far as stop on featherkey (505 A), if fitted, and secure with circlip (507 A) if fitted.

Turn the outer fan (501 A) by hand; after fitting, the pump must turn easily.

Replace fan cowl (500 A) and secure it with bolts (503 A).

## Instructions de service

### Description

#### Application et conditions de fonctionnement

Les pompes à vide ELMO F sont des pompes à gaz à anneau liquide, mono-étagées, en construction monobloc, prévues pour le service continu. Le liquide de fonctionnement normalement utilisé est l'eau; dans les cas particuliers, il est également fait usage d'acides, de réactifs basiques, de solvants, etc. (le matériau constitutif des éléments de la pompe doit être adapté aux liquides de fonctionnement agressifs ou aux gaz agressifs). Il n'y a aucun inconvénient à ce que de petites quantités de matière légère en suspension ou de liquides soient entraînées; mais si elles étaient plus importantes, il faudrait monter des séparateurs en amont.

En cas des pompes à vide ELMO F à moteur G3 (Ex)e, il y a lieu d'observer les prescriptions de sécurité y afférentes.

La pression d'aspiration minimale des pompes à vide est de 30 millibars (30 torrs) avec de l'eau à 15 °C comme liquide de fonctionnement, et de 11 millibars (8 torrs) avec un éjecteur à gaz monté en amont.

Le liquide de fonctionnement (de l'eau dans la plupart des cas) doit être exempt de corps étrangers. Il est en partie expulsé de la tubulure de refoulement avec le gaz et doit par conséquent être complètement constamment. Sa température influe sur le pouvoir d'aspiration; il devrait parvenir à la pompe à une température comprise entre 5 et 15 °C. La pompe l'aspire aussi automatiquement jusqu'à la hauteur d'aspiration de 1 m. En fonctionnement sans séparateur monté sur la pompe, il ne faut pas amener la conduite de refoulement à plus de 0,50 m au-dessus de la tubulure de refoulement, ou bien la contre-pression ne doit pas y dépasser 1,1 bar (abs.).

#### Fonctionnement

La pompe opère selon le principe de l'anneau liquide. Une roue est disposée dans un corps de pompe cylindrique excentrique par rapport à l'arbre; elle transmet la puissance d'entraînement à un anneau liquide qui se forme lors de la mise en service de la pompe de manière à être concentrique par rapport au corps de cette dernière.

Lorsque le liquide circule vers l'extérieur, du gaz est aspiré à travers la fente d'aspiration du disque de distribution; il est comprimé vers l'intérieur puis expulsé à travers la fente de refoulement du disque de distribution.

## Instrucciones de servicio

### Descripción

#### Aplicaciones y condiciones de servicio

Las bombas de vacío son del tipo de anillo líquido, de una etapa. Su construcción es en forma de bloque. Están diseñadas para servicio permanente. Como líquido de servicio se utiliza normalmente agua y, en casos especiales, ácidos, bases, disolventes, etc. (el material de las piezas de la bomba deberá estar adaptado a los líquidos de servicio o gases agresivos). Pueden impulsar cantidades reducidas de partículas ligeras o líquidos en suspensión. En caso de cantidades mayores hay que anteponer separadores.

Para las bombas de vacío ELMO F provistas de motores con protecciones (EX) e-G3 deberán observarse las correspondientes prescripciones de seguridad.

La presión de aspiración mínima de las bombas de vacío – si el líquido de servicio es agua a 15 °C – es de 40 mbar (30 Torr). Con eyectores de gas antepuestos, es de 11 mbar (8 Torr).

El líquido de servicio (preferentemente agua) deberá estar libre de cuerpos extraños. Este líquido sale en parte con el gas por las bocas de impulsión, por lo que hay que reponerlo continuamente. La temperatura del líquido de servicio influye sobre la capacidad de aspiración. El líquido se alimentará a temperaturas entre 5 y 15 °C. La bomba de vacío puede aspirar automáticamente el líquido de servicio hasta una altura de 1 m aproximadamente. Si se opera sin separador, la tubería de impulsión no deberá tenderse a más de 0,5 m por encima de la boca de impulsión de la bomba ni sobrepasar una contrapresión de 1,1 bar (absolutos).

#### Construcción y funcionamiento

La bomba funciona según el principio del anillo líquido. Dentro de la carcasa cilíndrica va dispuesto de manera excéntrica el eje con el rodete que transmite la potencia del accionamiento al anillo líquido, que se forma concéntricamente con la carcasa al poner en servicio la bomba.

Al desplazarse hacia afuera el líquido, se aspira gas a través de la lumbrera de aspiración del disco de distribución. Este gas se comprime hacia adentro y se expulsa por la lumbrera de impulsión del disco de distribución.



**Contents:**

	Page
<b>Terminology</b>	5
<b>General Information, Description</b>	
Basic Information about Safety	5
Applications, Design, Operating Mode	5
Transport, Storage	6
<b>Operation and Maintenance</b>	
General Safety Notes	6
Installation	6
Connection	6
Commissioning	7
<b>Operation</b>	
Safety Notes	7
<b>Servicing</b>	
General Safety Precautions	7
<b>Corrective Maintenance</b>	
Dismantling	8
Assembly	8

**TERMINOLOGY**

In accordance with all supplied operating and repair manuals and the warnings on the machines and devices themselves.

**Operation**

encompasses the installation, commissioning (preparation for use) and controls by operator (actuation, switching on and off, etc.).

**Servicing**

encompasses the testing and preventive maintenance (inspections and overhauls), maintenance, corrective maintenance (troubleshooting with repair).

**...WARNING NOTICES****DANGER**

means that death, grievous injury or extensive damage to property will occur if the appropriate precautions are not taken.

**WARNING**

means that death, grievous injury or extensive damage to property may occur if the appropriate precautions are not taken.

**CAUTION**

means that minor injury or damage to property may occur if the appropriate precautions are not taken.

**NOTE** means that particular attention is drawn to the interaction of technical processes because they may not be obvious even to qualified personnel.

Even though not specifically mentioned, compliance with transport, assembly, operating and maintenance notes and technical data (in the operating manuals, the product documents or on the machine itself) is, however, equally crucial in order to avoid disruptions which might in turn directly or indirectly cause grievous injury or serious damage to property.

**Qualified personnel** are persons who, due to their training, experience and instruction and their knowledge of pertinent standards, specifications, accident prevention regulations and operating conditions, have been authorized by the party responsible for the safety of the system to carry out the activities necessary in each case and are capable of recognizing and avoiding possible inherent dangers in doing so. Among other skills, a knowledge of first aid is required.

**GENERAL NOTE**

In the interest of clarity and in view of the possible wealth of information, these operating and repair manuals do not detail every bit of information and, in particular, cannot discuss every possible operational or servicing-related situation.

If you wish additional information, or if specific problems arise which are not dealt with in sufficient detail in the operating and repair manuals supplied, you can request the information required through your local Siemens office.

The contents of these operating and repair manuals are neither part of, nor are they intended to alter a former or existing agreement, commitment or legal relationship. All obligations on Siemens' part arise from the pertinent purchase agreement, which also contains the complete and sole valid warranty terms. These contractual warranty terms are neither extended nor restricted by the statements made in these operating and repair manuals.

**GENERAL INFORMATION, DESCRIPTION****Basic Information about Safety****DANGER**

Due to their function-related electrical and mechanical properties, the machines can cause extremely serious damage to health and property if they are not used, operated and serviced as intended or if they are tampered with. It is therefore assumed that planning and execution of all mechanical and electrical facilities and transport, operation and servicing will be executed and supervised by responsible, qualified personnel.

**WARNING**

When electric machines or devices are running some of their components are conducting dangerous electricity and/or are subjected to mechanical stress. The persons working on the machine and/or the device must be appropriately qualified. They must be thoroughly acquainted with the contents of these and all other operating and repair manuals provided. Correct, safe use of this machine and the device requires proper transport, proper storage, operation as intended and careful servicing. All notes and information on the machines or devices must be observed.

**APPLICATIONS, DESIGN, OPERATING MODE**

**NOTE:** The electrical machines for which these operating manuals are intended are component parts of electrical power installations, units and equipment chiefly for industrial applications and have been constructed in accordance with the information specified on their rating and other plates, in certificates, order documents and catalogs, e.g. VDE 0530, IEC 34-1. Accordingly, the operating manuals contain basically only information pertaining to safety which must be observed when used as intended in industrial applications. The pertinent applicable national, local and system-specific specifications and requirements must also be taken into account.






ie machines are also employed in **non-industrial** applications, however, i.e. in commercial or private sectors (e.g. the trades, farming, home and garden, etc.). If the safety precautions according to rating plate data and certificates are not adequate for these or special industrial applications due to special safety regulations or requirements, the operator of this machine or the manufacturer of the system, unit or device in which the machine is installed must make certain that these special safety regulations and requirements are complied with (e.g. by ordering special models of the machines, installing additional protective equipment, appropriate installation, etc.).

## TRANSPORT, STORAGE


**NOTE:** Certain machines must be picked up only at the main lifting points provided for this purpose, at lifting lugs for example. Use lifting tackle appropriate in terms of machine weight. Use suitable cable guides or spreading devices if the machine in the delivery state has any attachments, etc. fitted (see Operating Manual).

## OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

### General Safety Notes


 **WARNING** To be safe, operation and servicing of the machine or device must be performed properly by qualified personnel who observe the warnings in these and other operating and repair manuals supplied and the notes on the machines and devices.

In particular, the general standards for installation and safety (DIN and VDE for example), are to be followed for work on power installations, as are the standards for the proper use of lifting tackle and equipment and the use of personal protective equipment such as safety goggles,

 **DANGER** Do not reach into the machine through air intake or discharge ports: The rotor is very dangerous. Keep in mind that, due to its rotating mass, the machine may continue to turn several minutes after being shut off. If gas in the system has not expanded, the machine can start to rotate due to leakage through shut-off units.

The rotor can cause injury even when the machine is switched off if the machine is rotated manually.

### INSTALLATION

 **CAUTION** Under unfavourable operating conditions, parts of the housing may reach temperatures of over 80 °C, possibly necessitating the use of a touch guard - depending on the installation conditions. Note, too, that material being handled can be ejected at these temperatures through discharge ports and pressure control valves. Site these openings so that they are not directed towards personnel and flammable or explosive materials. Temperature-sensitive parts such as cables or electronic components are not to be placed next to or attached to parts of the housing or incoming or outgoing piping.

The machines can be installed in a dusty or damp location. The installation is tropic-proof. Normally, no special protective measures are required to protect the machines against the weather when they are properly stored or installed out of doors. When installing machines with the shaft in the vertical position, EEx-e motors require a cover to prevent foreign bodies from falling into the motor fan cowl (see


EN 50 014/VDE 0170/0171, Part 1, Section III, 16.1). This cover must not hinder the cooling of the motor by its fan.

The vacuum pumps and compressors are only suitable for conveying dustfree air and other noncombustible, noncorrosive and nonexplosive gases, vapours or liquids.

Solids and contaminants must be removed before the intake port (intake filter).

The use of machines with **EEx-e drive motors** is permitted in rooms in which explosive gases are occasionally present. However, the conveyance of explosive gases and liquids is not permitted. The temperature class specified on the rating plate must be complied with.

Where machines with cooling by ambient air are involved, there must be unrestricted passage of the cooling air to and from the machines. The re-intake of heated exhausted air is not permitted.


 **WARNING** Ensure that **water cannot enter the motor**.

Attention is drawn to the general requirements for **protection against contact** with moving parts such as pulleys.


### CONNECTIONS


Comply with data in the manuals supplied. Connection cables must be selected according to the type of use and to the voltages and current levels at hand. Connect machine in accordance with the circuit diagram in the terminal box or - if the machine has no terminal box - in accordance with the separate circuit diagram.

Tighten the connection terminals of the machines to the torques stated in the terminal box.

 **CAUTION** To avoid danger, the feeder cables in the terminal box must be professionally connected. In particular, this means that:

- the inside of the terminal box is clean and contains no cable remains
- protective conductor or protective earthing is connected
- all terminal lugs are tight
- the minimum clearances in air are adhered to (beware of protruding wire ends)
- unused penetrations are sealed and the cover elements are screwed in tight
- all sealing surfaces of the terminal box are in a proper state to maintain the type of protection. If tightness of the joints is achieved only with metal sealing surfaces, these have to be cleaned and then lightly lubricated.
- Before the initial start-up, connect liquid pumps and liquid ring pumps to the pipes provided so that no fluid can reach energized components.
- The material and dimensioning of all pipes, containers and fittings must be matched to the pressure and temperature conditions involved and must be suitable for the type of material to be conveyed.

 **CAUTION** There is a danger of bursts if the machine is subjected to impermissibly high pressure from the plant. Where applicable, suitable pressure-relief devices must be used to prevent this.

 **CAUTION** Where pumps or compressors are involved which conduct hot or dangerous gases, vapours or liquids, or are operated with dangerous working liquids, or have to be emptied at temperatures over 60 °C, all drain connections must be equipped with shut-off fittings and the material conveyed and/or the working liquids must be taken away in closed systems.

"Dangerous" materials are, for example, materials which are hazardous to the health or the environment. Local statutory regulations are to be observed for their appropriate disposal.

## COMMISSIONING



**CAUTION** If the machine is started up without being connected or fastened, for example, for test purposes the initial torque of the motor may cause it to move suddenly and topple over.

**NOTE:** For safe operation of the machine the following conditions as a minimum must be observed:

- The machine is assembled and operated in accordance with the data on the plate and, where applicable, with the documentation supplied (voltage, current, frequency, connection, model, type of protection, cooling method).
- When frequency converters are used, operating speeds are not to exceed those permitted according to plate data.
- The machine is properly assembled, aligned and connected to piping or hoses, as appropriate.
- The elevation of the installation location is taken into account when adjusting the pressure control valves.
- The drive elements are adjusted correctly for their type, e.g. belt tension if belt-driven, alignment of couplings.
- The cooling air circuit is not impaired; the cooling effect must also not be impaired by dirt on the cooling surfaces.
- The rotor can be rotated without it touching.
- The direction of rotation of the machine is as specified.
- All fastening screws/bolts, fasteners and electrical connections are tightened as specified in the operating manual or in the terminal box cover.
- The earthing and equipotential bonding connections have been made properly.
- Any supplementary equipment present (thermostat in coil, anti-condensation heater, etc.) are properly connected and operative.
- All measures have been taken to protect against contact with moving or energized parts.
- Any separate fans are ready for operation and are connected for the specified direction of rotation and do not impair the running smoothness of the machine during operation.



**CAUTION** The intake ports must be sited so that no foreign elements can be sucked in and ejected through the discharge port (hazard for eyes and skin, danger of poisoning).



**CAUTION** When air is sucked in from the atmosphere, the intake ports must be covered with protective devices (gratings or the like) in order to prevent foreign elements including parts of the body and clothing from being sucked in.

It is not possible for this listing to be exhaustive. Additional tests in accordance with other manuals or system-specific conditions may be required.

**NOTE:** To ensure that the machine is also permanently safe, the following precautions are recommended for commissioning and then, at protracted intervals, initially after about 500 operating hours:

- Check whether all screw/bolt connections are tightened to the torques given in the operating manual.
- Make certain that cables and insulation parts - where accessible - are in good condition and are not discoloured.
- During operation, check for noises or vibrations at the bearings, end shields, covers and housing components.

EWN 610.43083/21

ENGLISH

- Switch off the machine if it is not running smoothly or is making abnormal noises; initiate immediate repair.
- If the machine is running satisfactorily, check the values for voltage, current and performance.
- As far as possible, monitor the temperatures of the bearings, etc., until the steady-state point is reached.

## OPERATION

### Safety Notes



**WARNING** Covers which prevent contact with active or rotating parts or are required to direct the flow of air for effective cooling are not to be open during operation.



**WARNING** Sound pressure levels over 85 dB (A) may cause prolonged damage to health. Where applicable, suitable corrective action must be initiated.

After protracted machine shutdowns the measures recommended under "Commissioning" in the section "Operation and Servicing" are to be performed as appropriate, depending on the length of the standstill period.

## SERVICING

**NOTE:** Careful and regular inspections, overhauls and maintenance are required to detect any malfunctions at an early stage and to eliminate them before extensive damage results.

### GENERAL SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



**DANGER** Before any work is performed on the machine or equipment, especially covers over energized or moving parts are removed, the machine, item of equipment or system is to be properly disconnected from the supply. Apart from the main electrical circuits, particular attention is to be paid to any supplementary or auxiliary electrical circuits, especially anti-condensation heaters. Wait until the machine is at a standstill (coasting due to flywheel). See note on danger, page 5, 6.

The standard safety rules, according to VDE 0105 for example, are:

- disconnect from supply
- secure against re-actuation
- confirm de-energization
- cover or provide barriers for adjacent live components.



**DANGER** The above measures are not to be reversed until the machine has been completely assembled and the servicing concluded.



**CAUTION** The operational reliability of the machine can only be maintained if original parts or authorized replacement parts are used during every corrective maintenance and the repair manual is consistently adhered to.

## CORRECTIVE MAINTENANCE



### WARNING

Repairs to EEx-e motors must be carried out in Siemens shops or acceptance-tested by an officially recognized expert.

### DISMANTLING

Additional diagrams and representations in operating manuals and other manuals contain information regarding the technical design of normal machines and assemblies. However, special models and versions may deviate in technical details. If any uncertainty exists, we strongly recommend that you contact us, stating the machine type and serial number, or that you have the maintenance work performed at a SIEMENS service centre.



### CAUTION

After fastening screws/bolts are removed, some parts are just held in centring fits. Even during proper dismantling it is still possible that some

heavy parts may therefore suddenly become loose and drop off, possibly causing injuries and damage. Take suitable measures to secure all parts being worked on.

### ASSEMBLY

Points that are sealed due to stringent requirements for type of action must be resealed during assembly with a suitable non-hardening sealant (type: consult the proper operating and repair manuals).

If gaskets and sealing elements are installed to ensure the degree of protection, they must be examined and replaced if they are no longer effective.



### CAUTION

Tightening torques are specified in the terminal box for bolted connections of electrical terminals. If these are not complied with, some cables become loose and pose a danger.

## Sommaire

## Page

Terminologie	8
Généralités, description	
Informations fondamentales sur la sécurité	9
Domaine d'application, constitution, mode de fonctionnement	9
Transport/manutention, stockage	9
Exploitation et maintenance	
Consignes de sécurité	9
Mise en place	10
Branchement	10
Mise en service	10
Exploitation	
Consignes spéciales de sécurité	11
Maintenance	
Dispositions générales concernant la sécurité	11
Dépannage	
Démontage	11
Assemblage (remontage)	12

## TERMINOLOGIE

Au sens des instructions de service et de dépannage accompagnant le produit ainsi que des marques d'avertissement figurant sur les machines et les appareils mêmes :

### Exploitation

concerne la mise en place, la mise en service (préparatifs pour l'utilisation) et l'utilisation (manoeuvres, mise en marche et à l'arrêt, etc.)

### Maintenance

concerne le contrôle (inspections, révisions), l'entretien et le dépannage (localisation du défaut et réparation).



## ... MARQUES D'AVERTISSEMENT



### DANGER

signifie que la non-application des mesures de précaution appropriées conduit à la mort, à des lésions corporelles graves ou à un dommage matériel important.



### ATTENTION

signifie que la non-application des mesures de précautions appropriées peut conduire à la mort, à des lésions corporelles graves ou à un dommage matériel important.



### AVERTISSEMENT

signifie que la non-application des mesures de précautions appropriées peut conduire à des lésions corporelles légères ou à un dommage matériel.

**NOTA** attire l'attention sur des interdépendances techniques qui ne sont pas toujours évidentes, mêmes aux yeux des personnes compétentes.

Afin d'éviter les incidents susceptibles d'occasionner directement ou indirectement des lésions corporelles graves ou des dommages matériels importants, il importe aussi de respecter les autres instructions de transport, de montage, d'exploitation et d'entretien, qui ne sont pas mises spécialement en relief, de même que les caractéristiques techniques (figurant dans les instructions de service, dans la documentation des produits et sur la machine même).

**Ersatzteile, vom Werk lieferbar \***

001A	Motorgehäuse vollst.
002A	Pumpengehäuse
005A	Motorträger
007A	Rillenkugellager
008A	Rillenkugellager
011A	Spiralstift
017A	Hülse für Rillenkugellager (BS)
018A	Lageransteilsatz
026A	Lagerschild
027A	Lagerdeckel innen
030A	Stift für Gleitringdichtung
031A	Distanz-Hülse für Rillenkugellager
032A	Nilos-Ring
033A	V-Ring
034A	Abdrückring
035A	Gleitringdichtung
036A	Scheibe
037A	Zentriersliit
040A	Leistungsschild
041A	Schraube
042A	Klemmenkasten komplett
043A	Toleranzring für Lüfter (Ex)
047A	Laufrad
048A	Toleranzring für Laufrad
048B	Steuerscheibe
050A	Ventilplatte
051A	Fangplatte
057A	Dichtung für Deckel
061A	Pumpendeckel
065A	Schutzstopfen
066A	Kappe
068A	Verschlußschraube
068B	Dichtung
081A	Erdungsschraube
083A	Erdungswinkel
084A	Kontaktwinkel
085A	Erdungsschraube **
085C	Abdeckung
087A	Erdungswinkel **
088A	Kontaktwinkel **
400A	Lagerschild
428B	Cox-Ring
500A	Lüfterhaube
501A	Außenlüfter
503A	Sechskantschraube mit Kreuzschlitz
505A	Paßfeder für Außenlüfter
640A	Klemmenbrett
648A	Zwischenstück
651A	Zwischenstück
654A	Dichtung
656A	Oberteil
657A	Dichtung
660A	Verschlußstopfen
662A	Erdung
663A	Dichtung
665A	Deckel
668A	Schild (Schutzzeichen)
674A	Leitung

**Piezas de recambio, suministrables de fabrica \***

001A	Carcasa del motor completa
002A	Carcasa de la bomba
005A	Rotor del motor
007A	Rodamiento de bolas rígido
008A	Rodamiento de bolas rígido
011A	Perno en espiral
017A	Casquillo para el rodamiento de bolas (lado B)
018A	Juego de ajuste de rodamiento
026A	Escudo portacojinetes
027A	Tapa interior del rodamiento
030A	Espeja para el retén
031A	Casquillo distanciador para el rodamiento
032A	Anillo Nilos
033A	Anillo en V
034A	Casquillo de presión
035A	Retén
036A	Disco
037A	Espiga de centrado
040A	Placa de características
041A	Tornillo
042A	Caja de bornes completa
043A	Anillo de tolerancia para el ventilador (Ex)
047A	Rodete
048A	Anillo de tolerancia para el rodete
048B	Disco de distribución
050A	Placa de válvula
051A	Placa de retención
057A	Junta de la tapa
061A	Tapa de la bomba
065A	Tapon de protección
066A	Caperuza
068A	Tornillo de cierre
068B	Junta
081A	Tornillo de puesta a tierra
083A	Angular de puesta a tierra
084A	Angular de contacto
085A	Tornillo de puesta a tierra **
085C	Cubierta
087A	Angular de puesta a tierra **
088A	Angular de contacto **
400A	Escudo portacojinetes
428B	Anillo Cox
500A	Caperuza del ventilador
501A	Ventilador exterior
503A	Tornillo hexagonal con hueco cruciforme
505A	Chaveta para el ventilador exterior
640A	Regleta de bornes
648A	Pieza intermedia
651A	Pieza intermedia
654A	Junta
656A	Parte superior
657A	Junta
660A	Tapon de cierre
662A	Puesta a tierra
663A	Junta
665A	Tapa
668A	Placa (distintivo de la clase de protección)
674A	Cable

\*\* für Potentialausgleichsleitung  
im Motorgehäuse\*\* para el cable de compensación de  
potenciales de la carcasa del motor**Spare parts, available from the works \***

001A	Motor frame, complete
002A	Pump casing
005A	Motor rotor
007A	Deep-groove ball bearing
008A	Deep-groove ball bearing
011A	Spiral pin
017A	Spacer sleeve
018A	Bearing contact set
026A	Endshield
027A	Bearing cap, inner
030A	Pin
031A	Spacer sleeve
032A	Nilos ring
033A	V ring
034A	Forcing-off ring
035A	Sliding-ring packing
036A	Washer
037A	Centering pin
040A	Rating plate
041A	Bolt
042A	Terminal box, complete
043A	Fan spacer ring (Ex)
047A	Impeller
048A	Impeller spacer ring
048B	Port plate
050A	Valve plate
051A	Calch plate
057A	Cover gasket
061A	Pump cover
065A	Plug
066A	Cap
068A	Screw plug
068B	Seal
081A	Earthing screw
083A	Earthing bracket
084A	Contact bracket
085A	Earthing screw **
085C	Cover
087A	Earthing bracket **
088A	Contact bracket **
400A	Endshield
428B	Cox ring
500A	Fan cowl
501A	Outer fan
503A	Slot-head bolt
505A	Featherkey for outer fan
640A	Terminal board
648A	Adapter
651A	Intermediate plate
654A	Gasket
656A	Upper part of terminal box
657A	Gasket
660A	Screw plug
662A	Earthing
663A	Gasket
665A	Cover
668A	Protection symbol
674A	Conductor

**Pezzi di riserva, fornibili dalla fabbrica \***

001A	Carcassa del motore, completa
002A	Carcassa della pompa
005A	Rotore del motore
007A	Cuscinetto a sfere a gola profonda
008A	Cuscinetto a sfere a gola profonda
011A	Spina
017A	Boccola per cuscinetto a sfere (BS)
018A	Corredo di cuscinetto
026A	Scudo di supporto
027A	Coperchio interno del supporto
030A	Spinotto per guarnizione anello scorrevole
031A	Boccola distanziatrice per cuscinetto a sfere
032A	Anello Nilos
033A	Anello elastico (guarnizione)
034A	Anello di separazione
035A	Guarnizione ad anello scorrevole
036A	Rondella
037A	Spina di centraggio
040A	Targa dei dati
041A	Vite
042A	Morsettiere completa
043A	Anello di tolleranza per ventola (Ex)
047A	Girante
048A	Anello di tolleranza per girante
048B	Disco distributore
050A	Plastrina di valvola
051A	Plastrina di ritegno
057A	Guarnizione del coperchio
061A	Coperchio per la pompa
065A	Tappo di protezione
066A	Coperchio
068A	Tappo filettato
068B	Guarnizione
081A	Vite di messa a terra
083A	Angolare di messa a terra
084A	Angolare di contatto
085A	Vite di messa a terra **
085C	Coperchio
087A	Angolare di messa a terra **
088A	Angolare di contatto **
400A	Scudo di supporto
428B	Anello Cox
500A	Cappa della ventola
501A	Ventola esterna
503A	Vite esagonale con intaglio a croce
505A	Chievotta per ventola esterna
640A	Basetta portamorsetti
648A	Adattatore
651A	Adattatore
654A	Guarnizione
656A	Parte superiore
657A	Guarnizione
660A	Tappo
662A	Collegamento a terra
663A	Guarnizione
665A	Coperchio
668A	Targa (simbolo di protezione)
674A	Conduttore

\*\* for equipotential conductor  
in motor-frame\*\* per collegamento a terra della  
carcassa del motore**Pièces de rechange, livrables départ usine \***

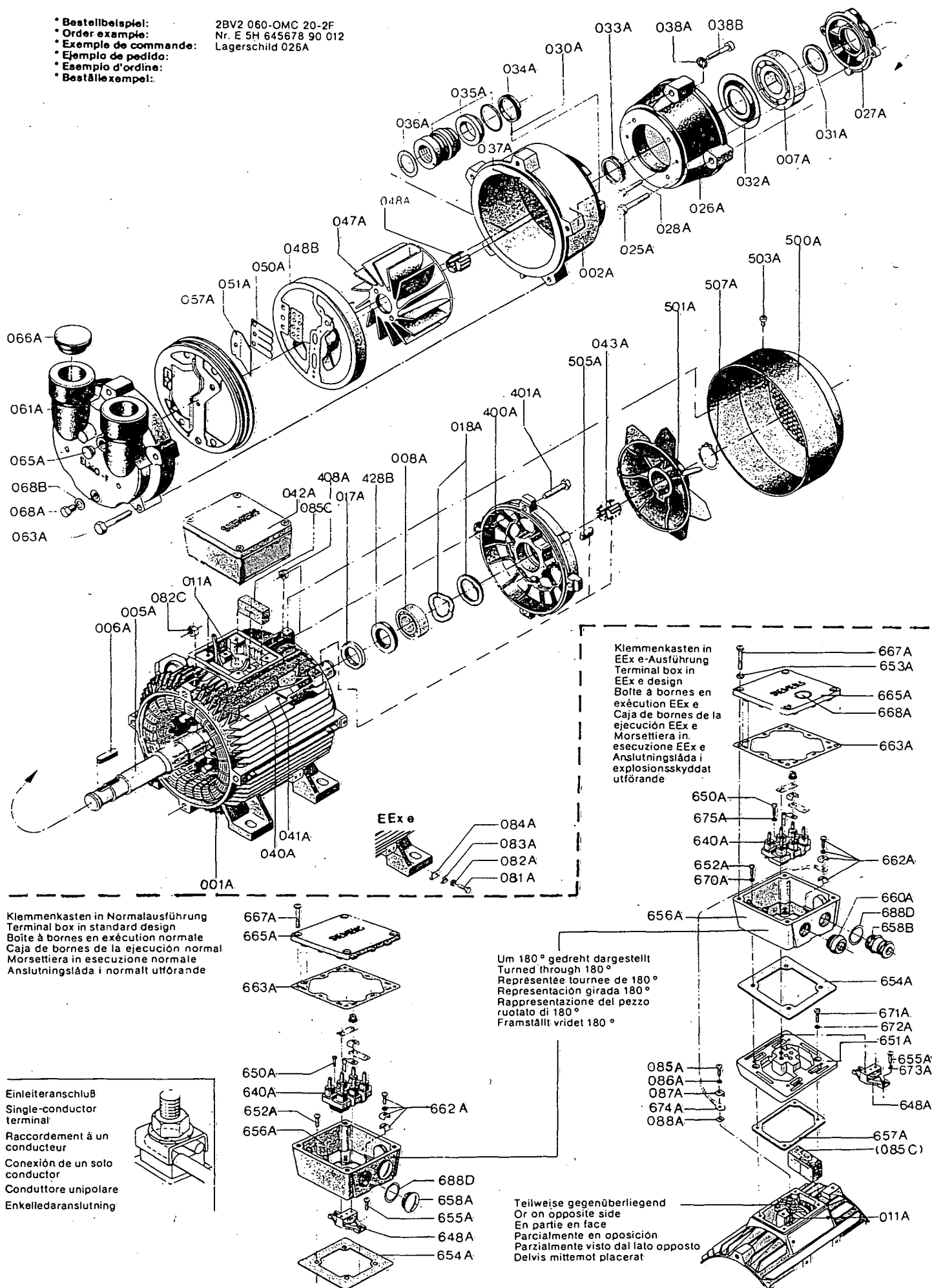
001A	Carter de moteur complet
002A	Corps de pompe
005A	Rotor de moteur
007A	Roulement à billes
008A	Roulement à billes
011A	Ergot
017A	Douille pour roulement à billes (côte N)
018A	Rondelles Belleville de serrage
026A	Flasque palier
027A	Couvercle intérieur de palier
030A	Goupille pour joint rotatif
031A	Enlretoise pour roulement à billes
032A	Bague Nilos
033A	Joint torique a levres
034A	Bague d'extraction
035A	Joint rotatif
036A	Rondelle plate
037A	Goupille creuse fendue
040A	Plaque signalétique
041A	Vis
042A	Boîte à bornes complète
043A	Douille pour ventilateur (Ex)
047A	Roue
048A	Douille pour roue
048B	Disque de distribution
050A	Plaquette de soupape
051A	Plaquette de butée
057A	Joint de couvercle
061A	Couvercle de pompe
065A	Bouchon de protection
066A	Capot
068A	Bouchon fileté
068B	Joint
081A	Vis de mise à la terre
083A	Equerre de freinage
084A	Equerre de contact
085A	Vis de terre **
085C	Couvre-bornes
087A	Equerre de freinage **
088A	Equerre de contact **
400A	Flasque palier
428B	Bague Cox
500A	Capot de ventilateur
501A	Ventilateur extérieur
503A	Vis à tête hexagonale à encoche cruciforme
505A	Clavette pour ventilateur extérieur
640A	Plaque à bornes
648A	Enlretoise
651A	Pièce intercalaire
654A	Joint
656A	Partie supérieure
657A	Joint
660A	Bouchon fileté
662A	Pièces de mise à la terre
663A	Joint
665A	Couvercle
668A	Plaque (symbole)
674A	Conducteur

**Reservdelar, tillgängliga från fabriken \***

001A	Motorhus, komplett
002A	Pumphus
005A	Motorrörelse
007A	Kullager
008A	Kullager
011A	Spiralstift
017A	Hylsa för kullager (BS)
018A	Lageransättningsats
026A	Lagersköld
027A	Inre lagerlock
030A	Stift för glidringstättning
031A	Distanshylsa för kullager
032A	Nilos-ring
033A	V-ring
034A	Avtryckningsring
035A	Glidringstättning
036A	Skiva
037A	Centreringsstift
040A	Märkplåt
041A	Skruv
042A	Kopplingslåda, komplett
043A	Toleransring för fläkt (Ex)
047A	Löphjul
048A	Toleransring för löphjul
048B	Styrskiva
050A	Ventilplatta
051A	Fångplatta
057A	Tätning för lock
061A	Pumplock
065A	Skyddspropp
066A	Kåpa
068A	Låsskruv
068B	Tätning
081A	Jordningssskruv
083A	Jordningsvinkel
084A	Kontaktvinkel
085A	Jordningssskruv **
085C	Lock
087A	Jordningsvinkel **
088A	Kontaktvinkel **
400A	Lagersköld
428B	Cox-ring
500A	Fläktthuv
501A	Yttre fläkt
503A	Sechskantskruv
505A	Skil för yttre fläkt
640A	Kopplingsplint
648A	Mellanstycke
651A	Mellanstycke
654A	Tätning
656A	Overdel
657A	Tätning
660A	Avslutningspropp
662A	Jordning
663A	Tätning
665A	Lock
668A	Skyddsmärke
674A	Ledning

\*\* pour Conducteur d'équipotentialité  
dans le carter du moteur\*\* för potentialutjämningsledning  
i motorhuset

• Bestellbeispiel: 2BV2 060-OMC 20-2F  
 • Order example: Nr. E 5H 645678 90 012  
 • Exemple de commande: Lagerschild 026A  
 • Ejemplo de pedido:  
 • Esempio d'ordine:  
 • Beställ exempel:



Normteile sind nach Muster im freien Handel zu beziehen.

Las piezas normalizadas, según muestra, pueden adquirirse en el comercio.

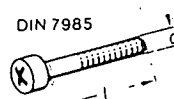
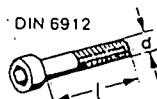
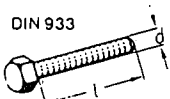
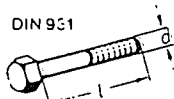
The standard parts can be procured according to samples from local dealers.

Le parti sono normalizzate e reperibili, secondo campione, in commercio.

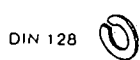
On se procurera dans le commerce les pièces normalisées sur le vu d'un échantillon.

Normerad del kan erhållas i fria handeln enligt mönster.

025A 650A  
028A 652A  
038B 655A  
063A 667A  
401A 671A



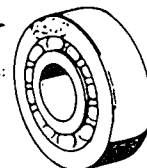
038A 670A  
082A 672A  
086A 673A  
653A 675A



006A DIN 6885



Lagertyp: →  
Type of bearing:  
Type de roulement:  
Tipo de cojinete:  
Tipo di cuscinetto:  
Lagertyp: →



507A

DIN 471



688 D DIN 46320



082 C  
408 A

DIN 934



658A DIN 46320 Bl. 4



658B DIN 46320



### Schmiertabelle Tabla de engrase

### Lubricating table Tabella di lubrificazione

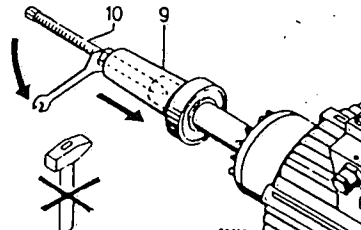
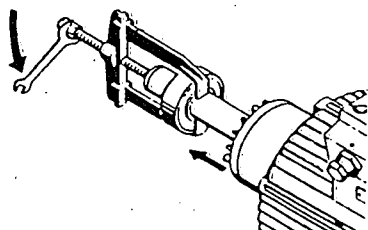
### Tableau de graissage Smörjningstabell

Fettsorte / Type of grease / Graisse  
Tipo del graso / Marca di grasso / Fettsort

AeroShell Grease 16

Vakuumpumpentyp Vacuum pump type Pompe à vide-type Bomba de vacío-Tipo Pompa a vuoto, tipo Typ av vakuumpump	007A Rillenkugellager AS Drive-end deep-groove ball bearing Roulements à billes côté D Rodamiento de bolas, lado A Cuscinetto a sfera lato A Spårkullager AS	DIN 625	008A Rillenkugellager BS Non-drive-end deep-groove ball bearing Roulements à billes côté N Rodamiento de bolas, lado B Cuscinetto a sfera lato B Spårkullager BS	DIN 625	027A Lagerdeckel innen. Bearing cap (inner) Couvercle intérieur de palier Tapa interior del rodamiento Coperchio interno del supporto Inre lagerlock	428 B Cox-Ring Cox ring Bague Cox Anillo Cox Anello Cox Cox-ring
	Kurzzeichen Code number Designation Denominación Sigla Kortbeteckning	Fettmenge Quantity of grease Quantité de graisse Cantidad de graso Quantità di grasso Fettmångd g	Kurzzeichen Code number Designation Denominación Sigla Kortbeteckning	Fettmenge Quantity of grease Quantité de graisse Cantidad de graso Quantità di grasso Fettmångd g	Fettmenge Quantity of grease Quantité de graisse Cantidad de graso Quantità di grasso Fettmångd g	
2BV2 060 - .... 0 - 2BV2 060 - .... 1 -	6205-J	3,2	6004-Z-J-C3	1,7	3	A 6004
2BV2 061 - .... 2 - 2BV2 061 - .... 3 -	6206-J	4,8			16	
2BV2 070 - .... 0 -	6207-J	6,2			21	
2BV2 070 - .... 1 - 2BV2 070 - .... 2 -	6308-J-C3	15	6205-Z-J-C3	3,2	50	A 6205
2BV2 071 - .... 3 -			6206-Z-J-C3	4,8		A 6206
2BV2 071 - .... 4 - 2BV2 071 - .... 5 -			6208-Z-J-C3	8,7		A 6208

- 9 Treibhölse
- 10 Spindel
- 9 Driving sleeve
- 10 Spindle
- 9 Douille d'emmanchement
- 10 Tige
- 9 Casquillo de empuje
- 10 Husillo
- 9 Campana di spinta
- 10 Perno filettato
- 9 Drivhylsa
- 10 Spindel



22759





## **SECTION 5**

### **INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SCHEME**

#### **HIDROSTAL SEWAGE PUMPS**

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****5.1 HIDROSTAL SEWAGE PUMPS**

Serial No.	...	DO3K-501+DCMIX-MIIK+DO
Product	...	Sewage and Waste Water
Flow	...	5 L/s
Head	...	9 m
Temperature	...	Ambient
Suction	...	Flooded
NPSHA	...	3 m

Hidrostat Model DO3K-501+DCMIX-MIIK+DO Close Coupled horizontal screw impeller centrifugal solids handling pump driven by 2.2 kW 1450r/m TEFC IP 55 Electric Motor complete with mild steel galvanised base plate.

Pump suction and delivery flange is 100 mm drilled DIN 16.

Pump is in material 1 construction as follows:-

Casing	...	Cast Iron
Suction Liner	...	Cast Iron
Impeller	...	S.G. Iron
Shaft	...	420 Stainless Steel
Shaft sealing	...	Double Mechanical Seals

Mechanical seals are tandem type with the product side mechanical seal mounted behind the impeller and the motor side seal mounted in an oil filled chamber.

With this feature the pump is capable of running dry without damage.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

Where adverse suction conditions exist and cause loss of prime, external priming devices should be used. Suction conditions such as liquid temperature, altitude above sea level and specific gravity must be compensated for by proper construction of the suction line.

When pumping liquids with gas separation, do not install the pipeline for negative suction.

Avoid gate valves for suction lift installations and for positive suction head installations, when the pump is operating ensure gate valves are completely open.

GOOD

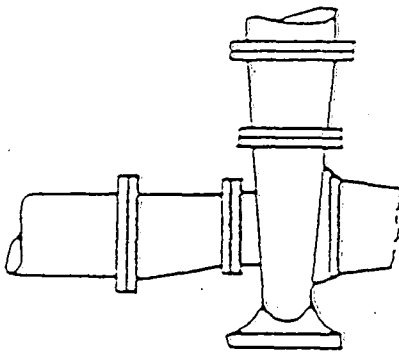


Figure 1.1

BAD

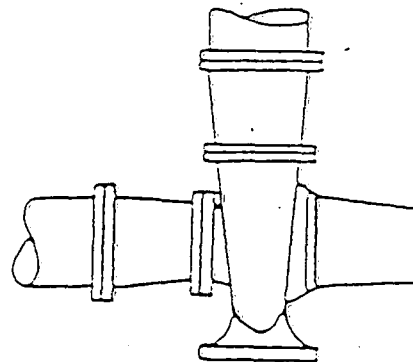


Figure 1.2

### ALIGNMENT

The pump driver, if supplied, is correctly aligned on the baseplate at the factory. However, a certain amount of deformation of the baseplate is possible during transit and it is therefore necessary to check the alignment between the pump and driver before start-up. The pump shaft should be checked for both angular and parallel alignment, a flexible coupling will not compensate for misalignment. Inaccurate alignment will result in vibration and excessive wear on the bearings, shaft sleeve and mechanical seal faces.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

The check for angular alignment (Figure 1.3) should be made by inserting an inside calliper or taper gauge at four points, 90° apart, between the coupling faces which must be within 0.3mm.

To check for parallel alignment place a straight edge across the coupling rims at the top, bottom and both sides. The unit will be in parallel alignment when the straight rests evenly on the coupling rim at all positions.

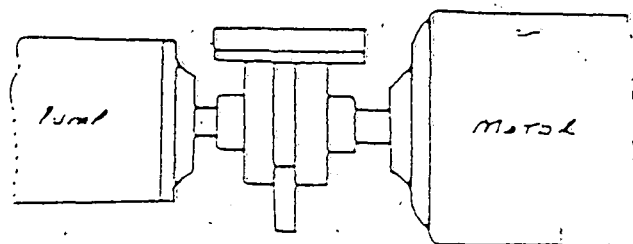
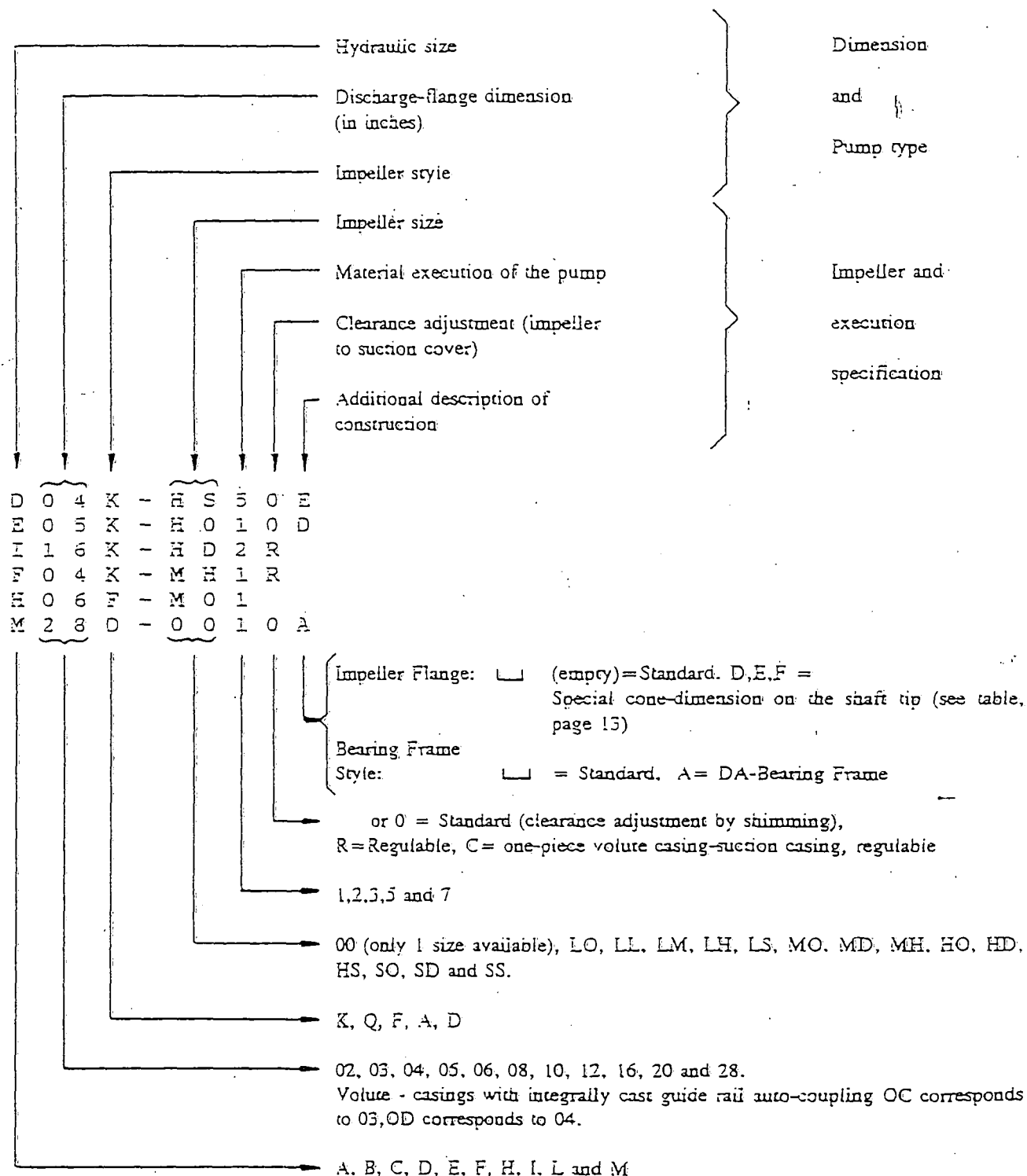


Figure 1.3

# SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

## TYPE CODE HYDRAULIC END



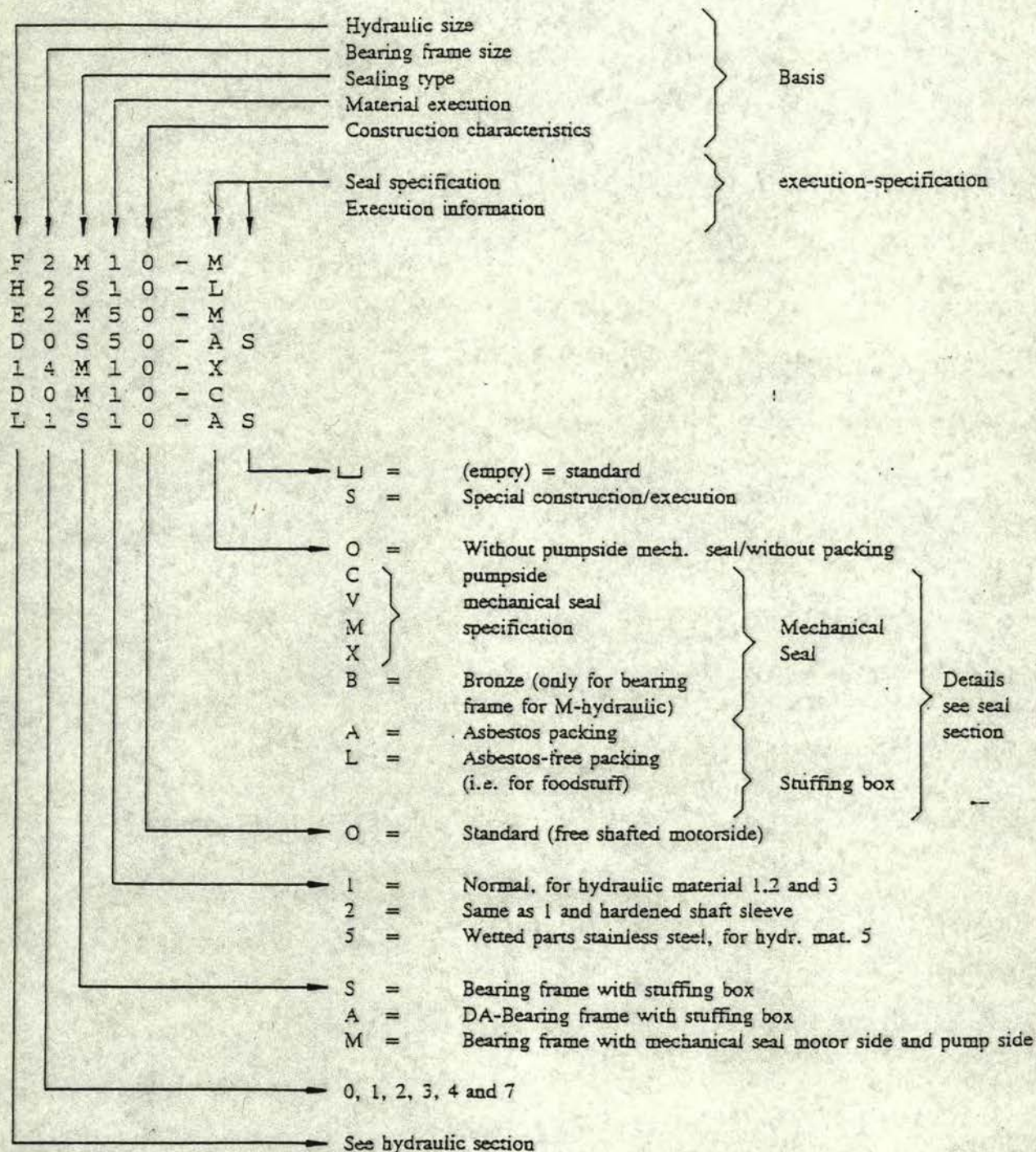
NOTE: On some sheets of the data book, where the discharge flange dimension of the hydraulic code is less than 10 inches, the zero has been left out.

Example: E05K E5K



# SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

## TYPE CODE BEARING FRAME STANDARD CONSTRUCTION



**NOTE:** As a rule the cone dimension for the impeller flange is fixed by the Hydraulic size. As an exception D2S and D2M bearing frames (heavy construction) request a "D"-hydraulic suitable for an "E" shaft end cone dimension, for example D03K-S010E. (Also see type Code hydraulic.)

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

### GENERAL

The original HIDROSTAL designs were of the D-Line construction: Most sizes utilised a parabolic suction piece as shown in Figure 1. The D-Line series is being replaced by the K-Line models, which utilise a straight conical suction for every pump size as shown in Figures 2 to 5. The advantage is in the ability to adjust uniformly for wear.

There are several different types of construction available for specific models. The design differences involve the volute/suction configuration and the availability of suction liners.

All models have been converted to the K-Line design. Refer to factory for possibility to retrofit D-Line pumps with K-Line impellers and suction pieces.

### COMMON CONSTRUCTION THROUGHOUT THE K-LINE MODELS

#### A. IMPELLERS

Impellers are of the screw-centrifugal design. Impellers are mounted on an impeller flange by means of a pinned and registered fit at the periphery (with the exception of the D3K and D4K-HS/S, which mount impeller directly onto shaft taper). The impeller is secured against the impeller flange by an allen-head impeller bolt. The impeller flange is secured to the shaft by a nut, utilising a woodruff key to transmit torque (except some D3K and D4K pumps). This construction protects the flange nut from the pumped material and provides for quick assembly and disassembly. Section drawings illustrate these features.

All impellers are statically and dynamically balanced for smooth mechanical performance.

Impellers are available in nodular iron (materials 1 & 2) and stainless steel (materials 3 & 5) for all sizes.

NOTE: The pump is available only in clockwise rotation.





## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

### B. VOLUTE CASING

Volute casing is separate from suction part in all pumps (except D3K and D4K, where suction casing is cast integrally with volute casing, and F4K and H5K, where both constructions - separate or integral - exist).

Hand hole cleanouts exist on all but D3K and D4K. All sizes have the back pullout feature. All sizes have rings of drilled and tapped holes for various mounting options.

All have a tapped hole for gauge near the discharge flange, and a tapped hole for drain at the lowest point of the casing. May be assembled with discharge in different positions.

Available in cast iron (material 1) or stainless steel (material 5) for all models, except D3K which is not available in material 5.

### C. SUCTION PART

Construction here varies according to pump size and material selected. The suction part construction may be in one of two categories:

#### 1. Suction cover

- Figure 2

This is a non regulable model, that means the clearance must be adjusted by shims. This type is available in cast iron (material 1) or stainless steel (material 5).

#### 2. Suction casing

There are three types of suction casing construction:

- Figure 3

One piece volute and suction casing with fixed (non regulable) liner. Clearance adjustment by shims.

- Figure 4

Regulable model. Clearance is adjusted by moving the liner within the suction casing by means of three external regulating screws.

- Figure 5 (obsolete model)

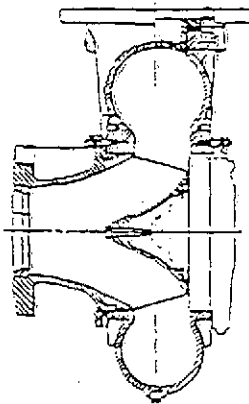
Same features as Figure 4 but with one-piece volute/suction casing.

**NOTE:** For availability of the different types of suction parts for the specific pump sizes and materials refer to the availability chart and the sectional drawings of this K-type section.

**SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND  
OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS.  
NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.**

D-TYPE

Figure 1



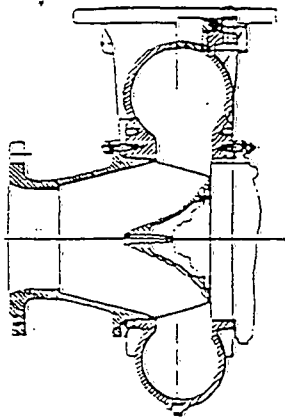
Obsolete Model



# SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

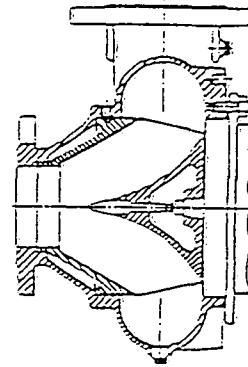
## K-TYPE

Figure 2



Suction cover non regulable

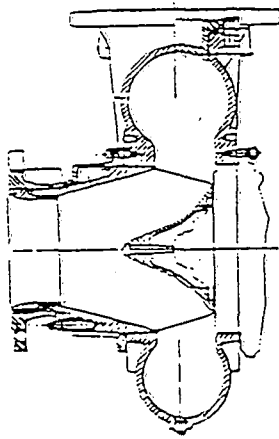
Figure 3



One piece volute/suction casing with non regulable liner

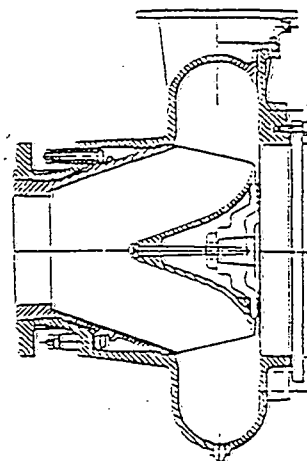
## K-TYPE

Figure 4



Suction casing with regulable liner

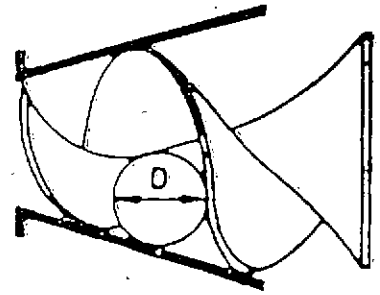
Figure 5



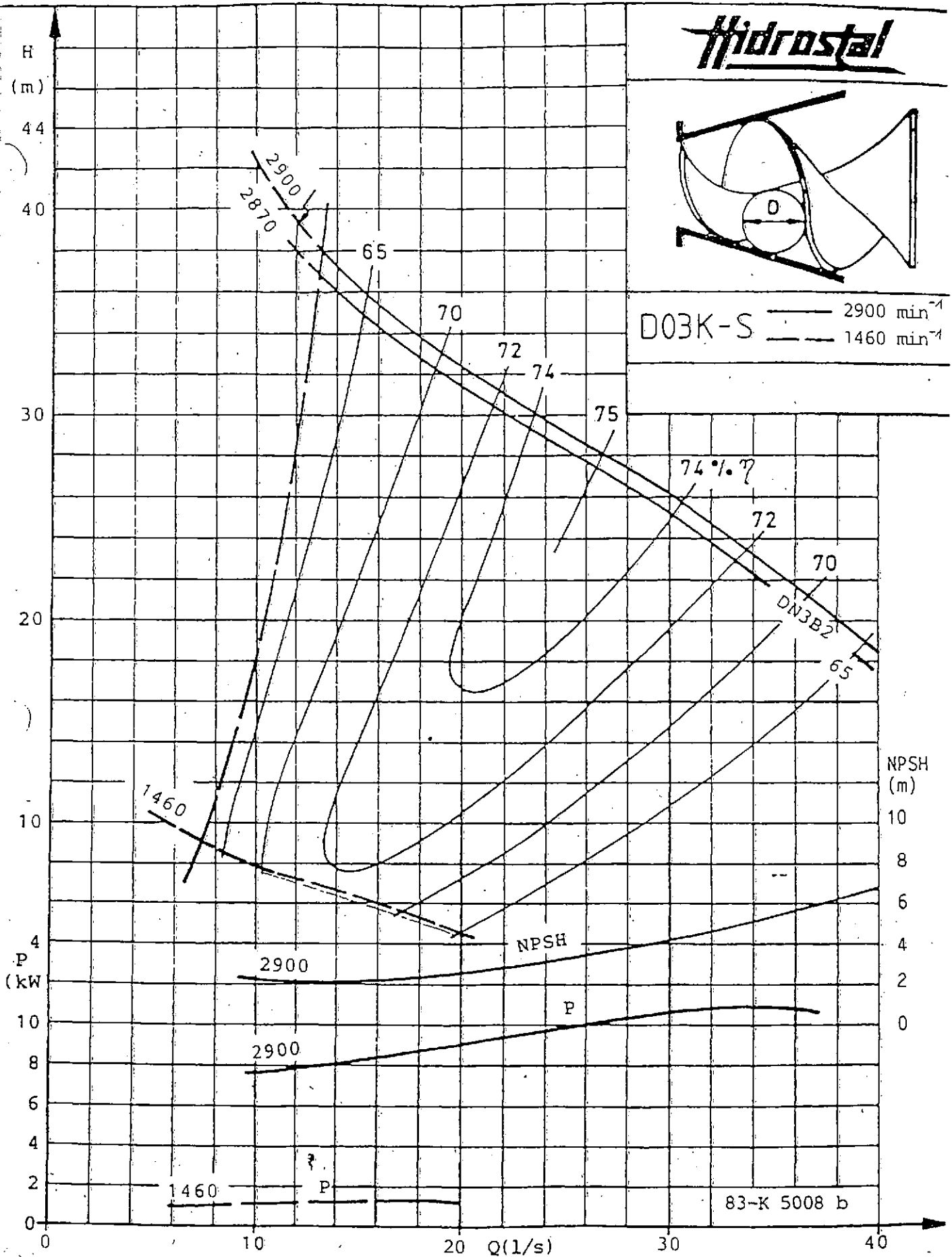
One piece volute/suction regulable liner (obsolete model, use Figure 4 instead)

For further details see sectional drawings of this section.

**hidrostal**



D03K-S — 2900 min<sup>-1</sup>  
 — 1460 min<sup>-1</sup>



83-K 5008 b



# SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

## GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR FRAME MOUNTED SOLIDS HANDLING PUMPS

### INTRODUCTION

#### GENERAL INFORMATION

The HIDROSTAL distribution network provides service wherever our pumps are sold. Should you require sales or service information please contact your local HIDROSTAL representative.

Hidrosta! 8213 NEJNKIRCH-CH	
TYPE	
ORD	NR.
Q	l/s.
H	m

#### NAMEPLATE DATA

Each pump has affixed to it a nameplate with the pertinent data as to rating and materials of construction. When enquiring about parts or service the above data should be supplied.

### INSTALLATION

#### PRELIMINARY

Prior to signing shipping documents, inspect the shipment for shortages or damages and promptly report any to the carrier. When a horizontal pump is unloaded, ensure it is lifted at four equal points on the baseplate. When a vertical pump is unloaded, use lifting eyes; couplings, extended shafts and other accessories are normally shipped in separate containers to avoid damage during shipment.

#### STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

If the unit is not to be installed shortly after arrival, store it in a clean and dry place having moderately small changes in the ambient temperature. Rotate the shaft several times every two weeks by hand. This will ensure a positive coating on lubricated surfaces so retard rust and oxidation.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

### LOCATION OF PUMP

The pump should be placed as near the liquid source as possible, avoiding elbows where possible on the suction line.

### PIPING

The suction and discharge piping should be independently supported near the pump, expansion joints must be used where necessary to take care of temperature and pressure expansion, so that there will be no external loading of the casing.

### SUCTION PIPING

To obtain maximum available suction head, the suction line should be as direct and as short as possible, avoiding elbows. If elbows must be used, a long radius type is preferred. It is important in a suction line to avoid any sagging in which air may collect and thereby cause loss of prime. For this same reason it is imperative to have the suction line airtight when suction lift conditions exist. Unless a suction line runs entirely downward toward the pump all reducers must be eccentric (Figure 1.1) if installed in a horizontal position. A straight concentric taper reducer (Figure 1.1) should never be used in a horizontal position with the suction line rising toward a pump, as air pockets may collect in the top of the reducer and pipe.

### GROUTING

A space of approximately 25mm (1") should be left between the baseplate and top of the foundation to be filled with grout. After the grout has dried, the foundation bolts should be firmly re-tightened and alignment rechecked.

### SEAL CHAMBER CONNECTIONS

Water or grease connections to the sealing chamber must be provided according to applications, for details, see relevant section.



## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

### OPERATION

#### ELECTRIC MOTOR DRIVE

A starter with overload protection should be installed to prevent the motor from being damaged by overload. The overload reset should be set so that they trip if the current exceeds the nominal current of the motor. (See motor nameplate).

#### BEFORE STARTING

The pump is ready to start when:

1. Pump baseplate is grouted and bolted to the foundation.
2. Pump and driver are correctly aligned.
3. Bearings are factory lubricated and ready for start-up. Refer to section entitled "Lubrication Instructions", after start-up to determine greasing procedure for each bearing frame type.
4. Seal water is supplied to the stuffing box, or oil level has been checked for units with mechanical seals as indicated in the relevant section "Seal chamber connections".
5. All rotating parts are found to be free when turned by hand.
6. Driver has been checked for correct rotation.
7. Pump is primed. Never run a pump dry. The liquid in the pump serves as a lubricant for close running surfaces within the pump and these may be damaged if operated dry for extended periods. If installed with suction lift, the pump may be primed by using an ejector or vacuum pump. Vertically installed solids handling pumps will prime automatically by having the impeller tongue submerged in liquid provided air evacuation through pump casing at ambient atmospheric pressure is allowed.
8. Inspect suction chamber to see that all debris from construction has been removed.
9. As momentum of inertia of the impeller is small, full load and full speed are reached within one second. Therefore, if reduced voltage starters are used (star delta) the time adjustment between star to delta should be no longer than two to three seconds.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

### STARTING

While the pump is running, an initial then periodic inspection should be made of:

1. Stuffing box or mechanical seal (refer to section entitled "Operating instructions for solids handling pumps with stuffing box" or "Operating instruction for solids handling pumps with mechanical seal").
2. Bearing temperature should not exceed 90°C.
3. Alignment: Successful operation of the pump depends on accurate alignment. It is recommended to recheck the alignment after initial run, then one week later.
4. Lubrication: According to section entitled "Lubrication Instructions".

### SHUTDOWN

To shut the pump down:

1. Disconnect power to the driver.
2. Close all valves.
3. Close seal water supply, if installed.
4. If the pump is to be out of service for a period longer than two weeks, the shaft must be rotated several times every two weeks to assure positive coating of lubricated surfaces.
5. If subject to freezing, the pump must be drained and blown down with compressed air. Also consult section entitled "Operating instructions for solids handling pumps with stuffing box" or "Operating instructions for solids handling pumps with mechanical seal".

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

### OPERATING TROUBLES

The following table is provided as a guide to common operating troubles and their causes. Should the trouble continue, consult your HIDROSTAL representative.

PROBABLE CAUSES	NO LIQUID DELIVERED	NOT ENOUGH LIQUID DELIVERED	NOT ENOUGH PRESSURE	LOSS OF CAPACITY AFTER STARTING	VIBRATION	MOTOR RUNS HOT	CAVITATION (NOISE)	BEARING TEMPERATURE ABOVE 90°
1. Pump not primed	x							
2. Speed too low	x		x					
3. Speed too high						x	x	
4. Air leak on suction	x	x		x	x		x	
5. Air leak in mechanical seal or stuffing box		x		x				
6. Air or gas in liquid	x	x	x	x	x		x	
7. Discharge head too high (above rating)	x	x			x			
8. Suction lift too high				x	x		x	
9. Not enough suction pressure for hot liquid		x			x		x	
10. Inlet pipe not submerged enough	x	x	x	x	x		x	
11. Viscosity of liquid greater than rating		x	x			x		
12. Liquid heavier than rating						x		
13. Excessive suction head	x	x		x	x		x	
14. Impeller clogged	x	x			x			
15. Wrong direction of rotation	x	x	x					
16. Excessive running clearance		x	x					

# SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

PROBABLE CAUSES	NO LIQUID DELIVERED	NOT ENOUGH LIQUID DELIVERED	NOT ENOUGH PRESSURE	LOSS OF CAPACITY AFTER STARTING	VIBRATION	MOTOR RUNS HOT	CAVITATION (NOISE)	BEARING TEMPERATURE ABOVE 90°
17. Damaged impeller		x	x		x			
18. Rotor binding						x		
19. Defects in motor							x	
20. Voltage lower than rating							x	
21. Incorrect lubrication								x
22. Foundation not rigid					x			
23. Misalignment of pump and driver					x	x		
24. Bearings worn					x			x
25. Impeller out of balance					x			
26. Shaft bent					x	x		
27. Impeller too small			x					
28. Suction line clogged	x	x	x					
29. Suction flange not sealed, hard gasket	x	x	x		x		x	
30. Impeller rubbing against suction belt					x	x		
31. Thick sludge and small impeller clearance						x		
32. Gas accumulation behind impeller on vertical inst.	x			x				
33. Pump does not prime - Vertical	x							

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

### MAINTENANCE OF HYDRAULIC PARTS

#### IMPELLER CLEARANCE ADJUSTMENT FOR WEAR

After some time of operation, the impeller and suction cover (or liner) may have worn, increasing the impeller gap. The impeller gap should be checked and re-adjusted whenever a significant decrease in pump performance is noticed, or at least once every year (until a history is developed at each different application to indicate how often adjustment will be required). Adjustment is most critical on high-pressure pumps (D3, E4, F4, H5, I6, L8), and least critical on low-pressure pumps.

Excessive clearance is not desirable especially in the smaller pump sizes, as a greater percentage of total flow can thus recirculate causing a drop in performance. Conversely, less clearance than the minimum listed can overload the motor and/or cause vibration due to too great a friction in between the impeller and the suction cover.

When pumping thick sludges or viscous material, larger clearances may be necessary to avoid friction, larger clearances may actually increase flow capability. Therefore, for thick sludges and high consistency materials, double the clearances in Figure 14 should be used.

Some pumps are easily adjusted by means of a movable liner (421); its position is regulated by three external regulator nuts (446) found on the suction casing (416) volute or casing (400). These pumps are designated "Regulable", and include the letter R or C in the pump code on the nameplate.

Other pumps have a one-piece suction cover (402) (or in pumps D3K and D4K, a fixed liner (421)); these pumps are adjusted by changing the thickness of the shims (411) between the motor and the volute casing (400).

Examine your pump for presence or absence of the regulator nuts, and proceed to the corresponding section of these adjustment instructions.

Loosen fasteners (419), and place shims of calculated thickness between motor and volute casing. (Shims may be washers of uniform thickness, or U-shaped shimstock - these must be placed under each fastener (419). Thin shims may be a single piece of steel wire - diameter equal to calculated thickness - wrapped all the way around motor, under the studs (419); ends can be bent outward around last studs (419), to avoid overlapping.

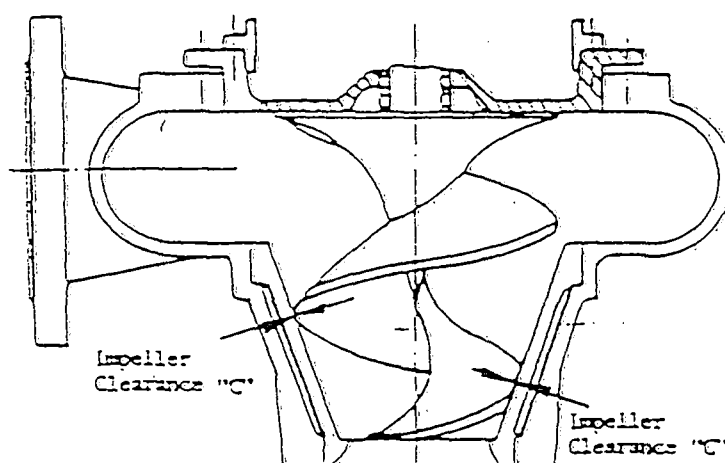
Tighten fasteners (419) again, and with a feeler gauge, check the actual clearance between impeller and liner (reaching in through the handhole cover (405) or through the suction of the pump). If the clearance is significantly different than "C" shown in column 2 of Figure 14, it is possible that the wear is excessive or not uniform. Disassembly and inspection is recommended.

If this adjustment procedure does not restore original pump performance, disassemble hydraulic end per following section to examine for uneven or excessive wear on impeller or suction cover/liner, and replace worn parts as necessary.

**SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND  
OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS.  
NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.**

PUMP TYPE	CLEARANCE C(MM)	TRAVEL OF THE REGULATOR NUT B (mm)	APPROX. NO OF TURNS FOR REGULATOR NUT
D3K/D4K	0.35		
E 5 K	0.6	1.12	2/3
E8K-LS/LL			
E8K-HD/SS		1.55	1
F 6 K			1/2
F 6 K	0.5	1.40	1
F 10 K		1.93	1-1/3
H 5 K		0.85	1/2
H 8 K		1.67	1-1/6
H 12 K	0.6	2.32	1-1/2
I 6 K		1.02	2/3
I 10 K		2.09	1-1/3
I 16 K	0.75	2.90	2
L 8 K		1.28	5/6
L 12 K		2.51	1-2/3
L 20 K	0.9	3.48	2-1/3

Figure 14



**NOTE:** Clearance "C" should be checked along entire impeller edge, and again after rotating impeller 1/4, 1/2, and 3/4 turns.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

### DISASSEMBLY OF HYDRAULIC PARTS

#### DISASSEMBLY FOR INSPECTION

For the following steps the casing-suction cover assembly should be placed with the suction flange flat on the floor or workbench, and the motor-impeller assembly removed or lowered into place from above by a suitable hoist.

The rotating assembly including impeller and motor can be lifted from the pump casing after removing nuts (419) around the motor flange. Areas to be examined for wear will be the impeller surface (especially the edges) and the conical machined surface in the liner or suction cover. Uniform wear on any of these surfaces can, up to a point, be compensated for by re-shimming or adjusting according to Section 3.1 of this manual. However, excessive or uneven wear will require replacement of the worn parts.

#### REMOVAL OF IMPELLER

Hold the impeller (401) from turning by hand, or by a strap wrench, or by locking pliers clamped to the impeller. Insert a hexagonal key wrench (allen-head wrench) into the impeller bolt (415) and with a hammer, tap the wrench counterclockwise to loosen the bolt.

#### WRENCH SIZES

Pump size:	D	E	F	H	I	L
Wrench size:	8mm	10mm	14mm	19mm	27mm	27mm

After removal of bolt, the impeller can be tapped loose from its fit against the impeller flange (165) by a few taps with a rubber mallet.

NOTE: For pumps D3K, D4K-HS/S and E4T, the impeller is fitted directly onto the shaft taper (no impeller flange is used).

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

### IMPELLER CLEARANCE ADJUSTMENT FOR NON-"REGULABLE" PUMPS

Adjustment is accomplished by moving the motor inward toward the volute casing. For the following steps it has proven easiest that the casing-suction cover assembly be placed with the suction flange on the floor or work bench, and the motor-impeller assembly be removed or lowered into place from above by a suitable hoist.

Loosen all fasteners (419) between motor and volute casing. Remove shims or shim wire.

To estimate correct shim thickness, lower motor into casing just until impeller cannot be turned. Measure gap between motor and volute casing at several places around motor flange and take average. Now add the distance "B" shown in column 3 of Figure 14 to the average gap measured, this will be the approximate shim thickness required to obtain correct clearance "C" shown in column 2 of Figure 14.

NOTE: If impeller tip is binding on suction lip, see Section 3.3.6.

### REMOVAL OF LINER OR SUCTION COVER

#### (a) FOR D3K, D4K & E4T

These pumps have a non-adjustable liner (421) held in a fixed position inside a one-piece volute casing. After removal of the three allen-head setscrews (418), this liner can be pressed out of the casing. See Figure 15.

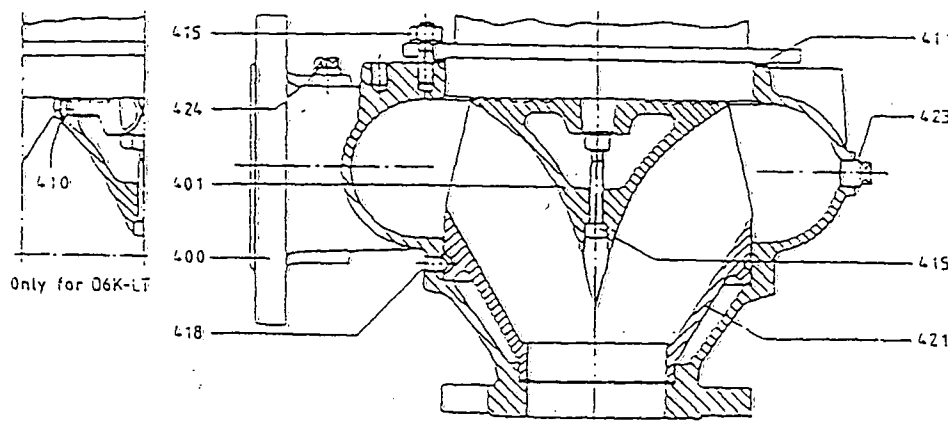


Figure 15 D3K, D4K, E4T



## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

### (b) FOR ALL OTHER PUMPS WITHOUT "REGULABLE" FEATURE

These pumps have a one-piece suction cover (402) which is bolted to the volute casing (400) by studs and nuts (417). Adjustment of clearance is by shims (411) between the volute casing and the motor. Note that on certain models there may be a spacer ring (414) between mating surfaces of the suction cover and the volute casing. When there is excessive wear on the conical surface, the suction cover (402) should be replaced. See Figure 16.

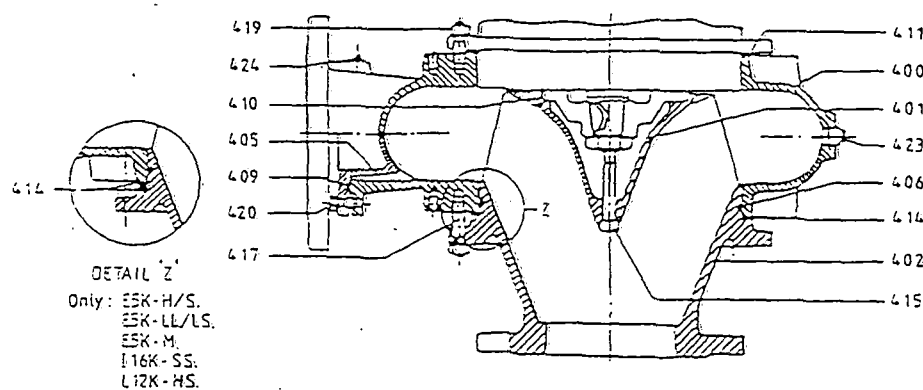


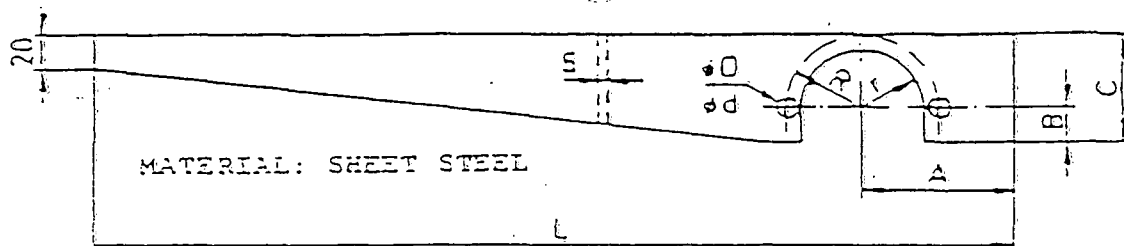
Figure 16: E5K, E8K, F6K, F10K, H8K, H12K, I10K, I16K, L12K, L20K: Non-Regulable.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

### REMOVAL OF IMPELLER FLANGE

(For pumps where impeller flange is used)

Bend tabs on the locking washer (167). When loosening the impeller flange nut (166), it may be necessary to hold the impeller flange from turning, by bolting up the special tool shown on Figure 20 to the tapped holes in the impeller flange. Use bolt thread size as indicated in last column of table in Figure 20. After nut is removed, tap impeller flange (165) with a mallet, and the impeller flange should drop off the shaft taper. If not, use a pulley-extractor tool as shown in Figure 21, bolted to the impeller flange with bolts of the size shown in the last column of Figure 20.



PUMP SIZE	R	r	o D	A	B	C	L	IMPELLER FLANGE NUT	HOLE SIZE
								SIZE	WRENCH SIZE <sup>1</sup>
D	30	25	10	65	15	70	500	M20	32
E	40	33	14	80	20	80	500	M28	41
F	55	48	14	110	20	100	900	M35	46
H	80	65	18	150	30	130	900	M35 <sup>2</sup>	46 <sup>2</sup>

- (1) MM across flats.
- (2) Except for "H" pump size with "H" motor size. In this case a special nut 70mm across flats is used.

Figure 20

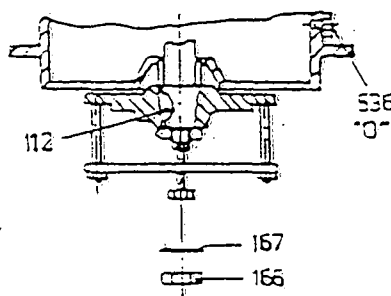


Figure 21



## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

### CAUTION:

SINCE BOTH SIDES OF THE VOLUTE CASING ARE MACHINED IDENTICALLY IN SOME MODELS, IT IS POTENTIALLY POSSIBLE TO ASSEMBLE THE PUMP WITH THE VOLUTE CASING BACKWARDS. PAY PARTICULAR ATTENTION TO THE ARROW DIRECTION AS DESCRIBED ABOVE.

FASTEN SUCTION COVER TO CASING WITH FASTENING SET (417).

### FINAL ASSEMBLY

**NOTE:** (Whenever a new impeller is fitted, without also replacing the liner or suction cover at the same time, the following clearance check must be done: Install impeller-motor assembly into volute casing assembly. If the tip of the impeller touches the suction ring (408) or the lip in the liner (or suction cover) - or if there is less than 1mm clearance between the tip and the lip when the spiral edge of the impeller is firmly seated against the conical taper inside the liner (or suction cover), then the impeller tip must be ground off - parallel to the suction flange - until 1 to 2mm clearance is obtained. See Figure 32).

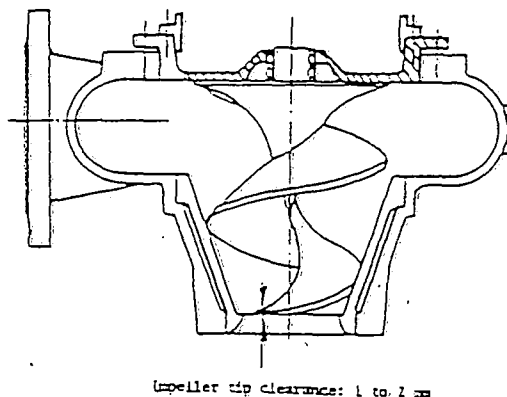


Figure 32

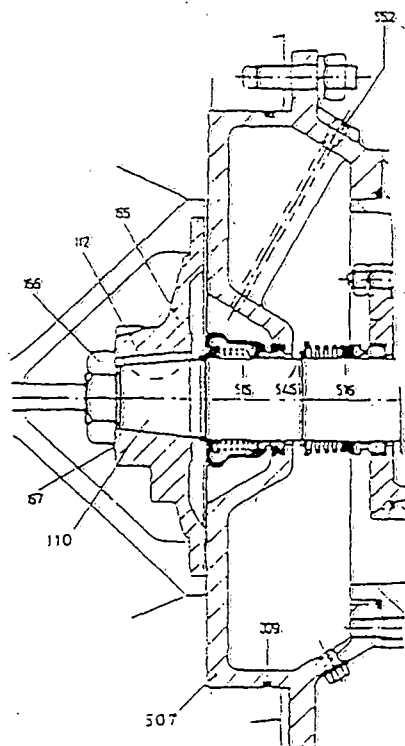
If (411) is a spacer ring in lieu of shims place this ring over the spigot of the motor.

Grease "O"-ring (209) and place into groove on spigot of motor.

Now install motor-impeller assembly into volute casing. Install and tighten nuts (416).

Proceed to Section 3.1 of these instructions for correct setting of regulator nuts - or for placement of shims (411) - for final adjustment of impeller clearance.

# **SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.**



PART	DESCRIPTION	MATERIAL OF CONSTRUCTION	
		1, 2 + 3	5
110	SHAFT	RUSTLESS STEEL	STAINLESS STEEL A4
112	KEY	STEEL	STAINLESS STEEL A4
165	IMPELLER KEY	NODULAR IRON	STAINLESS STEEL A4
166	NUT	RUSTLESS STEEL	STAINLESS STEEL A4
167	WASHER	RUSTLESS STEEL	STAINLESS STEEL A4
209	O-RING	NITRILE	
507	BACK COVER	GREY CAST IRON	STAINLESS STEEL A4
515	MECH. SEAL	C, V, M, X, B **	
516	MECH. SEAL	C, X **	
545	SNAP RING	SPRING STEEL	
546 *	SNAP RING	SPRING STEEL	
552	*PLUG	STEEL	-

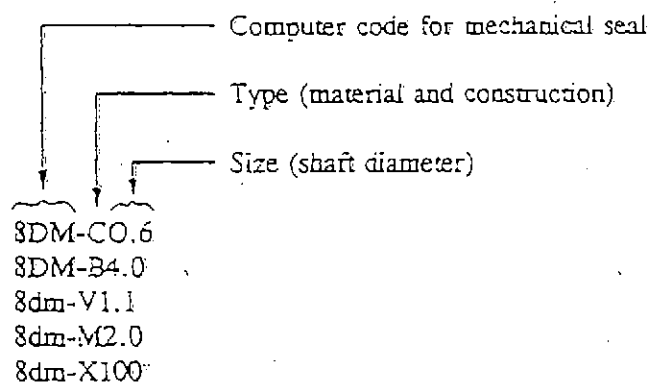
\* Only for Mech. Seal: C, V X

\*\* See type code description of this section  
(REFER NEXT PAGE)



# SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR K-LINE BEARING FRAME PUMPS. NON REGULABLE/MECHANICAL SEAL.

## CODE DESCRIPTION



Size Code	0,6	0,8	1,1	1,3	1,5	2,0	3,0	4,0	95	100
Size	5/8"	7/8"	1 1/8"	1 3/8"	1 1/2"	2"	3"	4"	95mm	100mm

	Stationary Part	Rotating Part	Seal Outside (casing)
C	Ceramic	Carbon	Spring
M	Silicon-carbide	Tungsten-carbide	Buna-N Casing completely enclosing spring
X	Silicon-carbide	Tungsten-carbide	Stainless steel casing, completely enclosing springs

## AVAILABILITY

SIZE-CODE		0,6	0,8	1,1	1,3	1,5	2,0	3,0	4,0	95	100
T Y P E	C	x	x	x	x	x	x	x			
	M	x		x		x	x				
	X							x		x	x

## NOTES:

- Every bearing frame and motor is of double mechanical seal construction.
- Up to size 3.0 the motor side seal is always of type c, sizes 95 and 100 always of type x.
- The B-type seal is only for M1M and M2M bearing frames (motor and pumpside).
- For block pump with single mechanical seal only type C is available.
- Sizes 0,8 and 1,3 are only used for motor side seals.

Refer: HID003/5/28 for seal and bearing data

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### 2.0 SERVICE CONNECTIONS

#### On Bearing Frame

The service connections that are built into all pumps as standard are listed below. Please refer to sectional drawing of bearing frame at end of the manual for specific details.

#### 552a/552b Seal Flushing Connections

For applications handling lightly contaminated liquids this connection is not used. However, in special cases when pumping high concentrations of solids with a tendency to dehydration or sedimentation, such as high concentrations of sludge or mud, there should be a connection to clean water flush. This connection will conduct clean water between the impeller and the lower mechanical seal (515), providing periodic removal of accumulated solids.



## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

Flushing water must be pressure-regulated between 7 and 14 psi ( $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 bar) above pump discharge pressure. Typically, water is controlled by a solenoid valve on a time clock. Adequate duration of each flushing is 60 seconds; frequency of flushing must be established for each different installation, starting with once per day.

The quantity of flushing water varies according to pump size and application: In most cases, flow rates of 6-8 l/min will be sufficient.

Alternatively or even in addition to the above function, this connection may be used to manually bleed the air from the casing prior to start-up, if there is no other place for air to escape through the discharge piping.

In most cases the connection 552b will be closed and flushing water mixes with product pumped. In cases where the solid accumulate, could form lumps or be fibrous, flushing out via 552b would be the preferred-solution. Connection 552b also permits complete draining of horizontal units if required.

### 536a/536b Oil fill and Oil Drain Connections

Connections 536a is positioned in such a manner that it should always be regarded as the oil fill connection.

Connections 536b is the oil drain connection.

### IMPORTANT

SEE SECTION DESCRIBING 'SEAL OIL CHECKING' AND 'SEAL OIL CHANGING' FOR DETAILED INFORMATION.

### Connection D:-

This connection tapped -  $\frac{1}{4}$ " BSP permits any leakage through the inboard mechanical seal (POS 516) to drain away thus preventing contamination of bearing grease and premature failure of bearing (POS 125).

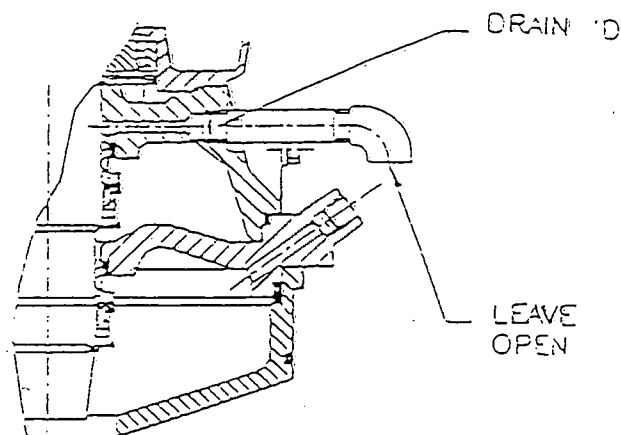
This drain must be left open. As soon as leakage via 'D' is noted the pump should be removed to a workshop for inspection.

On horizontally units Connection D must always be at the bottom of the bearing frame. The factory build pumps with drain 'D' on the opposite side to pump discharge flange, as most horizontally mounted pumps have the discharge flange vertically. If the discharge flange is in any other position the bearing frame must be unbolted from the hydraulic end and re-positioned so drain is vertically down.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

On vertical units the drain can be in any position relative to the discharge nozzle.

When installed in dry environment, the drain can be left open. When installed out-doors, or in a situation where water could spray onto the bearing frame, i.e. when washing down, an elbow should be fitted to prevent ingress of casual water.



### Connection 163

On bearing frames	BCM.0	Connection 163 is
	DCM.0	permanently plugged
	DFM.0	

These bearing frames are oil lubricated, 163 is the grease nipple connections [Pos 131] on the grease lubricated version of this pump.

### Connection 131

Greasing point for bearings on grease-lubricated version.

SEE SECTION "BEARING LUBRICATION" FOR FULL DETAILS

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### 3.0 BEARING LUBRICATION

#### 1. Grease Lubricated Bearings

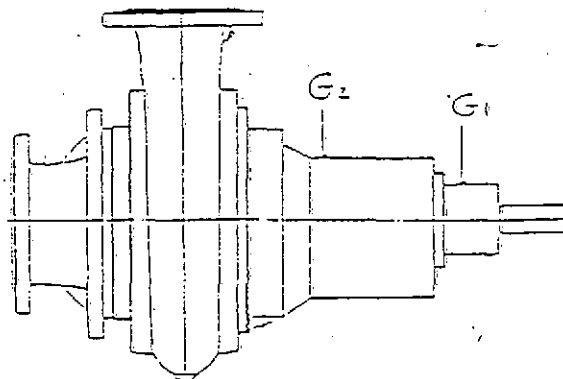
The following Bearing frames require periodic greasing according to table below:

HYD. SIZE	BEARING FRAME CODE	SECTION DRAWING	R.P.M.	LUBRICATION INTERVAL HOURS	AMOUNT OF GREASE [GRAMS]	
					G1	G2
B	BCM.F	90-TU-4115	3,000	500	3	2
			5,000			
D	DBM.F	90-TU 4110	2,900	500	-	2
	DCM.F	90-TU-4157	3,500	500	3	2
E	ECM.F	90-TU 4163	1,500	500	3	1
			2,000			
	EFM.F		2,900 1,500	500 1,000	5 5	
F	FFM.F	90-TU 4165	1,500			
	FGM.G		1,500			
			2,100			

The factory grease the bearings with the following grease and we recommend that, where possible, the same grease is used for periodic greasing. STABUAGS NBU 8 EP by Kluber-Lubrication.

#### Equivalent Lubricants:

1. Mobilux EP2 (Mobil)
2. Lidok EP2 (Exxon)
3. SKF LGEP2 (SKF)
4. Alvania EP2 (Shell)
5. Multifak EP2 (Texaco)
6. Amolith Grease #2EP (Amoco)



When it is not possible to use this grease, a grease of similar specification should be used.



## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

STABURAGS NBU 8 EP by Klüber-Lubrication.

This grease is of a mineral oil base containing a barium complex as thickener.

Typical characteristics:

Colour	beige	
Apparent dynamic visco. [approx]	6000	mPas
Operating temp. range	-30..150	°C
Max. temp [short time]	170	°C
Consistency class [NLGI]	2	
Penetration DIN ISO 2137 [0.1mm]	280	
Dropping point DIN ISO 2176	>220	°C
Corrosion protection DIN 51802	0	
RPM-parameter [n x d m]	5 x 105	

STABURAGS NBU 8 EP is:

Rolling Bearing High Pressure Grease

suitable for long-life lubrication under high specific bearing loads and for the protection against unusual bearing wear. Proven for vehicle motors, axle bearings, electric motors, pumps and above all for taper roller bearings.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### OIL LUBRICATED BEARINGS

For high speed and heavy duty applications, Hidrostal pumps can be supplied with oil lubricated bearings. These can only be used on horizontal applications. Bearing frames for oil lubrication can be identified by the letter 'O' at the end of the bearing frame code [ie BCM10]

#### IMPORTANT

When factory supply bare-shaft pumps they are shipped without bearing lubricating oil. The oil fill is to be made either by local agent, who may fit the pump to a base-plate or by installer. Commissioning engineer should check oil fill has been made prior to start-up.

The following Bearing Frames are oil-lubricated and the oil should be changed according to table below or when oil looks dirty and/or contaminated.

HYD CODE	BEARING FRAME CODE	SECTION DRAWING	R.P.M.	OIL CHANGE INTERVAL	QUANTITY OF OIL [LITRES]
B	DCM.0	90-TU 4123	3,000 6,300	Once per year or every 5,000 hours	0.15
D	DCM.0	91-TU 4159	3,000 6,300		0.15
D	DFM.0	90-TU 4161	2,900 4,100		0.85
E	EGM.0		2,900 3,500		1.2
F	FHM.0		2,900		1.5

The correct level for the lubrication oil is the centre line of the sight-glass [Pos 536].

The factory recommend the following oil for bearing lubrication.

Automobile Transmission Fluid [ATF] Universal Oil. Factory fill with version having red additive.

#### WARNING

Oil temperature should not be allowed to exceed 80°C. For applications where this would occur consult your local Hidrostal agent.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### 4.0 CHECKING OF SEAL OIL

The condition of the Seal Oil gives a direct indication as to the condition of the product side mechanical seal. [Pos 515].

An oil condition check must be made after the first 1,000 hours of operation and once a year thereafter. Or more frequently, if site experience indicates.

Immediately before checking the oil, either run the pump for a few minutes or if the pump has been removed from site shake the pump to distribute any impurities through the oil.

**NOTE:** Before proceeding to check the oil condition, carefully clean the area around the oil-sight-glass [Pos 549] and the oil plugs 536a and 536b.

**IMPORTANT:** When a bearing frame is fitted with an oil-sight-glass it should only be used to obtain a quick visual indication as to the oil condition. It should not be regarded as an indication of the correct oil level.

**BE CAREFUL** in oil lubricated bearing frames to check the correct sight-glass. Seal oil sight-glass [Pos 549] is located nearest the hydraulic end; whereas the bearing lubrication oil sight-glass [Pos 536] is low down, between the bearings.

The correct oil level is above the level of the sight-glass for both horizontally and vertically mounted pumps and, as long as oil level surface cannot be seen through the sight-glass it can be regarded as having sufficient oil for satisfactory operation, even though it may be nominally below the original fill level.

If the oil appears through the sight-glass to be relatively clean a small sample of oil should be removed from the bearing frame through plug 536b into a suitable container and examined. If the oil is clear, there is no problem with the pump side seal [Pos 515] and the removed oil can be refilled into the chamber, [Pos 515] and plug 536a and the oil topped up, using the correct grade of oil to the required level.

If the oil appears through the sight-glass to be somewhat milky, dirty, or the oil level is not apparent, a full oil check must be made by draining all of the oil through the plug 536a into a suitable container and examined.

If the oil is relatively clean and the water readily separates from the oil, the separated oil can be returned to the oil chamber and topped up with the same grade of oil to the required level. In this case it is advisable that the seal oil is then checked after a further 500 hours of operation.





## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

However, if too much water has entered the oil the viscosity will be much higher-as thick as motor oil or even thicker. In such cases it can be concluded that the pump side mechanical seal [Pos 515] must be repaired or replaced, which is best undertaken in an authorised workshop.

If there is a small quantity of water in the oil, but the oil is otherwise clean, it does not indicate a failure of the mechanical seal, as it is possible that a small quantity of water passed through the seal during the initial running-in period.

If the oil is dirty, or there has been a significant loss of oil, then it is recommended that the pump is removed to a workshop so that the mechanical seal assembly can be carefully examined.

If the oil level is at, or below the sight-glass, then there has been significant leakage of oil and the pump side mechanical seal 515 may require replacement, particularly if no oil leakage has been observed through drain connection "D". In this instance the pump should be scheduled for a workshop overhaul in the very near future.

**NOTE:** When re-installing plugs 536a and 536b always use a new copper sealing washer. The copper sealing washer must be softened as follows:-

Heat until red and quench immediately in cold water.

### SUMMARY

#### OIL CONDITION

#### ACTION

Oil is clean	Top up to correct level*	PUMP INSITU
Oil is milky	Draining oil, separate water refill separated oil. Top up to correct level* with same grade of oil CHECK AGAIN AFTER 500 HOURS	PUMP INSITU
Oil looks dirty but of low viscosity and free of sludge [Small amount of dirty liquid discolours oil]	Completely drain old oil, flush out, refill* with new oil CHECK AGAIN AFTER 500 HOURS	PUMP INSITU
Seal Oil Very Dirty	Remove pump to authorised workshop for inspection,	
Seal Oil Below Sight-Glass	Remove pump to authorised workshop for inspection	

\*SEE SECTION COVERING 'CHANGING SEAL OIL WITH PUMP INSITU' FOR METHOD OF DETERMINING CORRECT OIL LEVEL



## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### SEAL OIL QUANTITIES

To refill the seal oil chamber to the required level the following oil quantities can be used as a guide:-

BEARING FRAME	QUANTITY [Litres]
DBM.F	0.9 - 1.0
BCM.F/BCM.0 DCM.F/DCM.0	0.9 - 1.0
ECM.F	1.2 - 1.3
DFM.0	1.5
EFM.F	3.3
FFM.F EGM.0 FGM.F	3.3
FHM.0	3.8



## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### SEAL OIL SPECIFICATION

#### General

The factory fill the seal oil chamber on double-mechanically sealed close-coupled pumps with the same low viscosity oil used for cooling systems on immersible motors.

#### TYPICAL ANALYSIS

Specific gravity at 20°C	0.812 g/ml
Viscosity at 20°C	6.75 mm <sup>2</sup> /s [cst]
Viscosity at 40°C	3.52 mm <sup>2</sup> /s [cst]
Solidification point	-38.0°C
Flash point	132.0°C
Burning point	142.0°C
Evaporation energy	251.0 kJ/kg
Solubility in water	none

For installations which are exposed to temperatures far below freezing point [e.g. outdoor installations], the solidification point is very important.

#### IMPORTANT FEATURES FOR APPLICATION IN PUMPS

Instead of this oil, another oil or even another liquid can be used. When selecting an alternative cooling medium the following features must be considered.

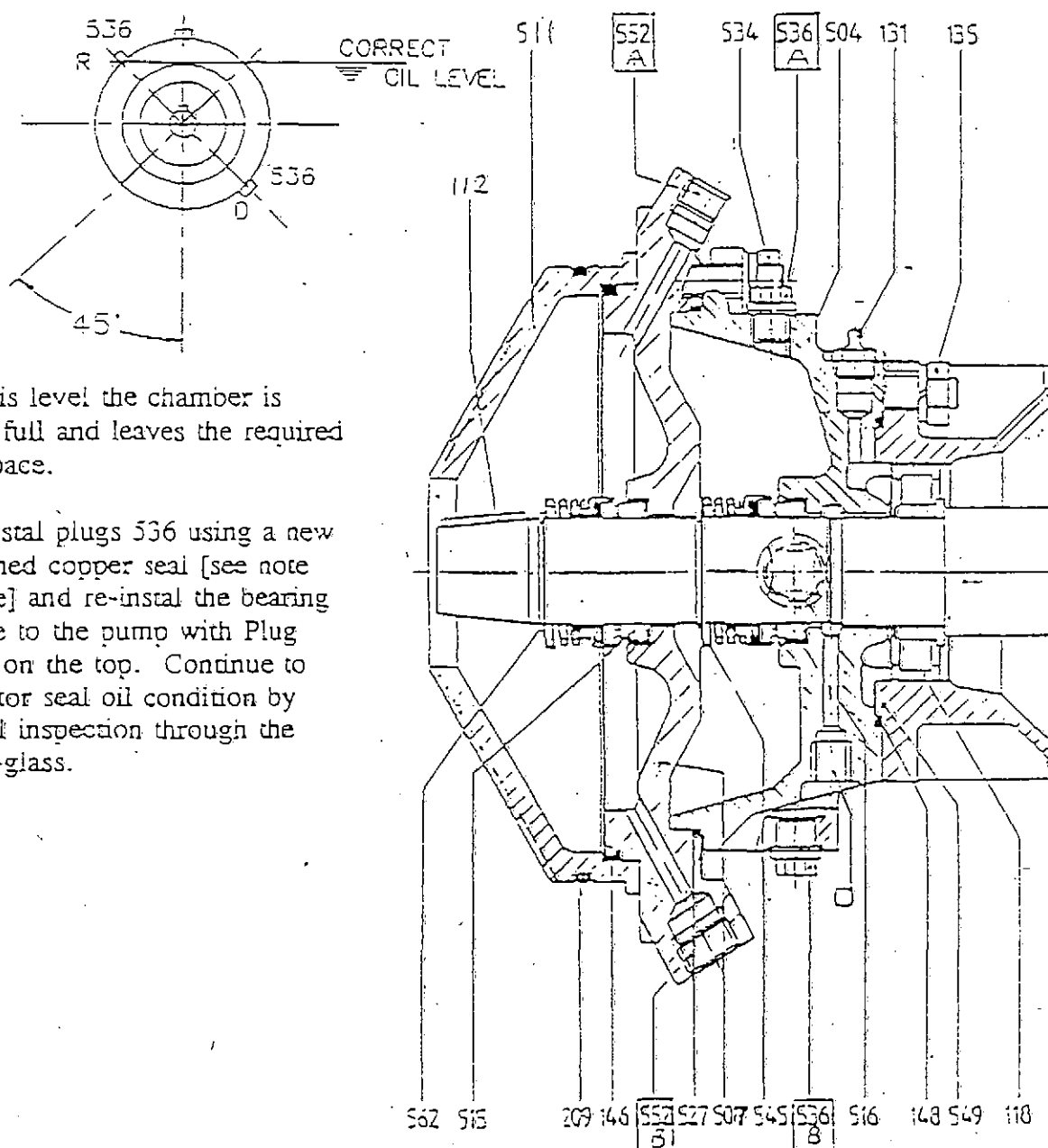
1. The viscosity may not be higher than indicated by ISO VG.
2. Emulsification with water is not acceptable, as water penetration could not be detected.
3. Corrosion resistance and non-aging quality are required.
4. Following temperatures must be considered:-
  - Solidification point and lowest possible surrounding temperature.
  - Boiling point and highest possible temperature of pump liquid.
5. In case of Bearing Frames equipped with electrical moisture probes, it is important that the liquid has good electric insulation qualities.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### CHANGING SEAL OIL ON INSITU HORIZONTAL PUMPS

For horizontally installed pumps the oil can be drained via plug 536b into a suitable container.

To refill the oil disconnect the bearing frame from the volute end, turn the bearing frame so that Plug 536a and the sight-glass [when fitted 549] are both lying at 45 degrees from the vertical [see sketch]. The oil should be refilled using Plug 536a and the correct level for the refilled oil is when the level is at the centre of the sight-glass, which is also the same level of the filling hole 536a.



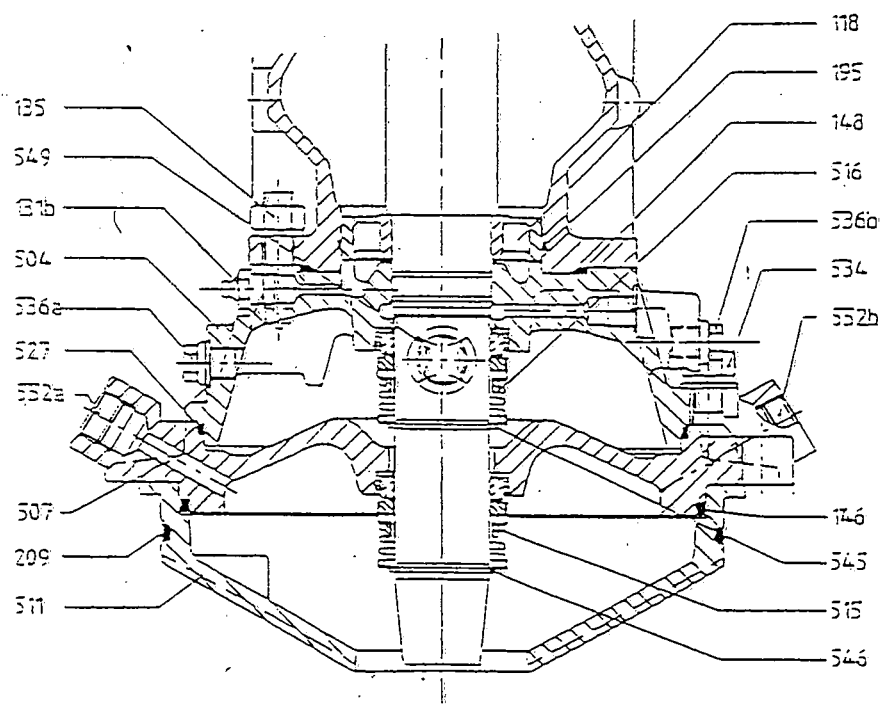
At this level the chamber is 90% full and leaves the required air space.

Re-install plugs 536 using a new softened copper seal [see note above] and re-install the bearing frame to the pump with Plug 536a on the top. Continue to monitor seal oil condition by visual inspection through the sight-glass.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### CHANGING SEAL OIL ON INSITU VERTICAL PUMPS

The oil must be removed by firstly draining down to the level of 536b and then using some means to remove the remaining oil below the level of Plug 536b. This could be done by either using a rubber tube as a syphon or by employing some form of device. This is best undertaken after removing Plug 536a.



Having removed all the old oil, flush with a little clean oil and refill with clean oil up to the level of 536a.

#### IMPORTANT

It is important the correct sectional drawing is studied to determine Plug 536a. The level of this plug ensures the correct air space is left above the oil. If connection 536b is used this would not be the case.

Plugs 536a and 536b should be replaced using a soft copper washer.

Continue to monitor seal oil conditions by visual inspection through sight-glass.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### MAINTENANCE OF HYDRAULIC PARTS

#### PUMPS WITH HEAVY DUTY HYDRAULIC END AND REGULABLE LINERS

B050 Sectional Drawing 90-TU 4144 Mat Code 1R/3R/5R

D080-D100 Sectional Drawing 90-TU 4148 Mat Code 3R/5R

E080-E200 Sectional Drawing 90-TU 4150 Mat Code 3R

This family of pumps have been designed for the more arduous applications where ease of impeller clearance adjustment is a requirement, particular in situations where the liquid may contain abrasive solids. In this case the clearance is adjusted by three external screws without disturbing the pump or pipework.

For a pump on a new application the impeller clearance should be checked and re-adjusted whenever a significant decrease in pump performance is noticed or at least once every six months, until a history is developed as to how often adjustment will be required.

Excessive clearance is not desirable especially in the smaller pump sizes, as a greater percentage of total flow can thus re-circulate causing a drop in performance. Conversely, less clearance than the minimum listed can overload the motor and/or cause vibration due to too great a friction between the impeller and the liner.

When pumping thick sludges or viscous material, larger clearances may be necessary to avoid friction; larger clearances may actually increase flow capability. Therefore, for thick sludges and high consistency materials, set clearance to 2 times that shown in table.

The three adjusting screws can be found on the suction side of the volute, immediately behind the suction flange.

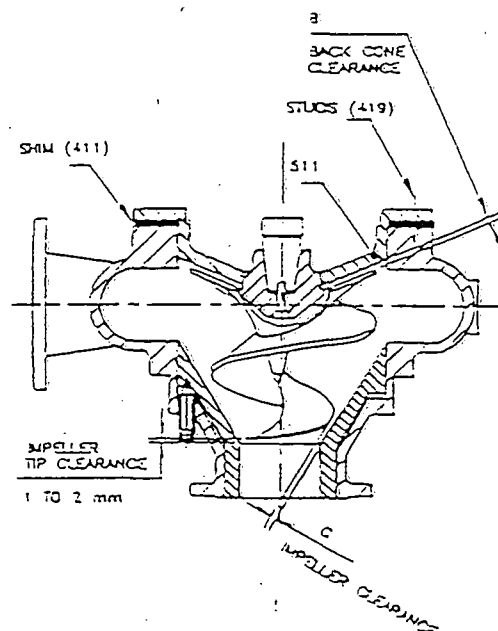
#### A. IMPELLER CLEARANCE ADJUSTMENT OF PUMPS WITH REGULABLE LINER

Loosen and back-off lock nuts [Pos 412] on end of each regulator assembly. Now slowly and evenly screw-in each regulator bush [Pos 422] just until pump shaft cannot be turned [this will eliminate all clearance between the impeller and the liner]. Be sure to take the same number of turns on each threaded regulator bush; this keeps the liner concentric to the impeller.



## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

If the impeller tip is binding on the lip in the suction eye, or if there is less than 1mm clearance, between the impeller tip and the lip when the spiral edge of the impeller is firmly seated against the conical taper inside the volute, then the tip clearance must be opened up. To adjust the tip clearance the impeller tip must be ground off parallel to the suction flange, until 1-2mm clearance is obtained.



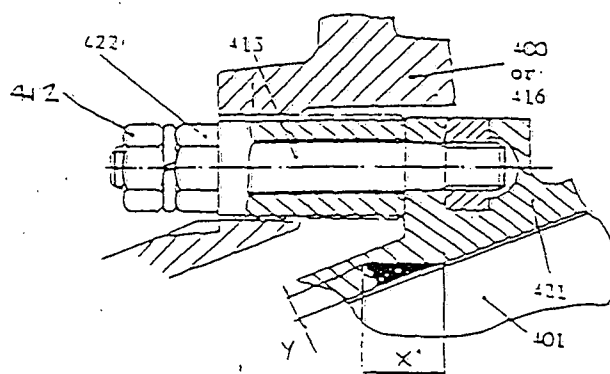
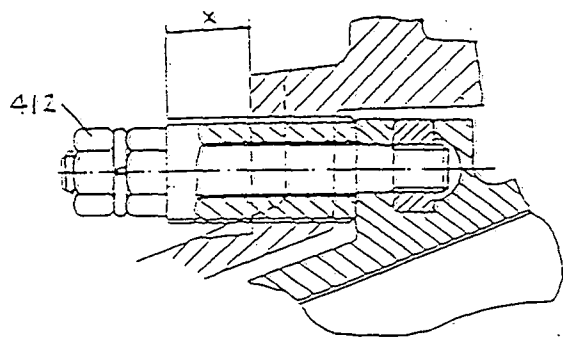
Now back off the threaded regulator bush [Pos 422] exactly the number of turns specified in the table [according to pump size]. Holding each threaded regulator bush from turning, tighten the three standard hex lock nuts [Pos 412]. This pulls liner away from impeller the required clearance, and also locks the regulator bush in place.

Ideally a feeler gauge should then be used to check the actual clearance between the impeller and liner, access being via the suction of the pump.

If the clearance is significantly different than 'C' shown in table, it is possible that the wear is excessive or uneven, disassembly and inspection is recommended.

In situations where the actual clearance 'C' cannot be measured, i.e. pump is installed in a system, it can only be assumed the clearance is correct, unless a noticeable reduction in performance would indicate otherwise. In this case, the pump should be removed so that the hydraulic end can be disassembled and inspected for wear.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS



Type	Max. Regulating distance X' [mm]	Max. clearance Y [mm]	Max. recommended adjusted clearance C' [mm]	Regulation nut Pos. 422	No. of turns of regulator nut 422 for C' [from C=0] n [1]	Clearance 'B' [mm]
B050	10	5.9	0.2	M 18 X 1.5	0.23	--
D050	8	4.7	0.3	M 22 X 1.5	0.34	
D080		4.7			0.34	
D100-/S		4.7			0.34	
D100-H/M		4			0.40	
E080	13	7.6	0.4	M 27 X 1.5	0.45	
E125-SH/M/H						
E125-MH	7	4.1	0.4	M 22 X 1.5	0.45	
E200-HL/SL	8	2	0.4	M 22 X 1.5	1.06	
E200-ML	13	3.4			1.01	

NOTE: Clearance 'C' should be checked along entire impeller edge and, again after rotating impeller, 1/4, 1/2 and 3/4 turns.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### REPLACEMENT OF WORN HYDRAULIC PARTS

If, after re-adjusting the impeller clearance "C" there remains big discrepancies in this clearance and the reset pumps does not sufficiently restore the pump performance then the impeller and/or suction liner are worn beyond their service life and should be replaced.

An impeller is considered worn when:-

- a) The outer edge [that which runs next to the liner] no longer presents a smooth continuous surface but is grooved and is no longer conical. This is best checked by placing the impeller into a new liner, if available.
- b) The discharge edge is worn so thin that small abraded valleys on the surface of the blade have, or are about to break through.
- c) The impeller tip is worn such, that it is no longer hidden behind the shoulder [lip] in the suction eye of the liner [check that it is the impeller that is worn and, not the entrance to the liner, which forms the shoulder].

Wear patterns on the flat surfaces of the impeller are not critical to the performance, nor is a gentle rounding of the impeller edge.

The liner/suction cover is considered worn when:-

- a) Deep circumferential grooving is present on the conical surface.
- b) The spiral groove is no longer visible, or it is generally less than 1.5mm deeper than the conical surface.
- c) The shoulder lip at the inlet eye is not longer of sufficient width to protect the impeller tip.

NOTE: If the impeller tip is visible through the suction eye of the assembled pumps, it is possible that fibrous materials and rags will hang up on this tip and the pump will no longer provide the excellent 'solids handling capability' for which it was originally purchased.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### ADJUSTMENT OF BACK CLEARANCE "B"

Experience in the field has indicated that very little wear takes place between the back of the impeller and the back cone [Pos 511] and factory tests have shown that even with quite large back clearances "B" there is only a marginal effect on pump performance.

In most instances adjustment of this back clearance will be unnecessary between major overhauls. The factory build the pumps with "B" according to the dimensions shown in the table and in most instances it will be reasonable to allow this clearance to open up by 1-2mm. However, should it become necessary to reduce this clearance, shims should be placed between the back cone [511] and sealplate [507]. This might be particularly necessary if the pump is handling fibrous material which may become trapped between the impeller and the back cone.

The back cone is considered worn when; the spiral groove is heavily worn and is barely visible or has disappeared altogether. If the spiral groove is still clearly visible but the corners have become somewhat rounded, the pump will still operate at its design flow rate and head, but the cutting action of the impeller against the back cone will be somewhat reduced and if handling fibrous material it maybe worth considering replacing this back cone particularly if jamming of the material between the impeller and the cone has become a problem.

### REMOVAL OF IMPELLER

Hold the impeller [401] from turning by hand, or by a strap wrench, or by locking pliers clamped to the impeller. Insert a hexagonal key wrench [allen-head wrench] into the impeller bolt [415] and with a hammer, tap the wrench counterclockwise to loosen the bolt.

#### Wrench Sizes

Pump Size:	C	B	D	E
Wrench Sizes:	10 mm	10 mm	10 mm or 14 mm	14 mm

After removal of bolt, the impeller can be tapped loose using a plastic hammer, rap the impeller face [NOT edge or tip!] to free it from the shaft taper. If it does not pop-off the taper after a few sharp raps, then heat the hub of the impeller [near the impeller bolt hole] with a soft-flame torch, then rap again.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

Before fitting a new impeller [or a new impeller bolt], the length of the impeller bolt should be checked, as follows:-

1. Place impeller into shaft and using a thin rod measure distance from end of shaft to the shoulder in the impeller bolt-hole. Remove impeller.
2. Now measure impeller bolt length, from tip to underside of head and, subtract  $1\frac{1}{4}$  times the bolt diameter. If remaining distance is shorter than [1] above, a longer impeller bolt is needed, to ensure adequate engagement of threads.
3. Now screw impeller bolt into shaft end as far as it will go without excessive force and, measure distance from shaft end to underside of bolt head. If this distance is longer than [1] above, the bolt must be shortened, [to ensure that the bolt pulls the impeller tight against shaft before the bolt "bottoms out" in the shaft threads]. If the impeller bolt must be shortened a significant amount, check if the threads on the bolt must be re-cut to permit the required assembled length.

### NOTE:

Coat shaft taper with a light oil ONLY [do NOT use grease or anti-size compound here], then install impeller directly onto shaft.

Coat the impeller bolt with grease or anti-size compound. Install and tighten to the torque listed below:

### FACTORY FITTED IMPELLER BOLTS

HYDRAULIC	SIZE	HEXAGON	TORQUE N-M
B050	M12	10	60
D050] DDM1B			
D080] DDM1C	M16	14	147
D100]			
D080]			
E125]			
E200]			

NOTE: If torque wrench not available, correct tightness can be approximated by hitting long end of standard 'L'-shaped allen-wrench with several sharp hammer blows.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### REMOVAL OF "REGULABLE" LINER

The liner [Pos 421] is housed in the front portion of the volute in the case of the smaller pumps B050/D080/D100. The larger pumps E080→ have a removable suction casing. [Pos 416] in which is housed with regulable liner [Pos 421]. See section drawing of each pump for exact construction details.

Pumps with regulable liners can easily be recognised by the presence of three large regulation bushes with lock nuts just behind the suction flange.

If the conical surfaces is worn, only the liner needs to be replaced. The liner can be removed while the volute casing and suction casing remain attached to the piping, if desired. Alternatively, the suction casing may be removed from the volute casing by removing nuts [Pos 417], if more convenient.

To remove liner, completely remove small lock nuts [Pos 412] on end of regulator bush [Pos 422], then push the three screws [Pos 413] through the holes in the large regulator bushes. If stubborn, the large regulator bushes can be turned all the way into the casing to force the liner out. No attempt should be made to disassemble the regulator screws [Pos 415] from the liner until the liner is removed from the pump; they are loctited in place and, must be heated with a torch to break the loctite bond.

The wear ring [Pos 408] should not typically require disassembly; remove from suction casing only if badly damaged by unusual circumstances. It will be necessary to heat the mating surfaces with a torch to destroy the special adhesive between these two parts. Then press out wear ring with a hydraulic press.

### REPLACEMENT OF "REGULABLE" LINER

Install three regulator screws [Pos 413] into liner, using 'Loctite' "stud-mount".

Thoroughly grease 'O'-ring [Pos 430] and install into groove in casing [Pos 400] - this groove is nearly hidden by the suction ring in some pump models. Grease 'O'-ring [Pos 431] and install into groove in wear ring [Pos 408]. Assemble ring into suction casing with a lead hammer, until suction ring is flush with flange surface.

#### IMPORTANT

Make sure wear ring is flush with or slightly below flange surface. If it is protruding above surface the connection of the suction pipework will push wear ring into casing and close-up tip clearance, or in extreme cases bind on impeller tip which could cause bearing or seal failures.

Grease and install 'O'-ring [Pos 406] onto large end of liner.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

Coat the external threaded portion of large regulator bushes with anti-size compound and, install these into the casing [Pos 400] or [Pos 416] hex-side toward the outside [toward the suction flange]. Screw these into the casing until they are flush with the inside of the casing.

Now place liner into casing, engaging the three screws into the holes through the three regulator bushes. [Note: The three screws are not spaced evenly around the liner, so there is only one orientation of the liner where the screws will correctly fit through the regulator bushes].

### REPLACEMENT OF BACK CONE [Pos 511]

Firstly, remove impeller as previously described. The back cone [Pos 511] is an easy fit onto seal plate [Pos 507] and should remove easily, any resistance will be caused by the interference of 'O'-ring [Pos 146].

To replace back case, grease a new 'O'-ring [Pos 527] and fit into spigot of sealplate [Pos 507]. Hand press a new back cone into place. On the larger sizes, a light tap with a plastic hammer maybe required to overcome the resistance of the 'O'-ring.

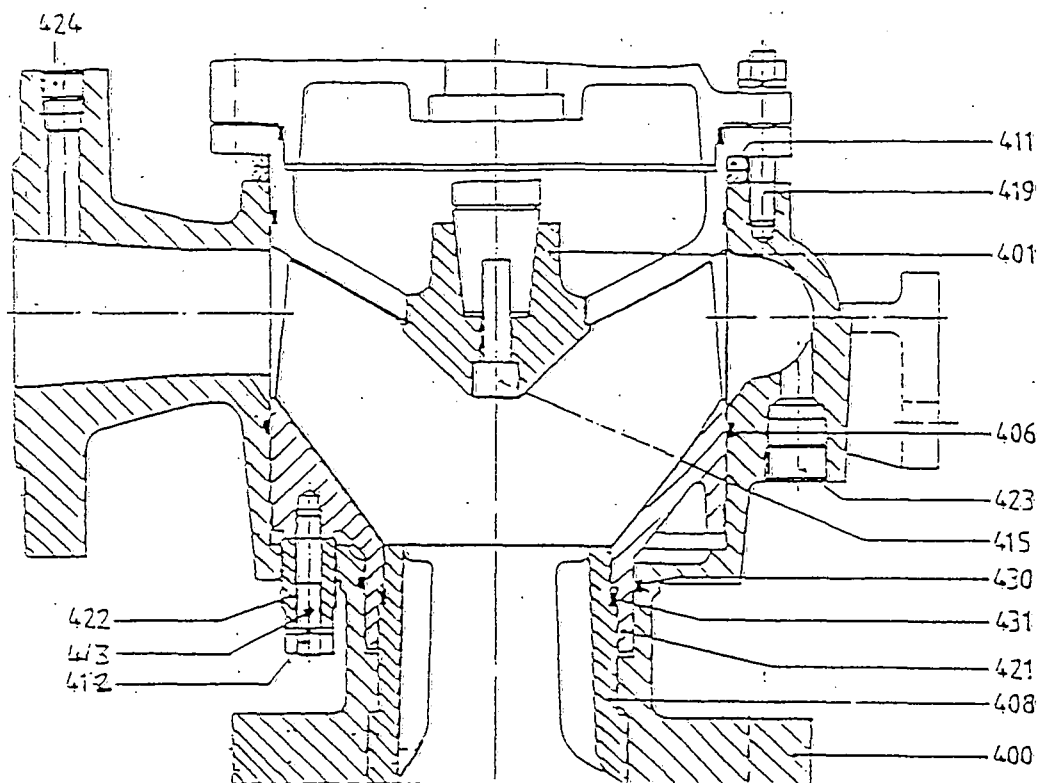
### FINAL ASSEMBLY

After fitting a new impeller and/or liner the correct impeller clearance should be set by following the steps defined in "Adjustment of Impeller Clearance for Wear" taking particular care to check and, if necessary, adjust the impeller tip clearance.

#### IMPORTANT

Should a complete strip-down of the pump be required and mechanical seals need replacing, we recommend this work is done in a Hidrostat authorised repair centre, who will have complete repair manuals and any special tools and facilities necessary to properly assemble and re-assemble the pumps.

# SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS



PART	DESCRIPTION	MATERIAL CODE		
		1R	3R	5R
400	VOLUTE	GREY CAST IRON	GREY CAST IRON	STAINLESS STEEL A4
401	IMPELLER	NODULAR IRON	STAINLESS STEEL A4	STAINLESS STEEL A4
406	'O'-RING	NITRILE		
408	WEAR RING	GREY CAST IRON	HIDRO HARD	STAINLESS STEEL A4
411	SHIMS	STEEL		
413	ADJUSTING BOLT	STAINLESS STEEL A4		
415	IMPELLER BOLT	RUSTLESS STEEL	RUSTLESS STEEL	STAINLESS STEEL A4
419	FASTENING SET	RUSTLESS STEEL		
421	LINER	GREY CAST IRON	HIDRO HARD	STAINLESS STEEL A4
422	REGULATION NUT	STAINLESS STEEL A4		
423	DRAIN PLUG	STEEL	STEEL	STAINLESS STEEL A4
424	PLUG	STEEL	STEEL	STAINLESS STEEL A4
430	'O' - RING	NITRILE		
431	'O' - RING	NITRILE		

Hidrostral reserves the right to make changes without giving prior notice.





## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### DISASSEMBLY

- a) Remove hydraulic end as described in "Maintenance of Hydraulic Parts".
- b) Remove both 'Mechanical Seal' seals, as previously described in this section.

To remove shaft and bearing assembly from bearing housing [Pos 100] proceed as follows:-

- c) Remove shaft key [114] labyrinth [130] unfasten nuts [136] and remove bearing cap [103] and 'O'-ring [147].
- d) Remove oil chamber casing [504] if still fixed to [100], taking care not to damage the stationary mech seal face. Press shaft and bearing assembly from pump end out of bearing housing [100].
- e) Unfasten lock washer [127] and remove lock nut [126].
- f) If bearings are to be replaced remove from shaft using pullers or press - depending on facilities available in workshop.

### AFTER DISASSEMBLING

Wash all lubricants from bearings, bearing housing and bearing caps with kerosene, and dry bearings by thoroughly spinning by hand or gently with clean and dry compressed air. Replace bearings if they do not rotate freely or its running surfaces show signs of deterioration. Coat bearings with a rust preventive oil and wrap in protective paper.

mount shaft [110] between two centres and using a dial indicator, check shaft trueness at four positions by turning shaft by hand. These readings must but vary more than 0.002" [0.05mm]. If so, replace the shaft. Examine all parts to be refitted for wear and deterioration. Replace any which are beyond reconditioning.

Scour scale from all parts with kerosene and wire brush. Coat all parts with a rust inhibiting lubricant, with special care given to impeller bolt [415], and all threads on shaft [110]. If unit is not to be installed immediately, store in a clean and dry place.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### ASSEMBLING PREPARATION

- a) Insure all parts to be refitted are free from burrs, with screws and abutting faces clean and free from damage. Replace all 'O'-rings. All studs to be refitted must be coated with Loctite Adhesive 307. Wrap threads on all grease nipples and plugs with Teflon tape. 'O'-rings must be greased before assembling.
- b) Special recommendation:- To facilitate the mounting of the rolling bearing on shaft, place bearing on an electric heating plate; do not exceed 80°C. Temperatures above 130°C may cause damage. After mounting of rolling bearings on the shaft, hand-pack bearings full with grease.
- c) Once lubricated, as explained, making sure that cavities between bearings are grease packed, there will be no need for further lubrication until first lubrication service [refer to lubrication chart] this will prevent excessive heating of bearings during initial pump operation.
- d) When mounting rolling bearing into the bearing housing, the bearing should be at ambient temperature. It is recommended to preheat the bearing housing to 80°C maximum.
- e) For disassembling rolling bearings from bearing housing or from the shaft, use special extractor or press. Do not use hammer or other conventional tools, which might damage bearing. When mounting roller bearings, take care to rotate shaft in order to avoid damage to inner face of bearing race.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### RE-ASSEMBLY

When new bearings are to be used in the re-assembly, it is very important that the bearings are of 'good quality' and of exactly the correct specification. This is particularly important in respect of the rating of the thrust bearings.

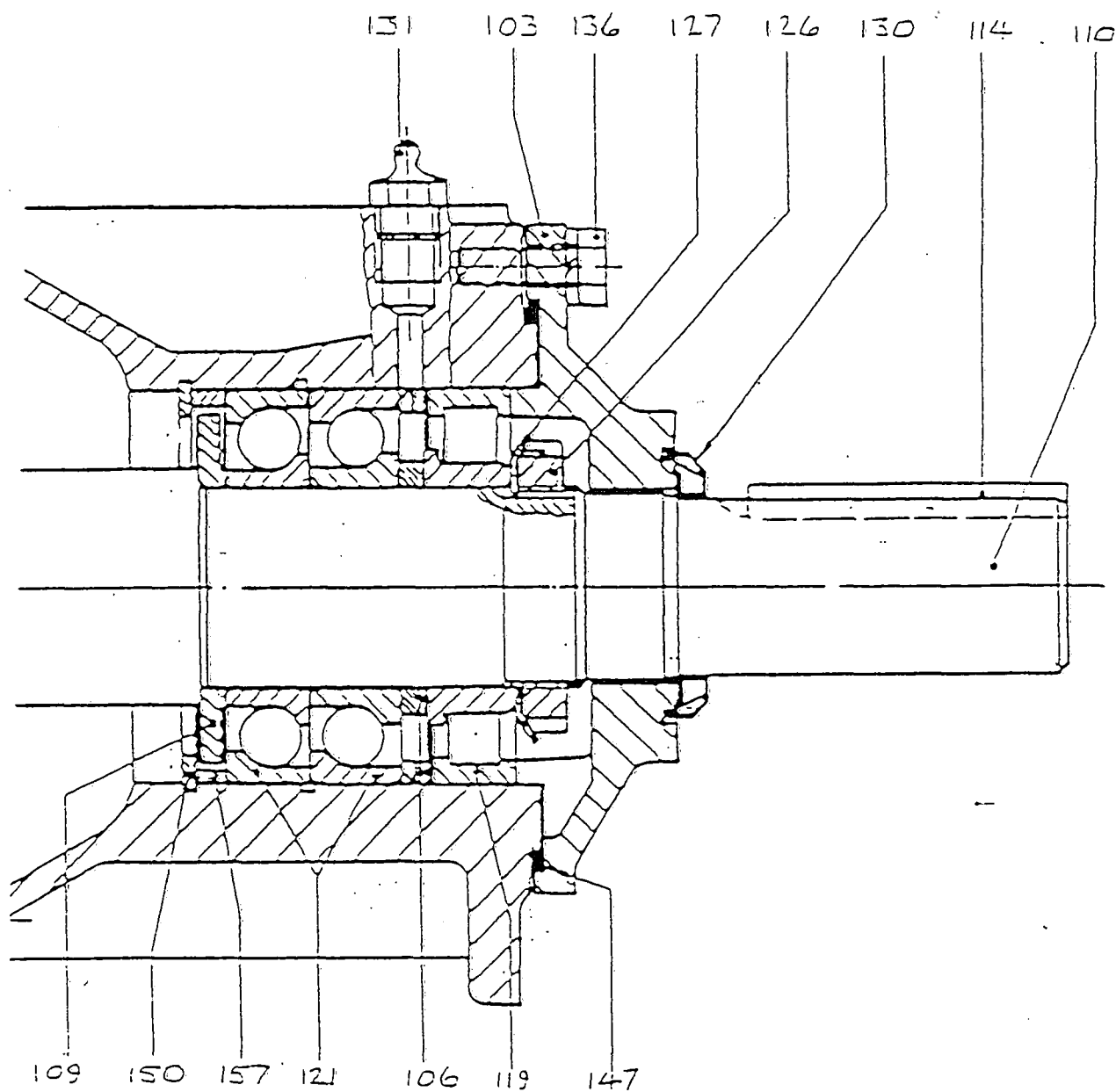
When re-assembling this Bearing Frame, it is important that Sectional Drawing stated at the beginning of the manual, is available and the assembly should be made as follows:-

1. Assemble the bearings at the driven end of the shaft as follows: NOTE: This operation is best done with the shaft vertical.
  - a) Place spacer ring [109] on shaft then fit thrust bearings [121] taking care to ensure that they are installed according to the orientation shown on the Sectional Drawing.
 

In order to assist the fitting of these bearings on the shaft, it is best that they are first pre-heated on a suitable hot-plate prior to attempting to slide them over the shaft. After each bearing has cooled, it should be packed with grease, see 'maintenance Section' of the Manual for appropriate grade of grease.
  - b) Place spacer ring [106] on bearings, taking note that this ring has a inner and outer piece, when fitting the larger diameter outer ring would you please note that the slots on one side should be placed so that they face the pump end of the bearing frame, i.e., they face the two bearings that are already fitted to the shaft.
  - c) Fit inner ring of roller bearing [119], again after pre-heating. Once the inner race has cooled, fit outside ring of bearing and pack with grease.
  - d) Place locking-washer [127] and tighten bearing assembly, using locking nut [126] bend over locking tab on washer [127].
2. Pre-heat inner ring of roller bearing [118] and fit onto shaft pushing up hard against shoulder.
3. Prepare bearing housing [100] for assembly of shaft by fitting snap-ring [150] and spacer ring [157].
4. Heat bearing frame by gas torch to a temperature of approximately 80°C and install shaft bearing assembly, pushing down by hand hard up against the shoulder provided by snap ring [150].

# SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

Re-assembly, continued



## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

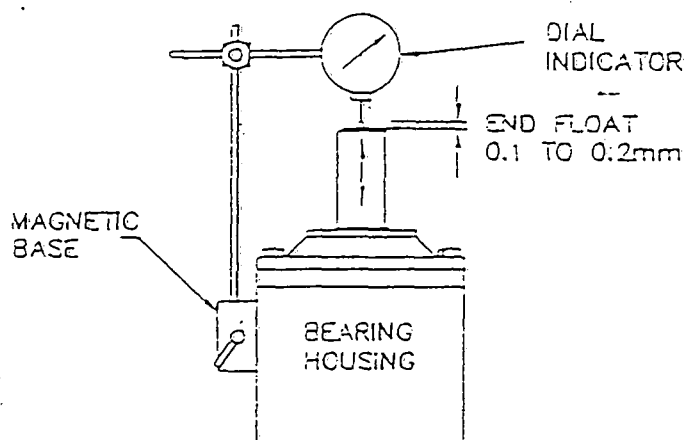
### Re-assembly, continued

5. Install 'O'-ring [147] and mount cap [103] and secure using fastening set [135].
6. Press labyrinth [130] onto shaft using special tool number . This special tool is used to prevent the labyrinth being pressed too far and rubbing against and stationary cap.
7. Heat bearing frame [100] at pump end, using gas torch, and instal outer part of bearing [118] this should be pushed into place by fitting oil chamber casing [504]. Having put the bearing into the correct position part [504] should again be removed and after allowing for the bearing to cool, the bearings packed with grease, according to appropriate specification.
8. Place 'O'-ring [148] onto [100] and fit oil chamber casing [504] by fastening set [534].

### WARNING

When fitting position [504] ensure that drain position 'D' is on the bottom of the casing, i.e. on the same side as the mounting bracket at the shaft-end of the bearing frame.

9. The end float in the bearings must now be checked at this stage of the assembly. This is best done by fitting a magnetic base to the bearing frame and positioning a clock-gauge on the end of the shaft. The shaft should now be lifted and pushed down, so as to register the amount of end float that is available. This lifting can sometimes be best achieved by screwing an 'eye bolt' into the tapped hole on the end of the shaft and lifting the bearing frame on a crane.



The correct end-float for this Bearing frame is 1/10th to 2/10th of a millimetre [4/1000 to 8/1000 inch.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### 10. ASSEMBLY OF INNER MECHANICAL SEAL 516

Unless the bearing frame has been built for a special application this inner seal will always be Hidrostat type 'C' with open spring and a ceramic stationary face and carbon rotating face.

#### WARNING:

While cleanliness is important during the entire bearing frame assembly, it is of utmost importance when re-assembling the mechanical seals.

Lubricate outside of the rubber seal which supports the ceramic part and carefully press ceramic face and rubber enclosure all the way into its seat in oil chamber housing [504]. The ring must fit tightly and square in its seat. **TAKE CARE TO PROTECT THE FACE DURING THIS OPERATION.** Examine gap between shaft and inner diameter of seal face; when face is correctly installed, gap will be uniform all round the shaft.

#### WARNING

The seal face is brittle and can easily chip if the inside edge catches a shoulder or groove when sliding along shaft. Take care to keep the seal square when sliding along shaft, also apply uniform gentle pressure when installing into seat.

#### IMPORTANT

Carefully clean faces of stationary and rotating parts using clean Tissue and lightly oil. **ABSOLUTE CLEANLINESS OF SEAL FACES IS ESSENTIAL IF SEAL IS TO BE TIGHT.**

Remove spring and spring-retaining ring from mechanical seal lightly lubricate the bore of the rubber part of the seal with oil, at the same time, lightly oil the shaft, as this will assist in sliding the mechanical seal into place.

Install rotating part of the seal by carefully sliding along the shaft, taking care that the face does not 'catch' on any of the snap-ring grooves [545], when installed the carbon face should touch the stationary face. Be sure the rubber part sits uniformly on the shaft and that it has been rolled out from under the metal part of the seal face.

Install seal-spring and spring-retaining ring.

Compress spring by pushing on the retaining ring and install snap-ring [546] then turn shaft by hand, to check for free-running.

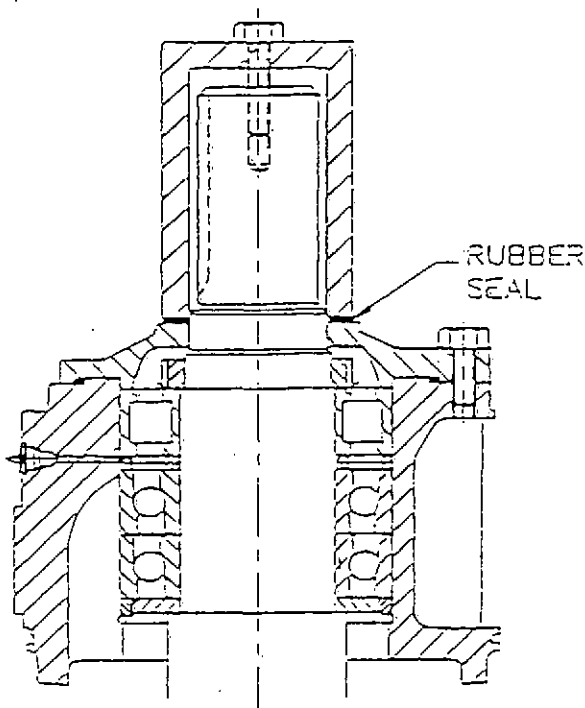
## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

11. The next step is to prepare the bearing frame, so that the tightness of mechanical seal [516] can be checked.

Seal off shaft end of Bearing frame, using hydraulic test tool ensuring a rubber sealing ring is placed between the end of the tool and the bearing cap.

All plugs in bearing frame must be installed at this stage.

Connect a dry-air supply to connection 'D' using a length of rubber/plastic hose.



The interior of the bearing frame should now be pressurised using dry-air to a pressure not exceeding 0.5 bar. We have found from experience, a bicycle pump is often a convenient method of carrying out this function. Immerse bearing frame in a tank of water and carefully check for bubbles leaking through the mechanical seal assembly. If a water-tank is not available, stand bearing frame vertical and fill the 'open end' of oil chamber casing [504] with water and observe for air leaks around mechanical seal.

12. Fit 'O'-ring [527] onto [504] and secure mechanical seal-plate [507] using fastening set [534]. Install pump side seal according to type of seal, as follows:-

### 13. ASSEMBLY OF OUTER MECHANICAL SEAL 515

Install stationary part into seal following same instructions and precautions as for inner seal 516, as instructions and precautions as for inner seal 516, as previously described.



## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

The rotating part should be installed according to type of seal.

a) OPEN-SPRING Type 'C' and 'V' Seals

Follow instructions as previously described for inner seal [516]

b) RUBBER BELLOWS Type 'M' Seal

Lubricate with oil the rotating part of the mechanical seal, put the retaining ring 'A' on the rubber boot with rounded edge towards the rubber boot. [See figure 29]. Push the whole assembly nut hand over the shaft as far as possible. Mount the special tool over the shaft tip [See figure 30], and compress the mechanical seal until the lip of the rubber boot is engaged in the shaft groove. Remove special tool. Turn the shaft by hand and watch that the retaining ring turns perfectly in line with the rubber boot and that it is not cocked. Then try to pull the rubber boot off shaft by hand to make sure that the lip has reliably engaged in the shaft groove.

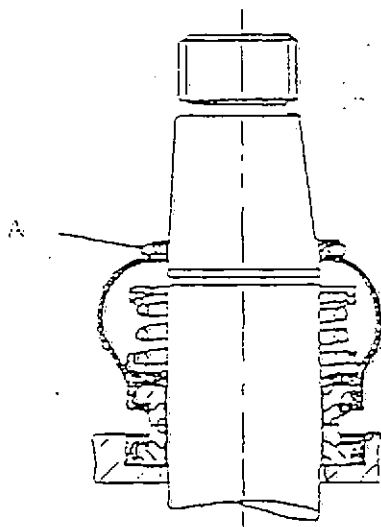


FIG 29

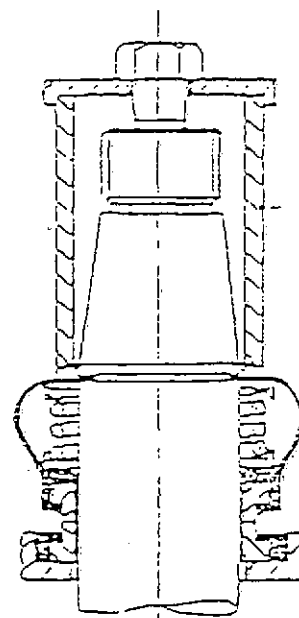


FIG 30

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### c) STAINLESS STEEL BODIED Type 'X' Seal

Lubricate inner rubber 'O'-rings of seal with light oil, and put a small amount of oil onto shaft. Install entire seal over shaft, and press gently down shaft until rotating face touches stationary face. Now install snap-ring over shaft, and push on snap-ring [compressing springs in seal] until snap-ring snaps into its groove. It may be necessary to use the special tool pushing against the snap-ring, turning the tool's bolt to provide sufficient pressure to start the snap-ring. Remove special tool. Then re-install the three small setscrews into the seal rotating part, and tighten firmly.

14. The outer seal 515 has now to be air tested for tightness.

Ensure a length of open ended rubber pipe is connected to 'D' and the special tool enclosing drive shaft is still fitted.

Connect dry air supply to connection 536 and pressurise oil seal chamber to 0.5 bar. Immerse bearing frame into tank of water and check for leaks. Take care not to immerse free end of tube connected to 'D'. To check seal 516 is still tight when pressurised from opposite side carefully immerse free end of tube connected to 'D' from above into water, after a short while bubbles will appear if seal 516 is leaking.

If seals are tight fill seal chamber with oil according to instructions given in section dealing with seal oil and assembly to hydraulic end, according to instructions given in "Maintenance of Hydraulic Parts".

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### REPAIR OF BEARING FRAMES

#### GENERAL

Before proceeding to strip-down the bearing frame, check the pump code, by referring to the stainless steel nameplate secured to the bearing frame and, then check you have the correct manual. The 'Reference Data' sheet at the front of every manual states the complete pump code to which manual refers and separately states:

- a) Bearing Frame Code
- b) Type of Product side seal [Pos 515] fitted by factory
- c) Number of the 'Sectional Drawing' of bearing frame.
- d) Serial number of pump[s] to which manual relates.

Only when it has been established that the correct manual is available, should the service engineer proceed to strip down the bearing frame. In situations where the nameplate has been removed or damaged, each bearing frame has the serial number heavily stamped into the casting, which can be used to select the correct service manual. In case of difficulty, contact your authorised service centre or Hidrostal agent.

#### Essential Facilities

In order that repair can be carried out in accordance with this manual, it is essential that the repair centre has available any special tools required for fitting Hidrostal 'M'-type Mechanical Seal, [if fitted] plus other tools as described in the manual and have available a water tank and means of pressurising the bearing frames with dry air at 0.5 bar.

it is assumed that the usual facilities of clean work benches, presses, metric tools, oils and greases to the correct specification will be available.

#### REPAIRS TO BEARING FRAME

In order to repair the bearing frame the volute and impeller will have already have been removed per instructions under heading "Maintenance of Hydraulic Parts" and the seal oil drained out per instructions, under heading "Checking of Seal Oil".

To strip down the bearing frame, place on a suitable bench and strip from the impeller side, as follows:

1. Remove the back-cone [Pos 511] by gently tapping with a lead or plastic hammer, or gently lever off using screw drivers, this will expose the product side mechanical seal.

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### 2. REMOVAL OF PRODUCT SIDE MECH. SEAL [Pos 515]

#### General

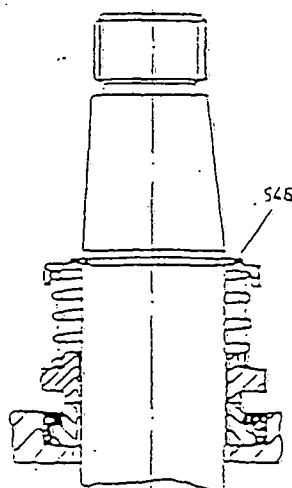
The first step is to determine the type of seal which is fitted. Factory provide the option of four types 'C' ÷ 'V' ÷ 'M' ÷ 'X' and can be identified as follows:

- Referral to the 'Reference Data' sheet at the front of the manual.
- Examination of the pump code, product side seal type is the single digit at the end of the code, i.e. BCMIF-M. [Refer to explanation of pump code at the front of this manual].
- Examine the seal and refer to following diagrams. In certain instances, the application may have required a change of seal type to that originally fitted.

NOTE: All seal options, are interchangeable and therefore a different type of seal can be fitted during repair if it is felt this is necessary refer to your nearest Hidrostat agent for the correct selection of an alternative seal, giving full application details and the reason for requesting an alternative seal.

### REMOVAL OF OPEN-SPRING 'C' AND 'V' TYPE SEALS

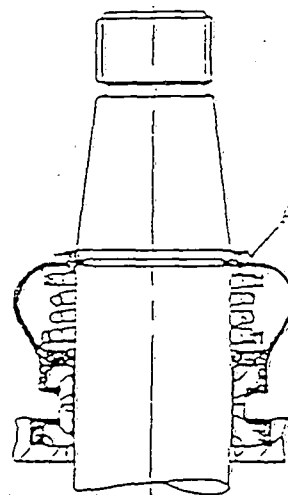
Remove snap ring [Pos 546]. Make sure the Woodruff key groove has no sharp edges to that the rubber parts of the seal cannot be damaged as they are removed. Oil the shaft for ease of disassembly. Now the seal rotating parts can be pulled off the shaft by hand.



## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

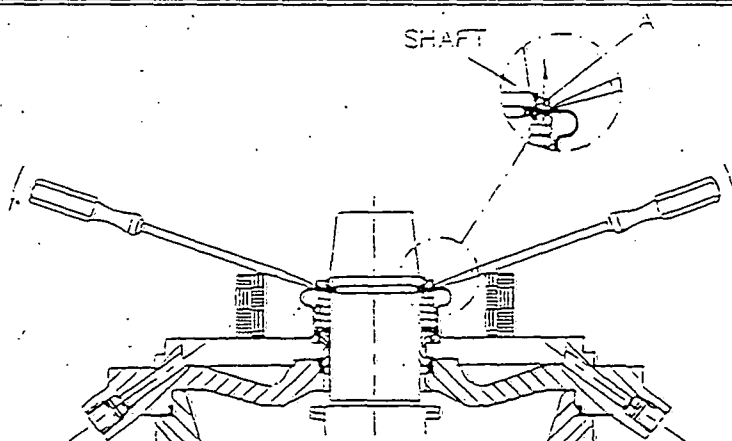
### REMOVAL OF RUBBER-BOOT, 'M'-TYPE SEALS

Remove retaining ring "A" from the rubber boot of the seal by gently prying with two dull-edged screwdrivers, as this can puncture rubber boot. Rather, lay some convenient object onto back-plate, to act as a fulcrum for each screwdriver, and pry ring directly up, away from rubber boot.

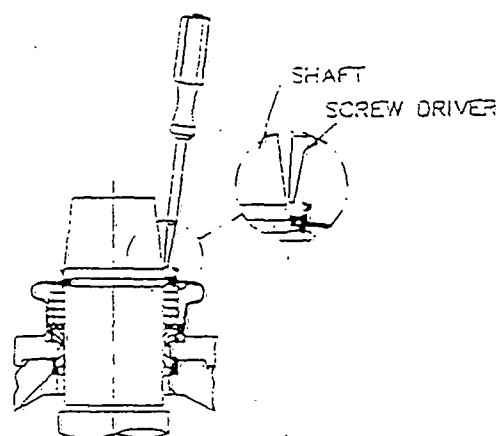


### CAUTION:

Use only dull-edged screwdrivers since sharp edges could cut the rubber-boot. Do not twist screwdriver, as this can puncture rubber boot. Rather, lay some convenient object onto back-plate, to act as a fulcrum for each screwdriver, and pry ring directly up, away from rubber boot.



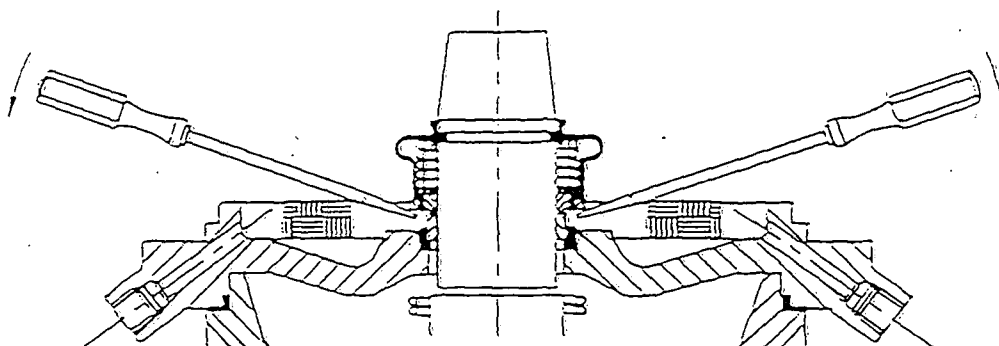
Make sure the Woodruff key groove has no sharp edges so that the rubber parts cannot be damaged as they are removed. Gently insert a small dull screwdriver between the shaft and the rubber boot.



By lifting and turning the screwdriver around the shaft, the lip of the rubber boot can be lifted out of the shaft groove. Lubrication of the shaft and the boot helps this disassembly. Once the boot is free of the groove, the entire rotating part of the seal with boot can be pulled off the shaft.

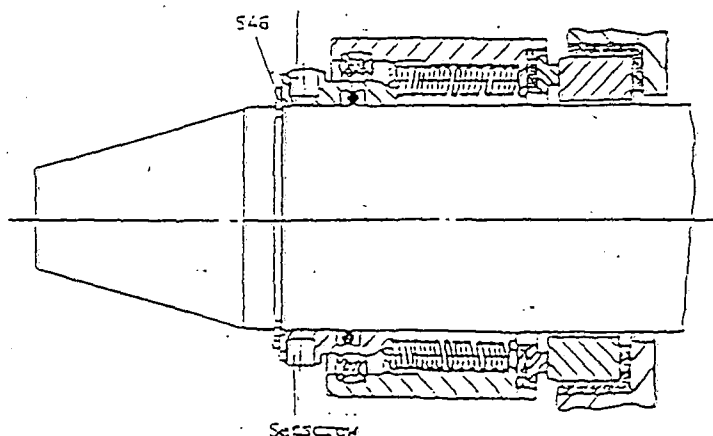
## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

If necessary, use two blunt ended screwdrivers to pry the seal face loose, see below:-



### REMOVAL OF STAINLESS STEEL BODIES 'X'-TYPE SEAL

Remove all three small set-screws from outer body of rotating part. Remove snap-ring [546]. Oil the shaft for ease of disassembly. Now the seal rotating part can be pulled off the shaft by hand.

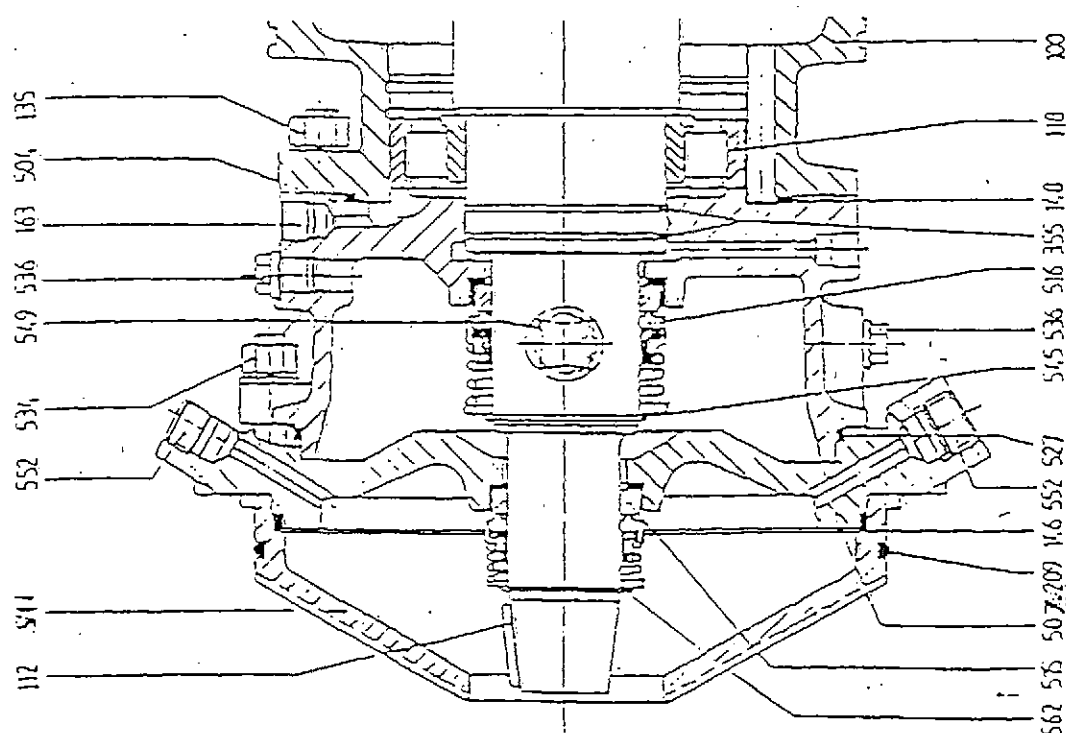


## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

### REMOVAL OF STATIONARY SEAL (ALL SEAL TYPES)

Unfasten nuts [Pos 534] and carefully remove seal-plate [Pos 507] taking care that the stationary seat of the seal does not contact the shaft. The seat can easily become chipped and, therefore unusable if contact is made with the shaft, pay particular attention as seal passes over grooves for snap-ring [Pos 545].

The stationary seal can now be pushed out of its seal-plate from the back-side.



### REMOVAL OF INNER SEAL (POS 516)

Except for special circumstances this seal will always be Hidrostal type 'C' and therefore proceed to remove per instructions for 'C'-type seal.

Any alternative seal will be 'M' or 'X' and can easily be identified by its construction and therefore should be removed per instructions for product side seal [Pos 515].

The stationary seat for Seal 516 can be removed by the same procedure as for Seal [Pos 515], after the oil chamber casing [Pos 504] has been stripped from the bearing frame taking the same precautions to protect seal from contacting the shaft.

# SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

POS	DESCRIPTION	CODE	MATERIAL*	
			1 (2)	5
<b>GENERAL</b>				
100	Bearing Housing	1GL	A	A
101	Bearing Support	1TL/1TS	A	A
102	Bearing Cap P.S.	1DL	A	A
103	Bearing cap M.S.	1DL	A	A
104	Spacer ring P.S.	1RD/8RS	K	K
105	Spacer ring M.S.	1RD/1SF	K	K
106	Bearing spacer	1RD	K	K
107	Spacer ring	1RD	K	K
108	Fastening set 116-101	3BB	M	M
109	Spacer ring for 119 disassembly	1SA/SSA	K	K
110	Shaft	1WO	H/L**	F+L
112	Woodruff key	2FK	L	F
114	Coupling key	3FK	L	L
115	Oil seal sleeve for 123 (bearing frame size 7)	3DB	I	I
116	Intermediate supporting frame	1TZ	A	A
117	Deep groove ball bearing M.S.	3LW	-	-
118	Roller bearing P.S.	3LW	-	-
119	Roller bearing M.S.	3LW	-	-
120	Deep groove ball bearing (old execution P.S.)	3LW	-	-
121	Angular contact ball bearing	3LW	-	-
122	Spherical roller bearing (old execution P.S.)	3LW	-	-
123	Axial-spherical roller bearing	3LW	-	-
124	Spherical roller bearing (oil execution M.S.)	3LW	-	-
125	Double row angular contact ball bearing	3LW	-	-
126	Lock nut for shaft/Locking sleeve	3LM	L	L
127	Lock washer for 126	3LF	O	O
128	Oil seal M.S. for bearing frame size 7	3DS	Q	Q
129	V-ring P.S.	3DV	Q	Q
130	Labyrinth M.S.	1RL/3RL	K/A	K/A
131	Grease nipple	3NF	N	N
132	Grease cup R 1/4"	3NS	N	N
133	Plug M10	3FO	M	M
134	Lubricant drain plug for 101 or 116	3FO	N	N
135	Fastening set 100-101 and 116	3BB	M	M
140	Thrower disc P.S.	3DG	K	K
141	Fastening set 102-101	3BB	M	M
144	Labyrinth P.S.	1RL	K/A	F
145	O-ring for 144	3DO	Q	Q
146	O-ring	3DO	Q	Q
147	O-ring for 100	3DO	Q	Q
148	O-ring for 100-116 or 102-300	3DO	Q	Q
149	Snap ring for 144	3RF	O	O
150	Snap ring for 102	3RF	O	O
151	Spacer ring for bearing 118	1RD	K	K
152	Oil seal P.S. for bearing frame size 7	3DS	Q	Q
153	Snap ring for 152, bearing frame size 7	3RF	O	O
154	Lubricant drain plug for 100	3FV	N	N
157	Spacer ring	1RD	K	K
158	Distance ring for 152 (for immersible inst.)		K	K
159	Driving pin, bearing size 7	3FG	O	O
*For material explanation see material				
**Depending on size				
***Brass				



# SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

POS	DESCRIPTION	CODE	MATERIAL*	
			1 (2)	5
<b>GENERAL</b>				
160	Snap ring for 118	3RF	O	O
161	Spring	3LD	O	O
162	Snap Ring M.S.	3RF	O	O
163	Plug	3FO	N	N
164	O-ring for 130/126	3DO	Q	Q
165	Impeller flange	2SF	B	C
166	Impeller nut	2FM	K	F
167	Impeller locking washer for 165	2FF	K	F
168	Fastening set 102-116	3BB	M	M
169	Spacer ring for L2 ÷ 14	1RV	K	K
170	Bearing cap for 102 (L20DA)	1DD	A	A
171	Fastening set for 102-170 102-172	3BB	M	M
172	Sleeve bearing frame M28DA	1GG	A	A
173	Housing for Mechanical seal seat P.S. (M28DA)	1DD	A	A
174	Oil Impeller for oil circ for bearing frame 2A		A	A
175	Cap for mech. seal 516 M.S. (M28DA old execution)		A	A
176	Fastening set 173-400	3BB	M	M
177	O-ring for 172	3DO	Q	Q
178	Sleeve bearing for (M28DA)	3LG		
179	Nozzle for bearing lubrication frame size 7S	179-01	***	***
191	O-ring for 173	3DO	Q	Q
192	Washer for 165		M	F
<b>STUFFING BOX</b>				
200	Back cover for stuffing box	1GD	A	C
201	Stuffing box sealplate	1PS	A	C
202	Gland	1DS	A	C
203	Neck bush	1RP	K	F
204	Lantern ring	1RS	E	C
205				
206	Fastening set 101-200		M	F
208	Shaft sleeve	1DB	I(J)	F
209	O-ring for 200	3DO	Q	Q
210	O-ring for 201	3DO	Q	Q
213	Shaft sleeve pin	3FZ	G	F
214	Rubber sealing washer for 208	3DG	Q	Q
215	Soft packing	3DP	**	**
216	O-ring for 208	3DO	Q	Q
218	Plug for flushing connection 2	3FO	N	F
219	Plug for flushing connection (old execution)		N	F
220	Stuffing box gland bolt	3FS	F	F
221	Fastening set 201-200	3BB	M	F
222	Nipple	3NB	N	-
226	Socket head screw (for DA old execution)	3FI	M	-
227	Insert ring (for DA old execution)		K	-
228	Rubber ring for 227 (for DA old execution)		Q	-
229	Flat washer for 220		M	F
230	Set of shims of wire between 200-101	3FU	M	F
<p>*For material explanation see material</p> <p>**Depending on size</p> <p>***Brass</p>				

## SERVICE MANUAL FOR INSTALLATION AND OPERATION FOR BEARING FRAME PUMPS/Q-TYPE HYDRAULICS

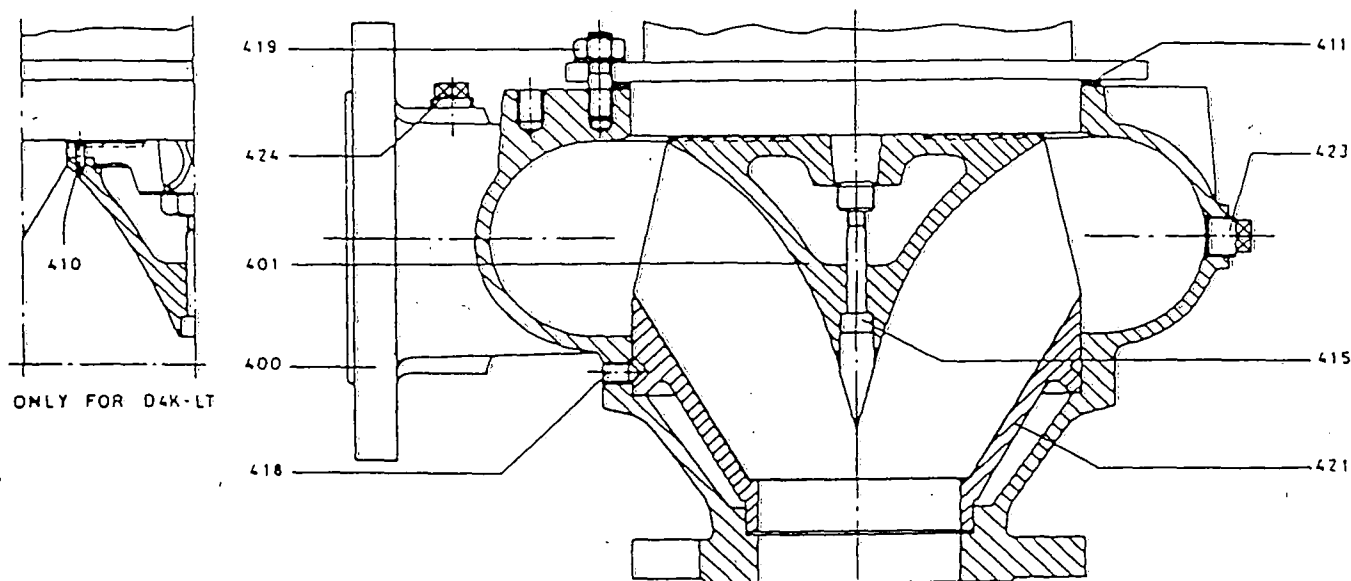
POS	DESCRIPTION	CODE	MATERIAL	
			1 (2)	5
<b>MECHANICAL SEAL</b>				
209	O-ring for 507	8DO	Q	Q
346	Filling plug with air relief device	8OE	-	-
350	Magnetic lubricant drain plug	8OM	-	-
355	FEY laminar ring P.S.	8DF	O	O
356	FEY laminar ring M.S.	8DF	O	O
549	Oil sight glass	8OG	-	-
563	Oil sight glass	8OG	-	-
544	Backcover	1K.	A	c/D
515	Mechanical seal P.S.	8DM/8dm	**	**
516	Mechanical seal M.S.	8DM	**	**
527	O-ring for 200 M.S.	8DO	Q	Q
534	Fastening set 101-507	8BB	M	F
536	Plug with gasket	8FV	F+P	F
545	Snap ring for 516	8RF	O	O
552	Plug for flushing connection 581	8FO	N	F
562	Snap ring for mechanical seal 515	8RF	O	F
507	Mech seal plate	1PM	A	C
*For material explanation see material				
**Depending on size				
***Brass				

**hidrostal**SECTIONAL DRAWINGS K-HYDRAULIC  
D03K/D04K/D0DK

Dat: 09.06.87

No: 83-TU 3174 c

File:



NOTE: D0DK WILL BE SUPPLIED: -WITH CLAW FOR LOWERING DEVICE  
 -INSTEAD OF DISCHARGE FLANGE  
 -WITHOUT SUCTION FLANGE

PART	DESCRIPTION	MATERIALS OF CONSTRUCTION			
		1	2	3	5
400	VOLUTE	GREY CAST IRON			STAINLESS STEEL A4
401	IMPELLER	NODULAR IRON(1)	NODULAR IRON FLAME HARDENED	STAINLESS STEEL A4	
410	DRIVING PIN (1)	STAINLESS STEEL A4			
411	SHIMS	CARBON STEEL			
415	IMPELLER BOLT	STAINLESS STEEL A4			
418	GRUB SCREW	STEEL			STAINLESS STEEL A4
419	FASTENING SET	RUSTLESS STEEL			STAINLESS STEEL A4
421	LINER	GREY CAST IRON	HIDRO HARD		STAINLESS STEEL A4
423	DRAIN PLUG	STEEL			STAINLESS STEEL A4
424	PLUG	STEEL			STAINLESS STEEL A4

(1) ONLY FOR D4K-LT

D3K NOT AVAILABLE IN CODE 5

D0DK IS NOT AVAILABLE IN BEARING FRAME OR BLOCK CONSTRUCTION

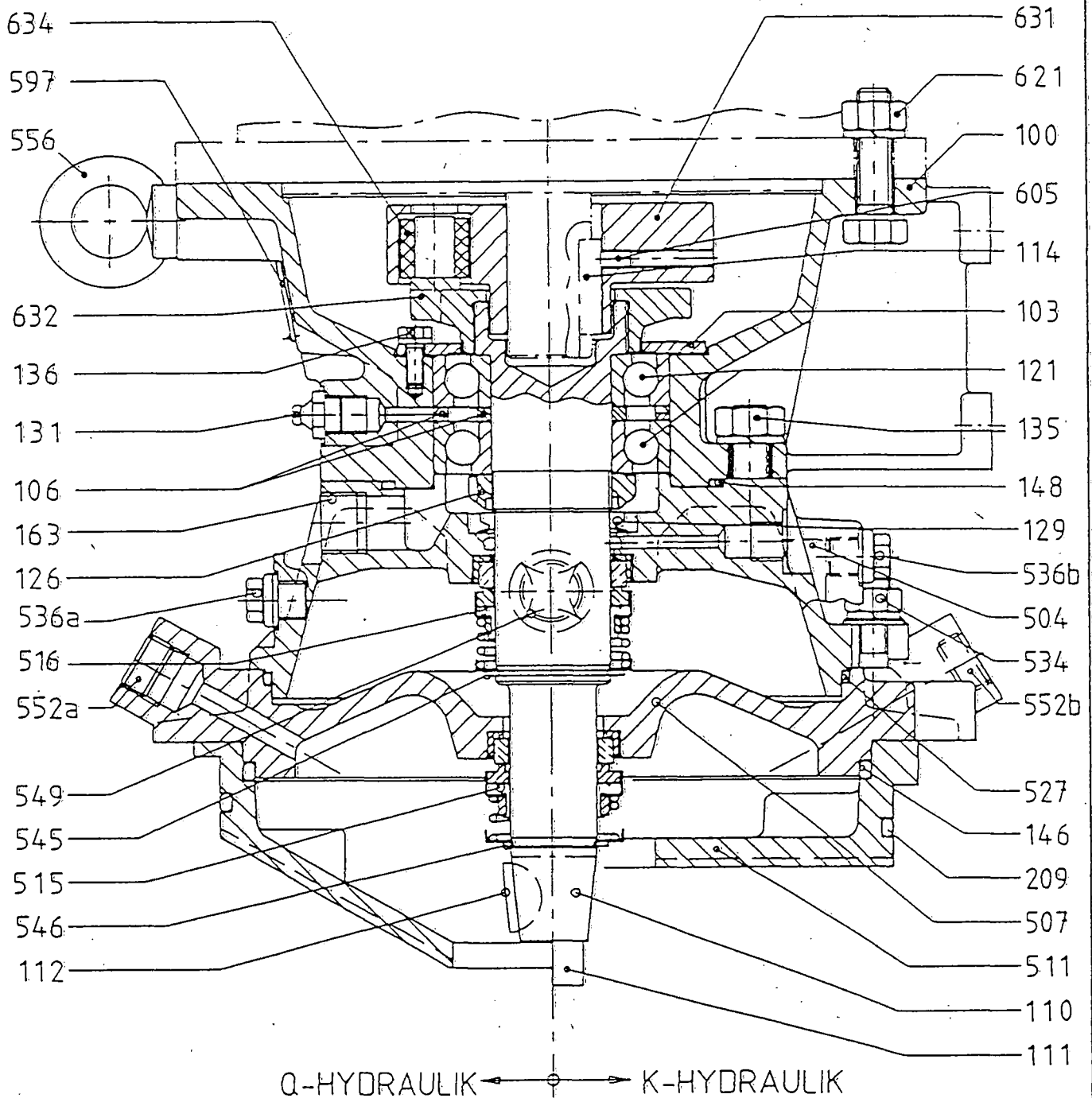


SECTIONAL DRAWINGS BEARING FRAME DIRECT COUPLED  
SCHNITTZEICHNUNGEN LAGERSTUHL DIREKT GEKUPPELT  
B/C/DCM.X MOT 112.

Date: 07.07.94

No: 94-S4946a

File: B/C/DCM.X



Aend. : 2/10.03.95pk

## **SECTION 6**

### **INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SCHEME**

#### **MISCELLANEOUS ITEMS**



# JOHNSEAL

BY JOHN VALVES THE VALVE PEOPLE

State-of-the-art  
precision  
engineered  
efficiently seated  
range of valves  
manufactured  
primarily for  
the water  
industry.

**MADE IN  
AUSTRALIA**



**Australian  
Standard**

AS 2638 Lic No 1125

The John Valves JOHNSEAL range of valves is StandardsMarked to AS2638 and Licence No.1125.

The JOHNSEAL design for full envelope coating gives maximum corrosion protection.

- JOHNSEAL valves are Australian through and through.
- Designed in Australia for Australian conditions.
- By engineers who know what counts.
- By a company that is quality approved under AS3902/ISO 9002.

# check this out!

**JOHNSEAL**  
RESILIENT SEATED  
F.B.E. COATED SLUICE VALVES  
By John Valves The Valve People

Australian  
Standard  
AS 2638 Lic No 1125  
Standards Australia

- ✓ STANDARDS AUSTRALIA APPROVED TO AS 2638
- ✓ CORROSION-FREE F.B.E. COATED
- ✓ POSITIVE SEAT SEAL
- ✓ FULLY COATED GUNMETAL WEDGE
- ✓ PATENTED STEM RETENTION SYSTEM
- ✓ RANGE OF END CONNECTIONS
- ✓ FULLY ENCLOSED BONNET BOLTING
- ✓ REPLACEABLE UNDER PRESSURE 'O' RING SEALS
- ✓ 1600 kPa MAX. WORKING PRESSURE
- ✓ S.G. IRON CASTINGS

The JOHNSEAL design philosophy is to provide positive seat sealing, the elimination of all possibility of external corrosion due to ground water, and an internal tuberculation-free environment on all wetted surfaces, including the wedge.

Going beyond the minimum requirements of AS2638 with the incorporation of a gunmetal wedge, fully coated with vulcanised nitrile rubber, and the full envelope F.B.E. coating on all wetted surfaces, any area where tuberculation can originate is therefore eliminated.



**JOHNVALVES**  
The Valve People

John Valves Pty Ltd ACN 005 061 674  
Head Office and Manufacturing:  
Creswick Road, Ballarat, Victoria 3350  
Telephone 053 33 0777 Fax 053 38 1771

**MELBOURNE**  
58 Inkerman Street,  
St. Kilda 3182  
Telephone 03 525 4322  
Fax 03 525 3510

**SYDNEY**  
3 Marsh Street,  
Granville 2142  
Telephone 02 897 3322  
Fax 02 897 3332

**BRISBANE**  
Unit 4, 17 Hayling Street,  
Sallsbury 4107  
Telephone 07 277 8700  
Fax 07 274 0007

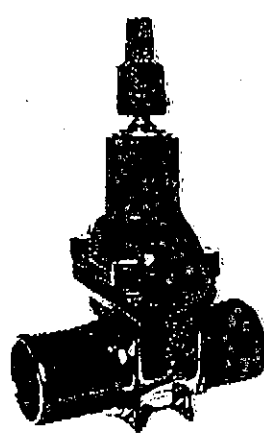
**ADELAIDE**  
15 McInnes Street,  
Ridleyton 5008  
Telephone 08 340 2699  
Fax 08 340 1901

**PERTH**  
183 Bannister Road,  
Canning Vale 6155  
Telephone 09 455 2382  
Fax 09 455 2476

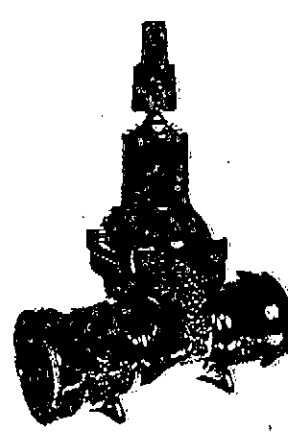


JOHN FIG 630  
CLASS 16  
RESILIENT SEATED  
SLUICE VALVE

Flanges to AS2129 Drilled Table C or E



JOHN FIG 635  
CLASS 16  
RESILIENT SEATED  
SLUICE VALVE  
SPIGOT ENDS



JOHN FIG 636  
CLASS 16  
RESILIENT SEATED  
SLUICE VALVE  
POLYFIT SOCKET

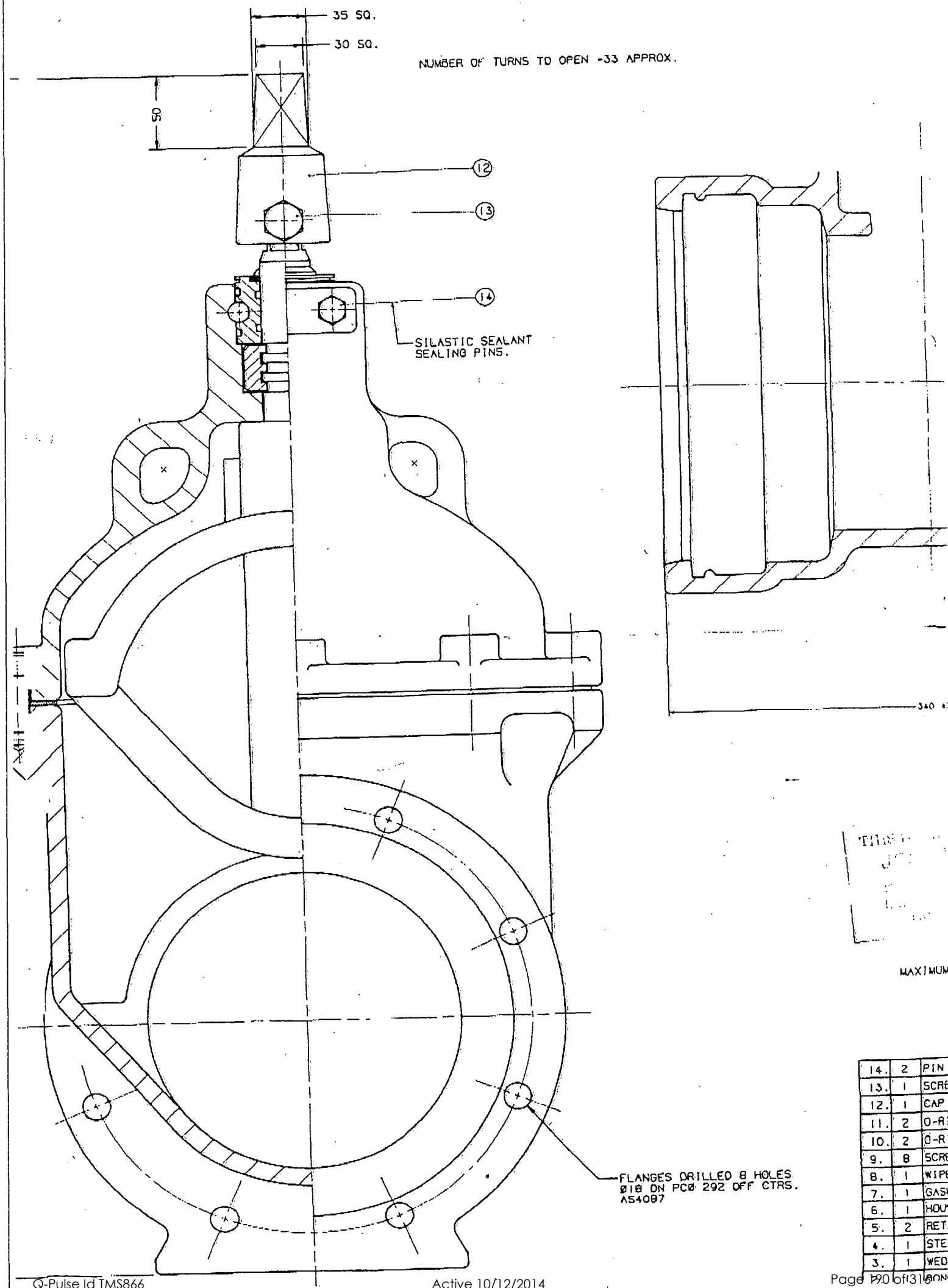


JOHN FIG 637  
CLASS 16  
RESILIENT SEATED  
SLUICE VALVE  
TYTON/TYTON SOCKET

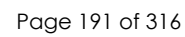
All end connections available in 100 and 150mm sizes. Fig 630, 635, 637 can be produced in 200mm sizes.  
Fig 630, 637 in 300mm size in developmental stage at time of printing. - December 1992.

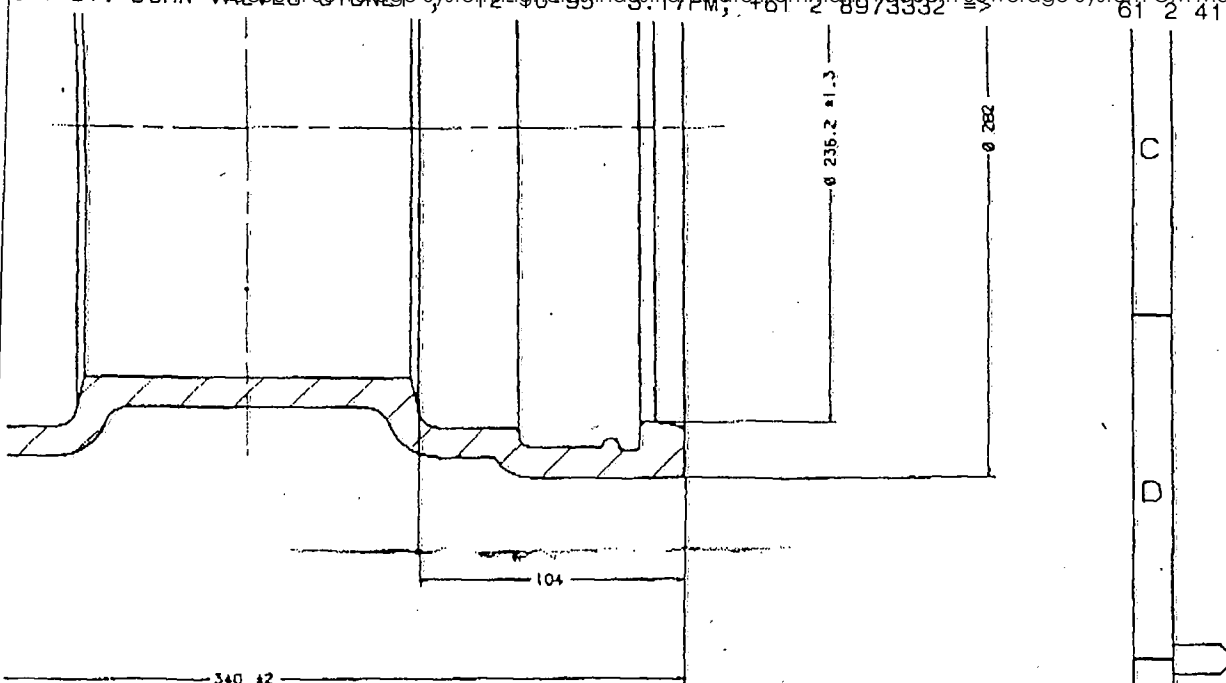






14.	2	PIN
13.	1	SCRE
12.	1	CAP
11.	2	O-R
10.	2	O-R
9.	8	SCRE
8.	1	WIPE
7.	1	GASI
6.	1	HOV
5.	2	RET.
4.	1	STE
3.	1	WED





C

D

E

F

G


H

THIS DESIGN IS THE PROPERTY OF  
JOHN VALVES PTY. LTD.  
IT IS NOT TO BE REPRODUCED OR  
USED IN ANY WAY WITHOUT  
THEIR EXPRESS PERMISSION.

MAXIMUM WORKING PRESSURE -1600 KPa at 60°C

14.	2	PIN ,THRUST	ASS BRS	AS1567 486	
13.	1	SCREW ,SET -M12 X 30 LG.	S.S.		
12.	1	CAP ,STEM	C.I.	AS1830 T220	
11.	2	O-RING -BS228	NITRILE		
10.	2	O-RING -BS218	NITRILE		
9.	8	SCREW ,CAP -M16 X 40 LG.	A.S.		
8.	1	WIPER RING 'W'-RING V355	NITRILE	'FORSHEDA'	
7.	1	GASKET -BODY/BONNET	NITRILE	4mm THICK	
6.	1	HOUSING ,STEM SEAL	ASS BRS	AS1567 486	
5.	2	RETAINER ,STEM	S.S.	AS2837 GR. 316	
4.	1	STEM	S.S.	AS2837 Gr. 431	
3.	1	WEDGE -RUBBER COATED	G.M.	AS1565 C83600	
2.	1	BONNET	SGCI	AS1831 Gr500-7	
1.	1	BODY	SGCI	AS1831 Gr500-7	
ITEM	QTY	DESCRIPTION	MATERIAL	SPECIFICATION	DETAIL

200MM FIG 630 CLASS 16 AS2638  
RESILIENT SEAT SLUICE VALVE

DRAWN PF 19-3-92	CHECKED RC 3-92	MAT'L. APP'D	MASS	SCALE
 <b>JOHNVALVES</b>		Creswick Road Ballarat 3350 Victoria Australia ACN DOS 061 674		DRG. No. <b>AK742</b> SHEET SIZE <b>A1</b>
BALLARAT VICTORIA AUSTRALIA				

10

11

12

# Instruction Manual

## Electromagnetic Flowmeters

### Information

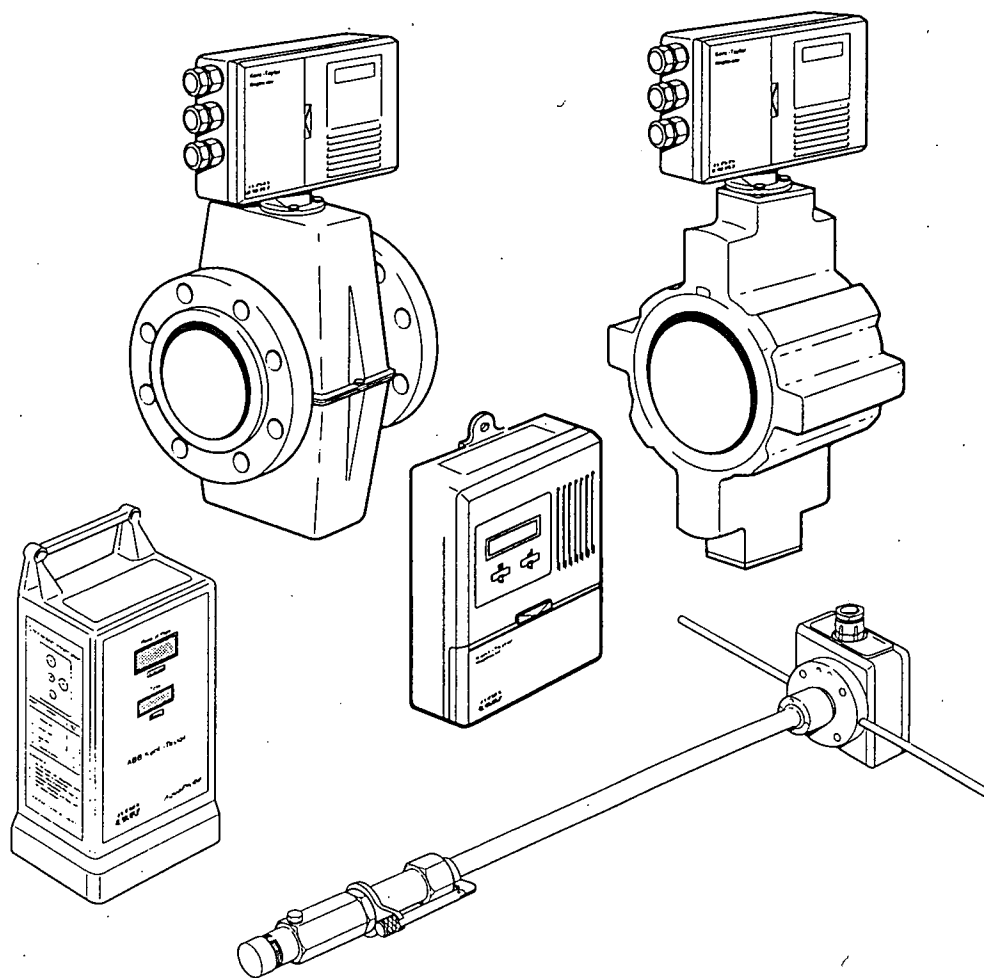


ABB Kent-Taylor



## ABB KENT-TAYLOR



**St Neots**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. 05907



**Stonehouse**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. FM 21106



**Stonehouse**  
Certificate No. 0255

### The Company

ABB Kent-Taylor is an established world force in process instrumentation offering users a total capability in the wide range of product lines available, backed by the worldwide manufacturing, test, calibration and sales and service facilities that are expected from a market leader.

The quality, accuracy and performance of the Company's products result from over 100 years experience of instrument manufacture, combined with a continuous programme of innovative design and development to incorporate the latest technology.

The NAMAS Calibration Laboratory No. 0255(B) is just one of the ten flow calibration plants operated by the Company, and is indicative of ABB Kent-Taylor's dedication to quality and accuracy.

The Company's instrumentation is suitable for a wide range of industrial and scientific applications such as process control, batch processing, power generation, heat treatment, heating and ventilation, laboratories, food, chemical, petrochemical and water industries.

All products are backed by a high standard of technology, service and engineering support, from skilled, experienced sales and design engineers.

### Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 (UK)

Section 6(4) of the above Act requires manufacturers to advise their customers on the safety and handling precautions to be observed when installing, operating, maintaining and servicing their products. Accordingly, the following points must be noted:

1. The relevant sections of these instructions must be read carefully before proceeding.
2. Warning labels on containers and packages must be observed.
3. Installation, operation, maintenance and servicing must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel and in accordance with the information given.
4. Normal safety precautions must be taken to avoid the possibility of an accident occurring when operating in conditions of high pressure and/or temperature.
5. Chemicals must be stored away from heat, protected from temperature extremes and powders kept dry. Normal safe handling procedures must be used.
6. When disposing of chemicals ensure that no two chemicals are mixed.

Safety advice concerning the use of the equipment described in this manual or any relevant hazard data sheets (where applicable) may be obtained from the Company address on the back cover, together with servicing and spares information

### Notice

Information in this manual is intended only to assist our customers in the efficient operation of our equipment. Use of this manual for any other purpose is specifically prohibited and its contents are not to be reproduced in full or part without prior approval of Technical Communications Department, ABB Kent-Taylor.

### Use of Instructions



**Warning.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of injury or death.



**Caution.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of damage to the product, process or surroundings.



**Note.** Clarification of an instruction or additional information.



**Information.** Further reference for more detailed information or technical details.

Although **Warning** hazards are related to personal injury, and **Caution** hazards are associated with equipment or property damage, it must be understood that operation of damaged equipment could, under certain operational conditions, result in degraded process system performance leading to personal injury or death. Therefore, comply fully with all **Warning** and **Caution** notices.

# CONTENTS

## INFORMATION

This manual includes the following documents:

## INFORMATION

### BOOK 1 HAZARDOUS AREA APPROVED VERSIONS

### BOOK 2 MECHANICAL INSTALLATION

### BOOK 3 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

### BOOK 4 OPERATION

### BOOK 5 FAULT FINDING

### BOOK 6 ACCESSORIES AND SPARES

Section	Page
<b>CONTENTS</b> .....	<b>1</b>

<b>1 INTRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>1</b>
1.1 Typical Systems .....	2

<b>2 UNPACKING</b> .....	<b>3</b>
--------------------------	----------



#### Warning.

- Installation and maintenance must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel.
- HAZARDOUS AREA DESIGNATION ON THE EQUIPMENT LABEL MUST BE SUITABLE FOR THE INTENDED DUTY AND LOCATION.
- All relevant Books in this manual must be read before selecting a location.
- Safety requirements of this equipment, any associated equipment and the local environment must be taken into consideration.
- The installation and use of this equipment must be in accordance with relevant national and local standards.

## 1 INTRODUCTION

**MagMaster™** is a range of high performance electromagnetic flowmeters for the measurement of electrically conductive fluids and slurries, and is normally supplied as a calibrated system with the transmitter factory configured to a supplied full-bore or insertion probe sensor.

A wide range of options is available to suit most applications, including:

- Integral or remote transmitter
- Flanged or wafer style sensors
- Insertion Probes
- Approved Versions, including
  - Hazardous area operation
  - Hygienic
  - HART™ communication protocol.

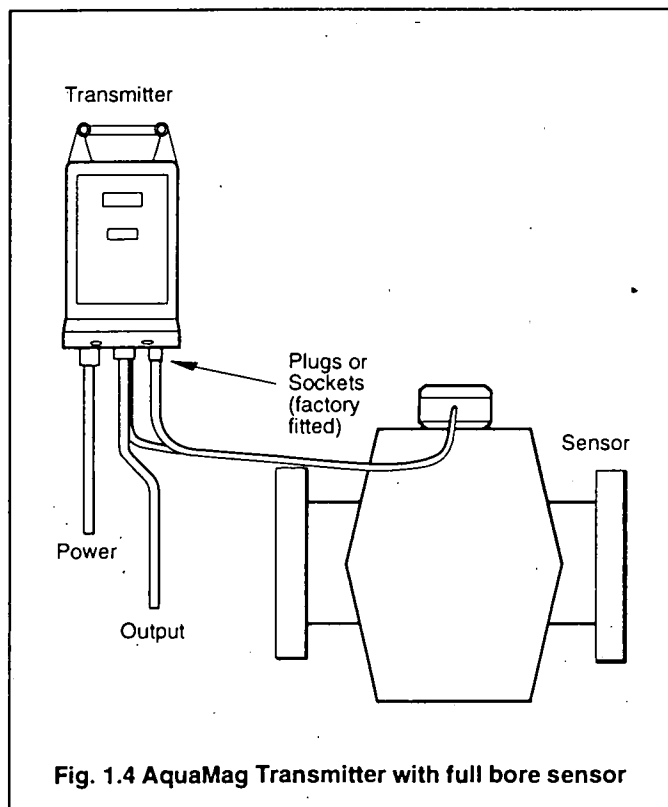
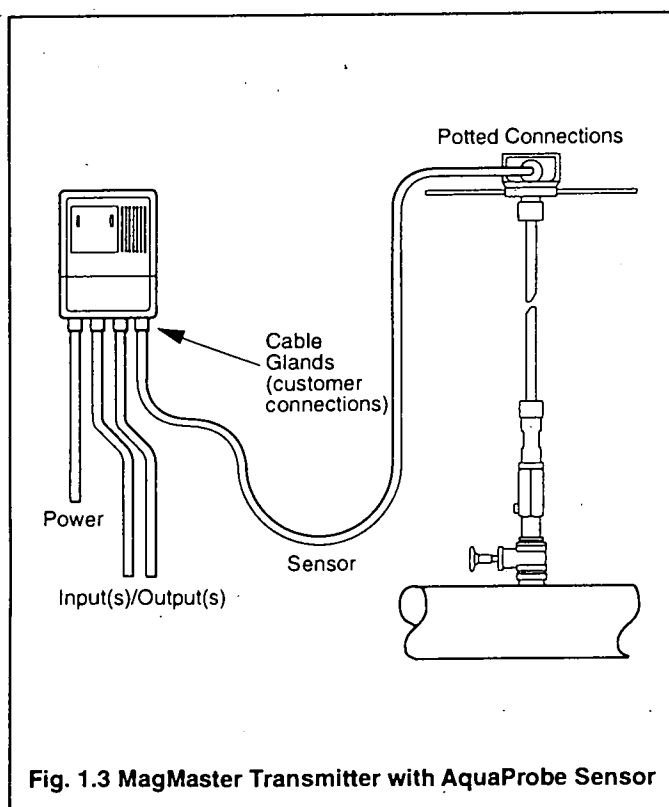
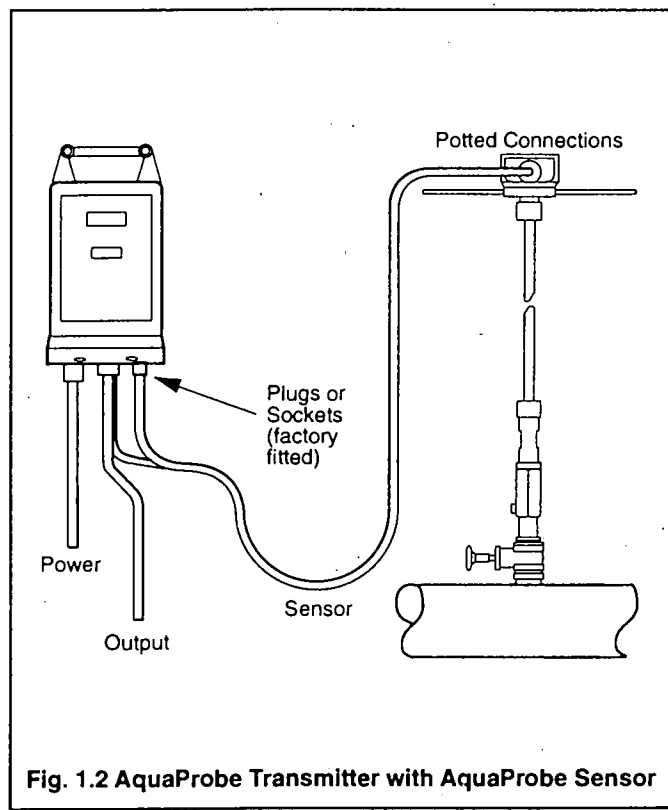
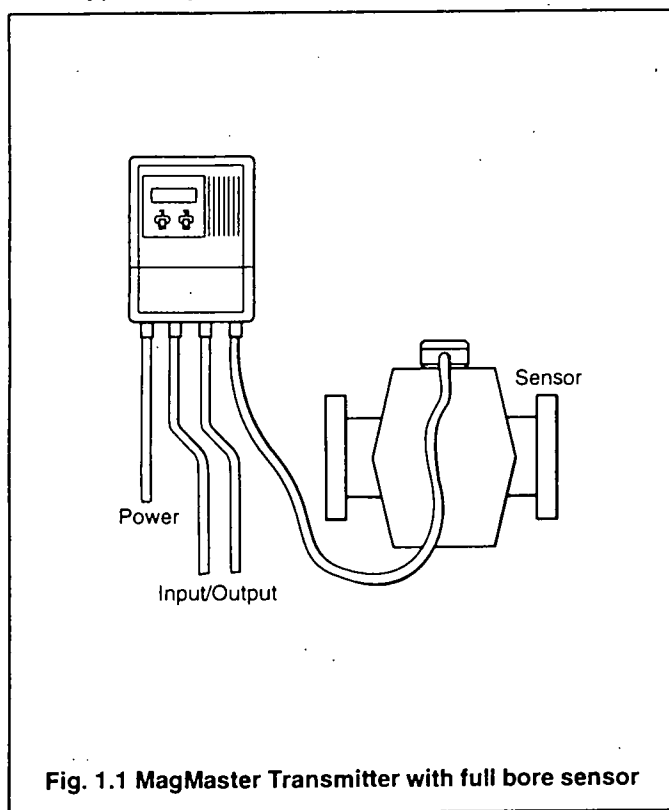
The **AquaProbe** electromagnetic insertion flowmeter is designed for measurement of the velocity of water and for use in survey applications such as leakage monitoring and network analysis and in permanent locations where cost or space limitations preclude the use of conventional closed pipe meters.

AquaProbe is normally supplied as a calibrated system with an AquaProbe or a MagMaster Transmitter, factory configured to a supplied insertion probe sensor.

**AquaMag** is a 12 volt d.c. operated electromagnetic flowmeter measuring system comprising a sealed flow sensor and pre-calibrated, programmable transmitter unit, normally supplied as a calibrated system with transmitter factory configured to a supplied full-bore sensor.

## ...1 INTRODUCTION

### 1.1 Typical Systems





## 2 UNPACKING

## 2 UNPACKING...

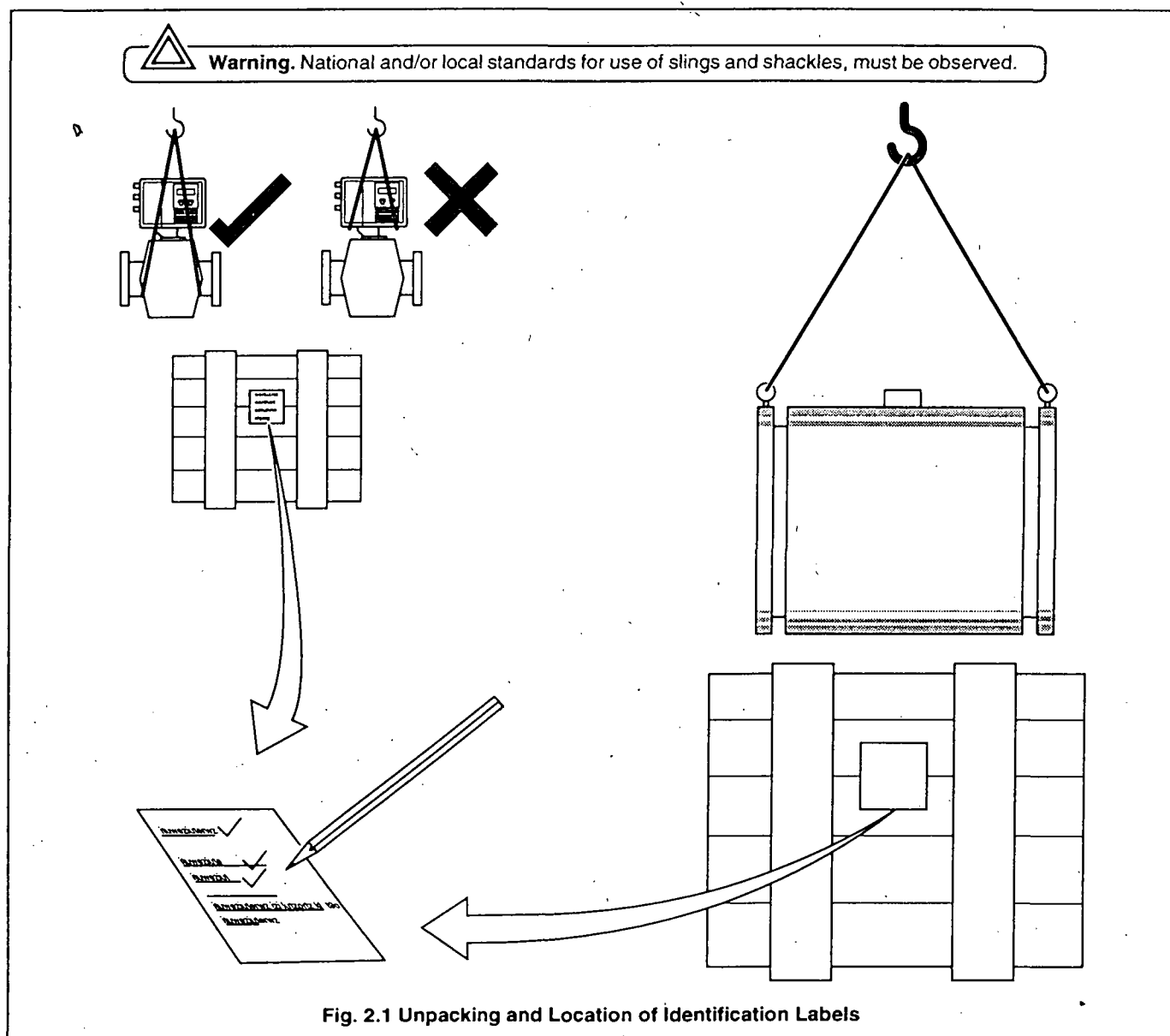
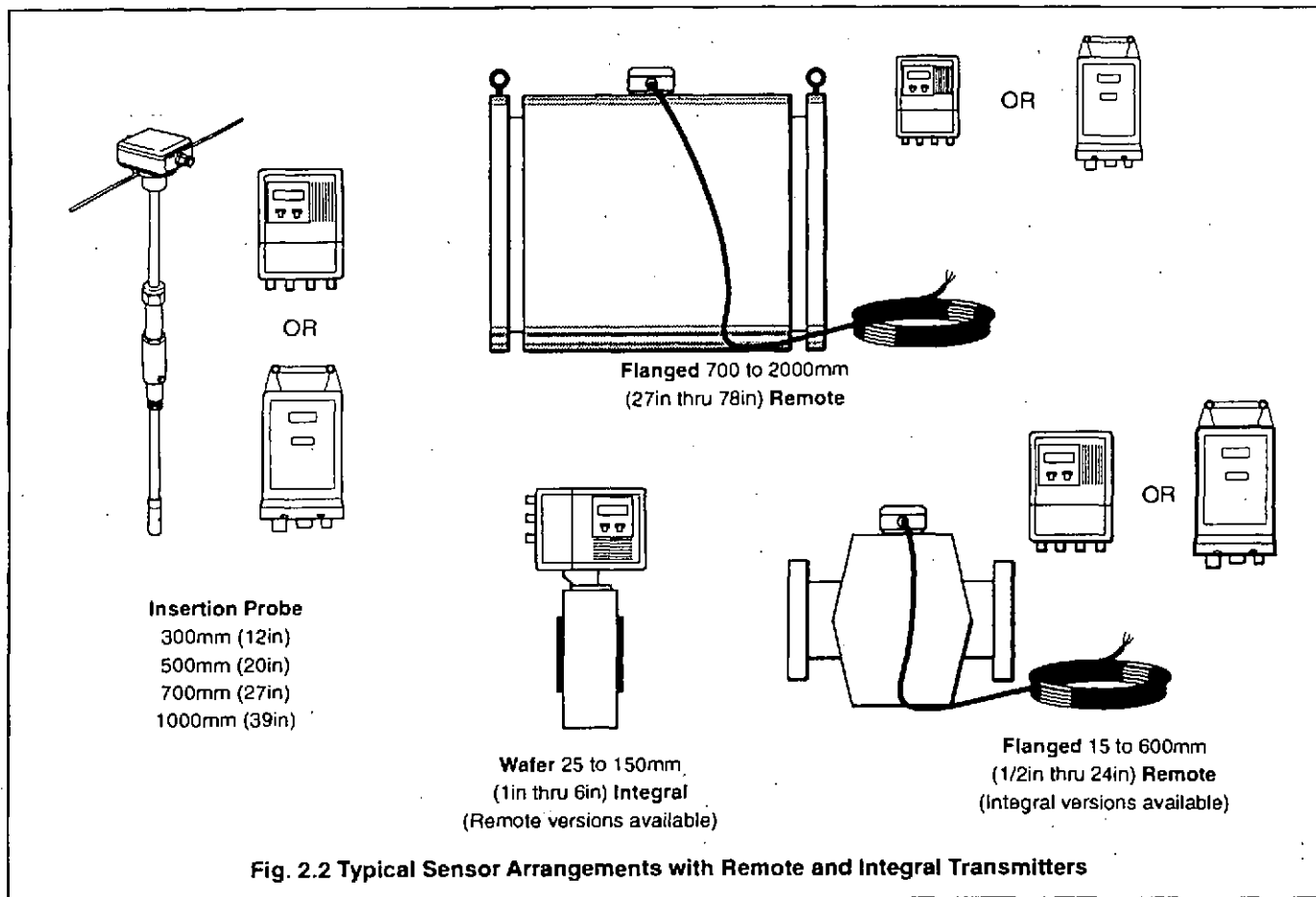


Fig. 2.1 Unpacking and Location of Identification Labels

## ...2 UNPACKING



## PRODUCTS AND SERVICING

### A Comprehensive Instrumentation Range

**Sensors, transmitters and related instruments for flow, temperature, pressure, level and other process variables**

**Flowmeters**

electromagnetic, ultrasonic, turbine, differential pressure, wedge, rotary shunt, coriolis.

**Differential Pressure transmitters**

electronic and pneumatic.

**Temperature**

sensors and transmitters, fibre optic systems.

**Pressure transmitters.**

**Level**

sensors and controllers.

**Tank gauging systems.**

**Cable-length measuring systems.**

**Indicators, recorders, controllers and process management systems**

**Recorders**

circular and strip-chart types (single and multi-point) for temperature, pressure, flow and many other process measurements.

**Controllers**

digital display, electronic, pneumatic. Discrete single-loop and multi-loop controllers which can be linked to a common display station, process computer or personal computer.

**Pneumatic panel or rack-mounted display and control instrumentation**

**Liquid and gas monitors and analysers for on-line and laboratory applications**

**Sensors**

pH, redox, selective ion, conductivity and dissolved oxygen.

**Transmitters**

Online pH, conductivity, and dissolved oxygen transmitters and associated sensing systems.

**Monitors and Analysers**

for water quality monitoring in environmental, power generation and general industrial applications including: pH, conductivity, ammonia, nitrate, phosphate, silica, sodium, chloride, fluoride, dissolved oxygen and hydrazine.

**Packaged analytical instrumentation laboratories.**

**Gas analysers**

Zirconia, paramagnetic, infrared, thermal conductivity.

### Servicing

ABB Kent-Taylor provides a comprehensive after sales service via a Worldwide Service Organisation. Contact one of the following offices for details on your nearest Service and Repair Centre.

**United Kingdom**

London

ABB Kent-Taylor Limited

Tel: (01480) 470781

Fax: (01480) 470787

**United States of America**

Rochester

ABB Kent-Taylor Inc.

Tel: (716) 2926050

Fax: (716) 2736207

**Italy**

Lenno (Como)

ABB Kent-Taylor SpA

Tel: (0344) 58111

Fax: (0344) 56278



## ABB Kent-Taylor Worldwide

### AUSTRALIA

ABB Kent-Taylor Pty Ltd  
Caringbah  
Tel: (02) 525 2811  
Fax: (02) 526 2269

### FRANCE

ABB Instrumentation  
Paris  
Tel: (1) 6918 1700  
Fax: (1) 6907 5402

### NEW ZEALAND

ABB Kent-Taylor Ltd  
Auckland  
Tel: (09) 276 1315  
Fax: (09) 276 1337

### AUSTRIA & EASTERN EUROPE

ABB Kent Europe Ltd.  
Vienna, Austria  
Tel: (0222) 798 3153  
Fax: (0222) 799 1753

### GERMANY

ABB Kent-Taylor GmbH.  
Meerbusch  
Tel: (021 59) 52060  
Fax: (021 59) 1503

### NORWAY

EB Industry + Offshore AS  
Porsgrunn  
Tel: (03) 55 55 40  
Fax: (03) 55 15 59

### BELGIUM

SA ASEA Brown Boveri  
Zaventem  
Tel: (02) 718 6311  
Fax: (02) 718 6662

### HONG KONG AND CHINA

Asea Brown Boveri Ltd  
Hong Kong  
Tel: (5) 846 8888  
Fax: (5) 846 8900

### SINGAPORE

ABB Instrumentation (EA) Pte Ltd.  
Singapore  
Tel: 481 9801  
Fax: 482 5110

### CANADA

ABB Kent-Taylor  
Mississauga, Ontario  
Tel: (416) 629 1428  
Fax: (416) 629 3171

### ITALY

ABB Kent-Taylor SpA  
Lenno (Como)  
Tel: (0344) 58111  
Fax: (0344) 56278

### SOUTH AFRICA

Kent Measurement Pty Ltd  
Johannesburg  
Tel: (011) 474 8697  
Fax: (011) 474 3232

### DENMARK

ABB Industri AS  
Ballerup  
Tel: (04) 686 210  
Fax: (04) 682 510

### JAPAN

ABB Gadelius Industry KK  
Kobe  
Tel: (78) 991 4505  
Fax: (78) 991 4910

### SPAIN

ABB Kent-Taylor SA  
Madrid  
Tel: (01) 439 9000  
Fax: (01) 437 9877

### EIRE

ABB (Ireland) Ltd.  
Dublin  
Tel: (01) 598 690  
Fax: (01) 599 942

### MEXICO

ABB Kent-Taylor SA de CV  
Edo de Mexico  
Tel: (5) 565 4011  
Fax: (5) 565 5812

### UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

ABB Kent-Taylor Inc.  
Rochester  
Tel: (716) 292 6050  
Fax: (716) 273 6207

### FINLAND

ABB Signal Oy  
Helsinki,  
Tel: (0) 50 691  
Fax: (0) 506 96269

### NETHERLANDS

ABB Componenten BV  
Capelle a/d IJssel  
Tel: (10) 258 2290  
Fax: (10) 458 6559

### ZIMBABWE

ABB Kent International Ltd.  
Harare  
Tel: (4) 728804  
Fax: (4) 728807

### OTHER COUNTRIES

Distributors are available in most  
other areas of the world.



ABB Kent-Taylor Ltd.  
Howard Road,  
St. Neots, Cambs.  
England, PE19 3EU  
Tel: (01480) 475321  
Telex: 32676 FOSCAM G  
Fax: (01480) 217948

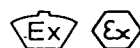
ABB Kent-Taylor Ltd.  
Analytical & Flow Group  
Oldends Lane, Stonehouse  
Gloucestershire  
England, GL10 3TA  
Tel: (01453) 826661  
Fax: (01453) 826358

ABB Kent-Taylor Inc.  
1175 John Street,  
PO Box 20550, Rochester  
New York 14602-0550  
USA  
Tel: (716) 292 6050  
Fax: (716) 273 6207

# Instruction Manual

## MagMaster™ Electromagnetic Flowmeters

BOOK 1  
Hazardous Area Approved  
Flowmeters

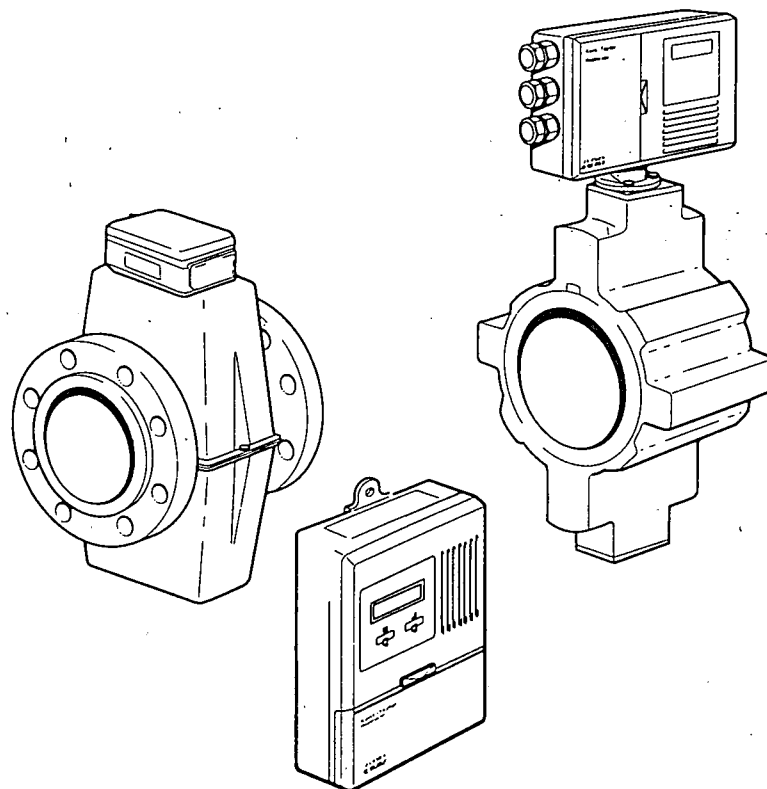


**Cenelec**



**Factory  
Mutual  
System**

**Approved**



**ABB Kent-Taylor**





## ABB KENT-TAYLOR



**St Neots**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. Q5907



**Stonehouse**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. FM 21106



**Stonehouse**  
Certificate No.0255

### The Company

ABB Kent-Taylor is an established world force in process instrumentation offering users a total capability in the wide range of product lines available, backed by the worldwide manufacturing, test, calibration and sales and service facilities that are expected from a market leader.

The quality, accuracy and performance of the Company's products result from over 100 years experience of instrument manufacture, combined with a continuous programme of innovative design and development to incorporate the latest technology.

The NAMAS Calibration Laboratory No. 0255(B) is just one of the ten flow calibration plants operated by the Company, and is indicative of ABB Kent-Taylor's dedication to quality and accuracy.

The Company's instrumentation is suitable for a wide range of industrial and scientific applications such as process control, batch processing, power generation, heat treatment, heating and ventilation, laboratories, food, chemical, petrochemical and water industries.

All products are backed by a high standard of technology, service and engineering support, from skilled, experienced sales and design engineers.

### Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 (UK)

Section 6(4) of the above Act requires manufacturers to advise their customers on the safety and handling precautions to be observed when installing, operating, maintaining and servicing their products. Accordingly, the following points must be noted:

1. The relevant sections of these instructions must be read carefully before proceeding.
2. Warning labels on containers and packages must be observed.
3. Installation, operation, maintenance and servicing must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel and in accordance with the information given.
4. Normal safety precautions must be taken to avoid the possibility of an accident occurring when operating in conditions of high pressure and/or temperature.
5. Chemicals must be stored away from heat, protected from temperature extremes and powders kept dry. Normal safe handling procedures must be used.
5. When disposing of chemicals ensure that no two chemicals are mixed.

Safety advice concerning the use of the equipment described in this manual or any relevant hazard data sheets (where applicable) may be obtained from the Company address on the back cover, together with servicing and spares information

### Notice

Information in this manual is intended only to assist our customers in the efficient operation of our equipment. Use of this manual for any other purpose is specifically prohibited and its contents are not to be reproduced in full or part without prior approval of Technical Communications Department, ABB Kent-Taylor.

### Use of Instructions



**Warning.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of injury or death.



**Caution.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of damage to the product, process or surroundings.



**Note.** Clarification of an instruction or additional information.



**Information.** Further reference for more detailed information or technical details.

Although **Warning** hazards are related to personal injury, and **Caution** hazards are associated with equipment or property damage, it must be understood that operation of damaged equipment could, under certain operational conditions, result in degraded process system performance leading to personal injury or death. Therefore, comply fully with all **Warning** and **Caution** notices.

## CONTENTS

### BOOK 1 HAZARDOUS AREA APPROVED VERSIONS

#### Section SAFETY MEASURES

Page  
1

<b>1</b>	<b>CENELEC AND SAA APPROVAL .....</b>	<b>2</b>
1.1	Introduction .....	3
1.2	Description .....	3
1.3	Specification .....	3
1.4	Installation .....	3
	1.4.1 Sensor Box Wiring .....	4
1.5	Safety of Pressurised Flowlines .....	4
1.6	The Approval Certificate .....	5
	1.6.1 Variation 1 .....	5
	1.6.2 Variation 2 .....	5
	1.6.3 Variation 3 .....	6
<b>2</b>	<b>FM &amp; CSA APPROVAL .....</b>	<b>7</b>
2.1	Introduction .....	7
2.2	Specific Requirements .....	7
	2.2.1 Supply .....	7
	2.2.2 Wiring .....	7
	2.2.3 Environmental Considerations .....	7
	2.2.4 Potting .....	7
	2.2.5 General .....	7
	2.2.6 MagMaster Sensor Temperature Limits .....	7

#### SAFETY MEASURES

#### MESURES DE SÉCURITÉ



##### Warning.

- EXPLOSION HAZARD.  
SUBSTITUTION OF COMPONENTS MAY IMPAIR  
SUITABILITY FOR CLASS I, DIVISION 2.
- EXPLOSION HAZARD.  
DO NOT REMOVE FUSE OR DISCONNECT POWER  
LEADS WHILE CIRCUIT IS LIVE.
- THE LOCAL TERMINAL MUST NOT BE USED WHEN  
THERE IS AN EXPLOSION RISK.



##### Avertissement.

- RISQUE D'EXPLOSION.  
SUBSTITUTION DE COMPOSANTS PEUT RENDRE  
CE MATÉRIEL INACCEPTABLE POUR LES  
EMPLACEMENTS DE CLASSE I, DIVISION 2.\*
- RISQUE D'EXPLOSION.  
NE PAS RETIRER LE FUSIBLE NI DÉBRANCHER  
LES FILS D'ALIMENTATION TANT QUE LE CIRCUIT  
EST SOUS TENSION.
- NE PAS UTILISER LE TERMINAL LOCAL EN  
ATMOSPHÈRE EXPLOSIVE



##### Warning.

- Installation and maintenance must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel.
- HAZARDOUS AREA DESIGNATION ON THE EQUIPMENT LABEL MUST BE SUITABLE FOR THE INTENDED DUTY AND LOCATION.
- All relevant sections of this manual must be read before selecting a location.
- Safety requirements of this equipment, any associated equipment and the local environment must be taken into consideration.
- The installation and use of this equipment must be in accordance with relevant national and local standards

## 1 CENELEC AND SAA APPROVED FLOWMETERS



### Warning.

- The instructions in this section apply only to systems supplied as suitable for Hazardous Area use, these bear a permanently fixed CENELEC/SAA label, BASEEFA certificate number Ex 91C2143 and Australian SAA number Ex 1489, attached to the Sensor. It does not apply to parts or spares supplied as non certified. This is particularly important where replacement equipment is to be incorporated into existing installations or when ordering spares. If in doubt contact ABB Kent-Taylor for advice before proceeding.
- It is essential that the equipment is installed and maintained in accordance with the appropriate standards for electrical equipment for use in flammable atmospheres. Any deviation from the specified installation or conditions of use, or unauthorised repairs or adjustments can invalidate assurances given by the certification of the unit.
- The contents of this book must be thoroughly understood before proceeding with any installation, maintenance, use or repair.
- Systems located in hazardous areas should only be installed and maintained by suitably trained personnel.
- The ultimate responsibility for the safety of any installation lies with the installing user/contractor.



## 3 INSTALLATION...

## 3.4 Sensor Terminal Box Connections (Remote System) – Fig. 3.6

**Caution.**

- Remove any exposed black conductive layer from under coaxial screens.
- Make connections only as shown.
- Sleeve all bare wiring.
- Twist RED and YELLOW cores lightly together.
- Twist WHITE and GREY coaxial cables lightly together.
- Maintain Environmental Protection at all times.
- Conduit connections must provide cable entry sealing.

**Information.**

- Refer to ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION (APPENDIX A).
- Internal appearance of Terminal Box may vary from that shown.
- Hazardous area approved flowmeters – see BOOK 1.

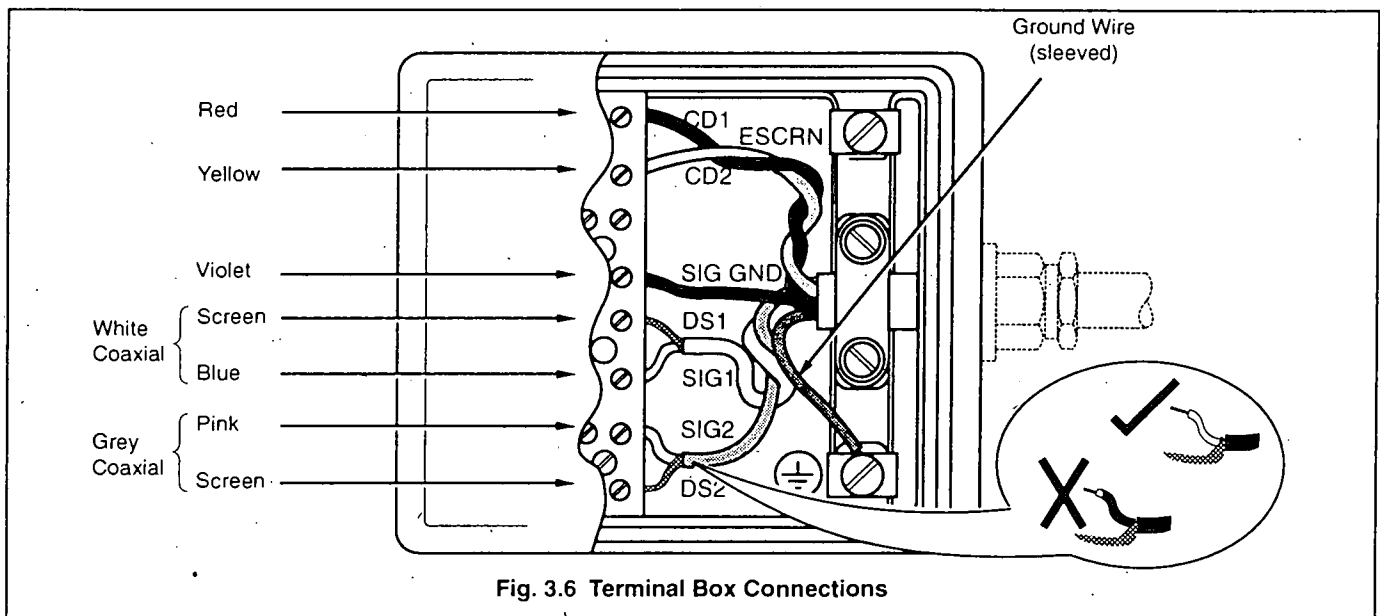


Fig. 3.6 Terminal Box Connections

### ...3 INSTALLATION

#### 3.5 Transmitter Sensor Cable Connections (Remote Transmitter) Fig. 3.7



##### Caution.

- Remove any exposed black conductive layer from the inner insulation of both coaxial cables.
- Substitute sensor cable of any kind is not acceptable.
- Do not make connections except as shown.
- Twist cable pairs together as shown.
- Sleeve ALL bare wires.
- Sensor cable may only be joined using company supplied junction box - available separately.



##### Information.

- Environmental protection – See APPENDIX
- Hazardous area approved flowmeters – See Book 1

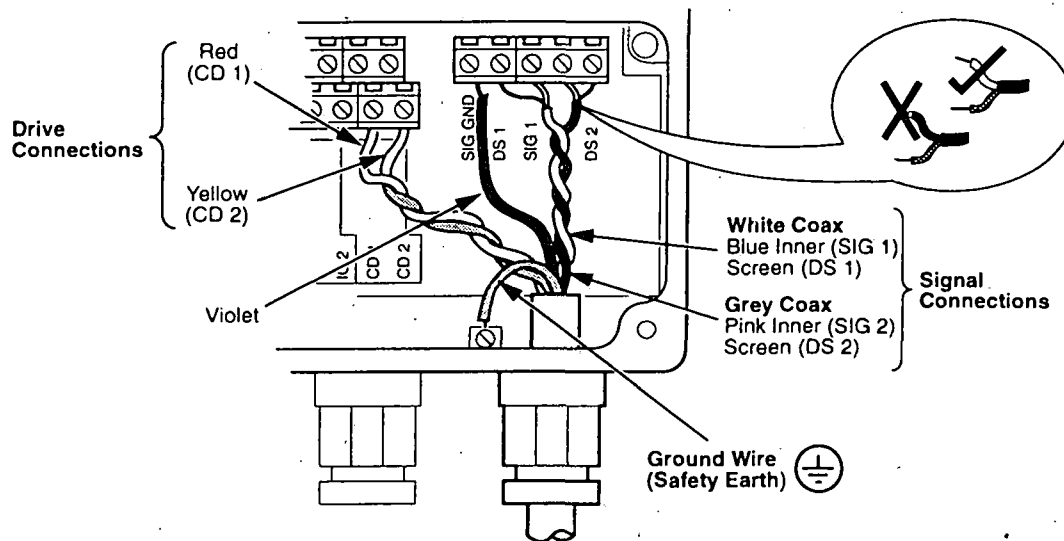
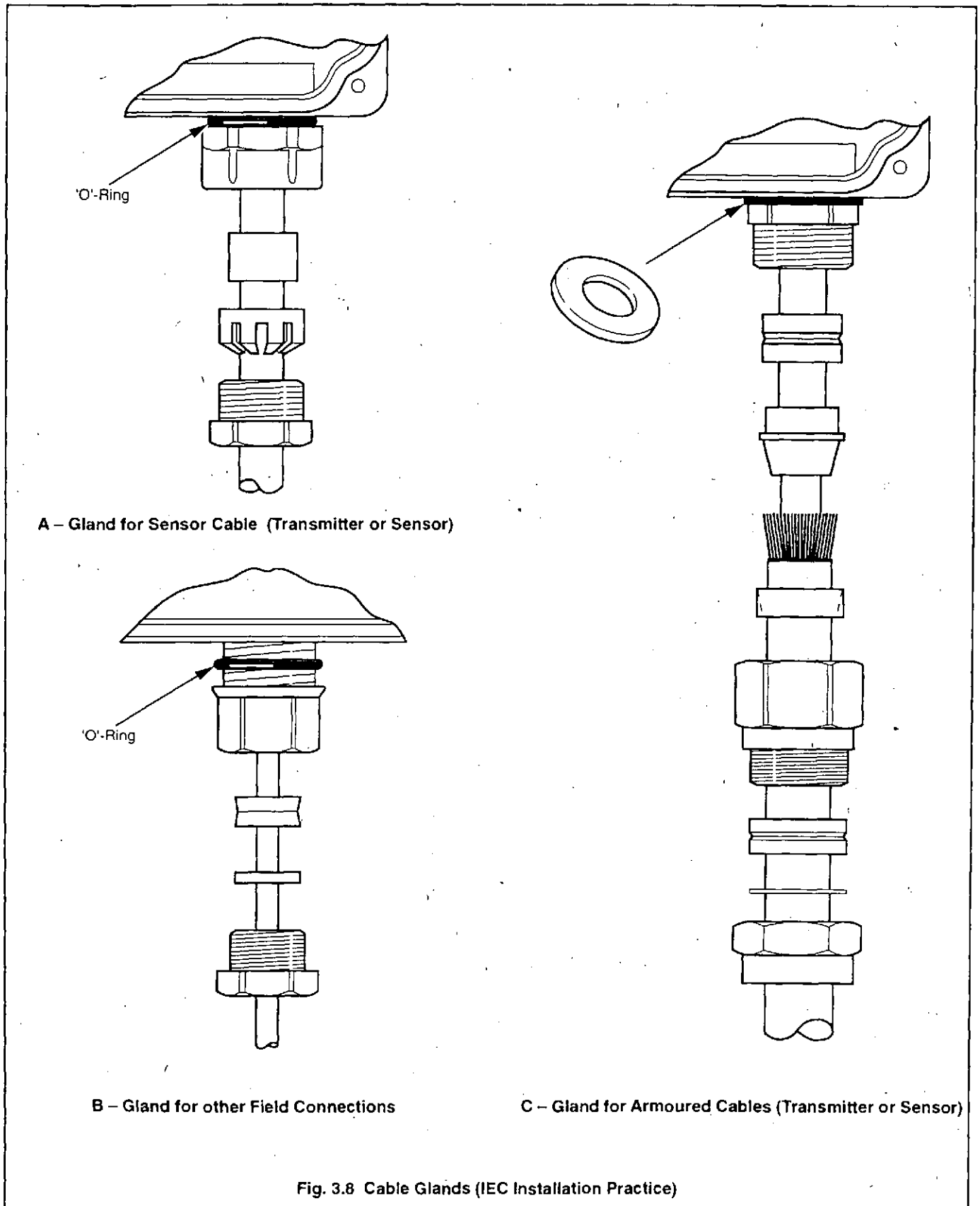


Fig. 3.7 Sensor Cable Connections

### 3 INSTALLATION...

#### 3.6 Cable Glands and Conduit Fixings

##### 3.6.1 Cable Glands (IEC – 20mm)



### ...3 INSTALLATION

#### 3.6.2 Conduit Adaptors (N. American – 0.5") – Fig. 3.9



##### Warning.

- Rigid conduit must NOT be fitted to the transmitter.
- Transmitter adaptors must incorporate a face seal.
- Sensor adaptors must incorporate cable/conduit sealing.
- Cable/conduit sealing is advisable on transmitter adaptors.
- Torque settings for the hubs and outer nuts on the specified adaptors is 20ft. lbs minimum, 25ft. lbs. maximum.



##### Information.

- Suitable adaptors for transmitter (mandatory for FM installations):  
APPLETON  
ST-50 PLUS STG-50 or STB-50 PLUS STG-50.  
Reusable ONLY with replacement ferrule STF-50.  
O.Z. GEDNEY  
4Q-50, 4Q50T or 4Q-50TG.
- When fitting conduit adaptor hubs to the transmitter, start with an outer adaptor and also temporarily fit an adaptor hub at the opposite end, to aid location of the transmitter gland plate. Fit and tighten hubs consecutively from initial hub.

Alternative  
Face Seal

Face  
Seal

Hub

Ferrule

Seal  
(Present in O.Z.  
Gedney Fittings)

Outer Nut

Fig. 3.9 Conduit Adaptors

#### 3.6.3 Cable Glands (N. American – 0.5") – Fig. 3.10



##### Warning.

- Transmitter glands must be fitted with a face seal.
- Torque settings (hubs only) – 20ft. lbs minimum, 25ft. lbs. maximum.
- Outer nuts – hand tight plus a half turn only.



##### Information.

- Suitable Cable Glands: (mandatory for FM installations):  
O.Z. GEDNEY  
SR-50-375 or SR-504  
APPLETON  
CG 3150 or CG-3150S (and STG-50 sealing ring).  
THOMAS & BETTS  
2521.
- When fitting cable glands to the transmitter, start with an outer gland and also temporarily fit a gland at the opposite end, to aid location of the transmitter gland plate. Fit and tighten glands consecutively from initial gland.

Alternative  
Face Seal

Face  
Seal

Hub

Fittings vary  
slightly for  
different makes

Illustration  
typical for  
O.Z. Gedney

Outer Nut

Fig. 3.10 Cable Glands

## 3 INSTALLATION...

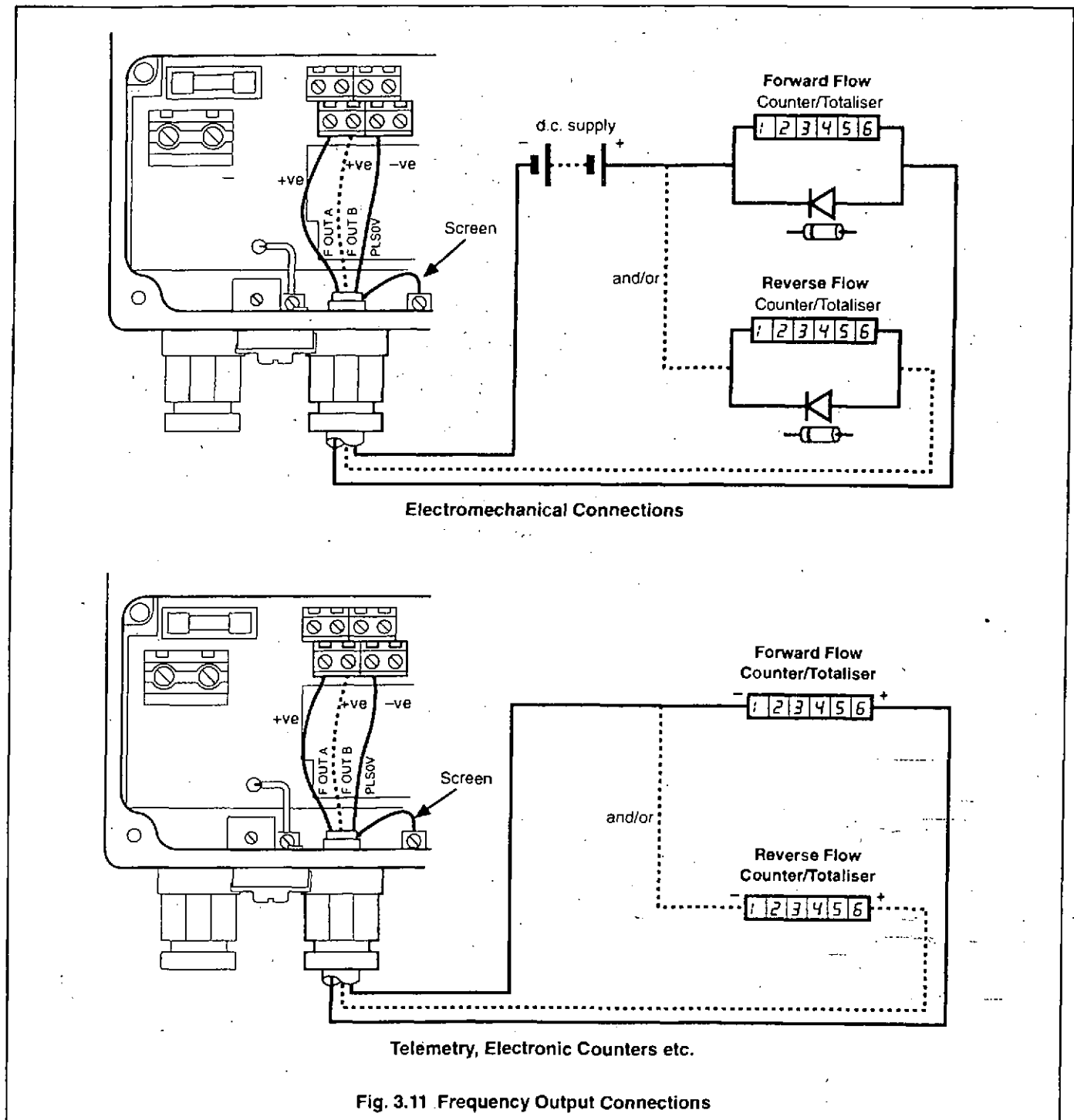
### 3.7 Input/Output Connections



#### Caution.

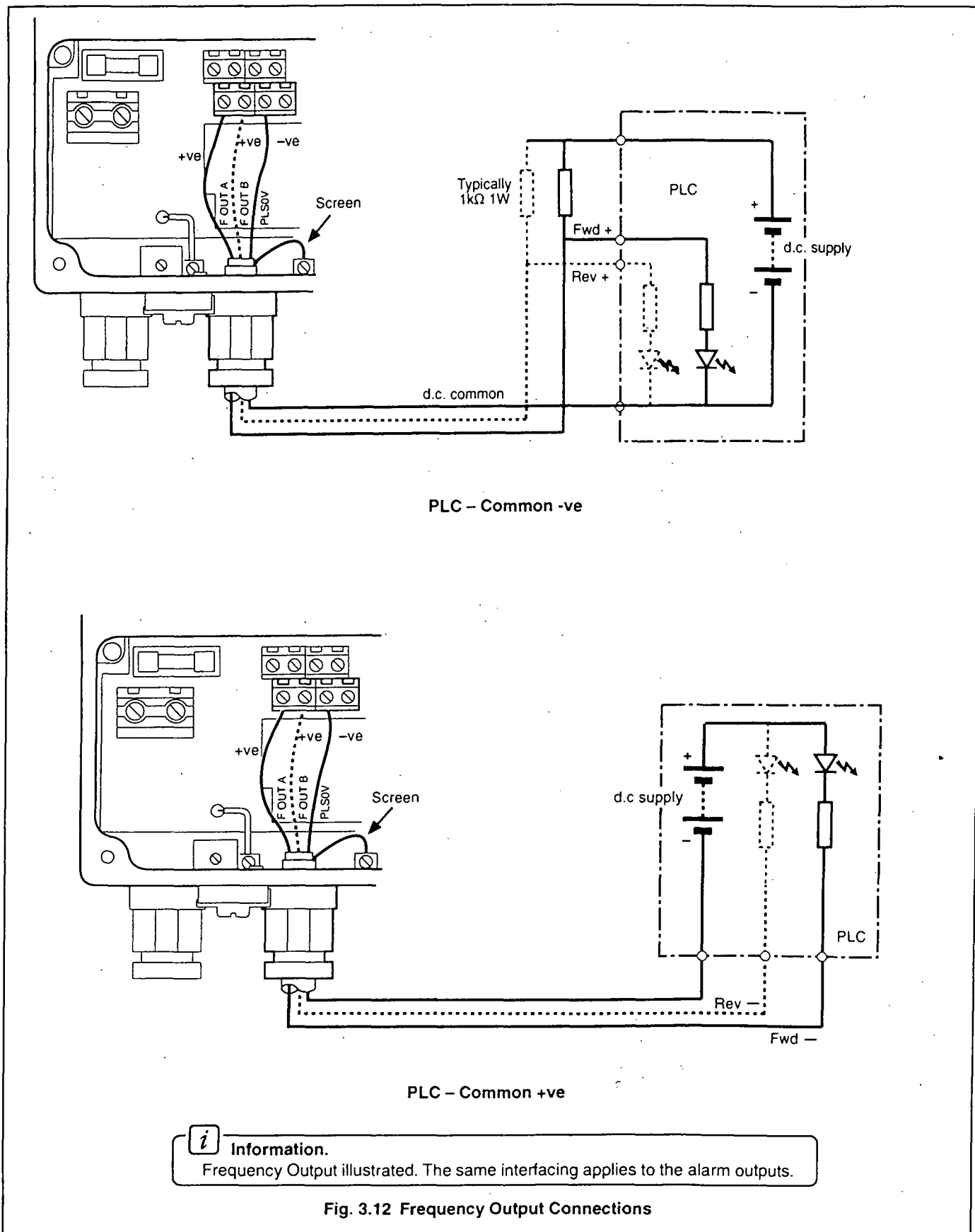
- Refer to SPECIFICATION SHEET for Input/Output ratings.
- Inductive loads must be suppressed or clamped to limit voltage swings
- Capacitive loads must be inrush current limited.
- Hazardous area requirements are not considered in the following pages.

#### 3.7.1 Frequency Outputs – Fig. 3.11



### ...3. INSTALLATION

#### 3.7.2 PLC Interface – Fig. 3.12



## 3 INSTALLATION...

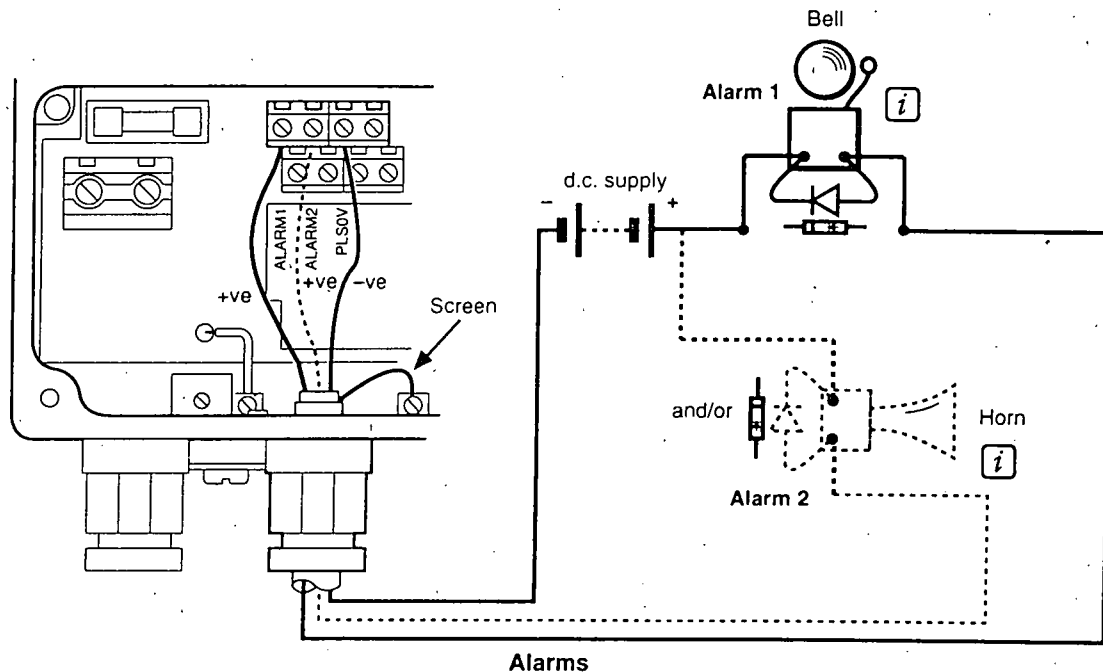
## 3.7.3 Alarm Outputs – Fig. 3.13

**Information.**

- Inductive loads may be suppressed by diodes (D) – 1N4004 or similar.
- Inrush currents are limited to 1 Amp by resistor R – e.g. 27Ω 1W for 24V systems.
- Operation of outputs is programmable – see Configuration Manual for details.
- Frequency and Alarm outputs share a common return with contact input.
- External isolators not normally required, as the pulse, alarm and contact circuits are electrically separated from all other Magmaster connections.



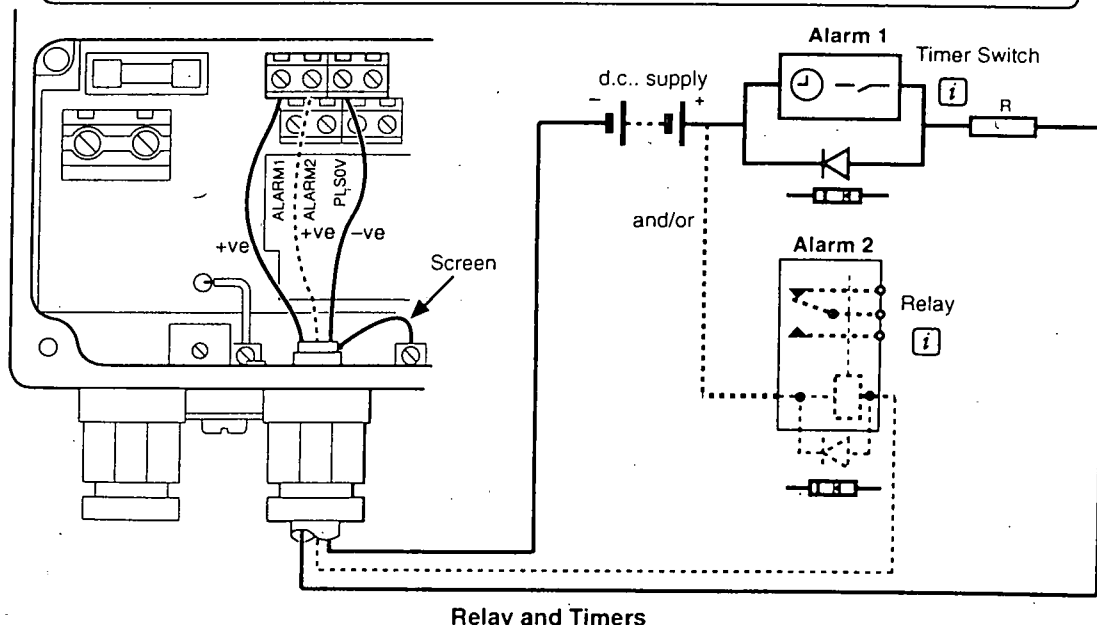
**Information.** Bell and Horn shown for example only. Use any suitable alarm device, e.g. lamp, siren, buzzer etc.



Alarms



**Information.** Relay and Timer Switch shown for example only. Connect as required.

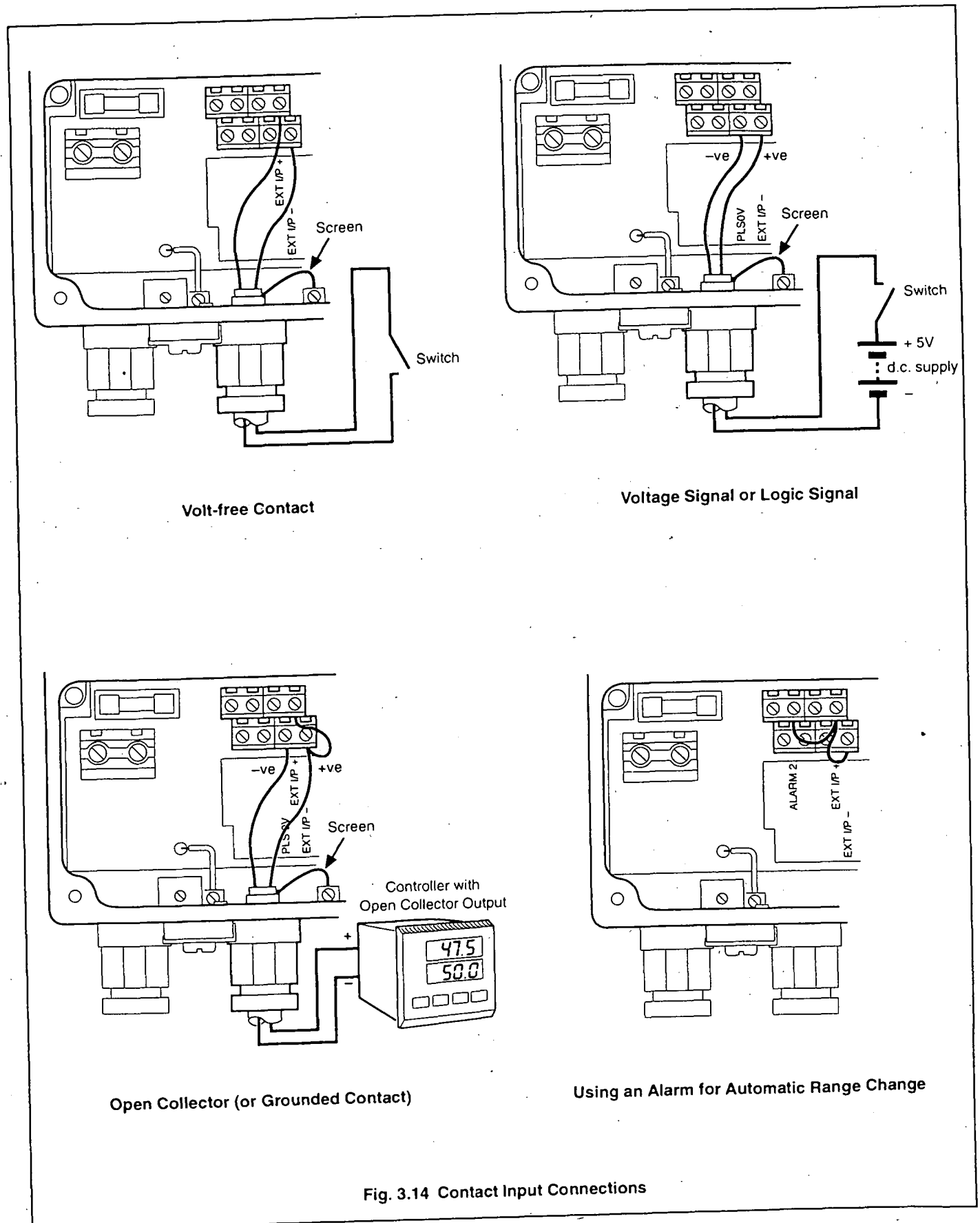


Relay and Timers

Fig. 3.13 Alarm Output Connections

### ...3 INSTALLATION

#### 3.7.4 Contact Input – Fig. 3.14



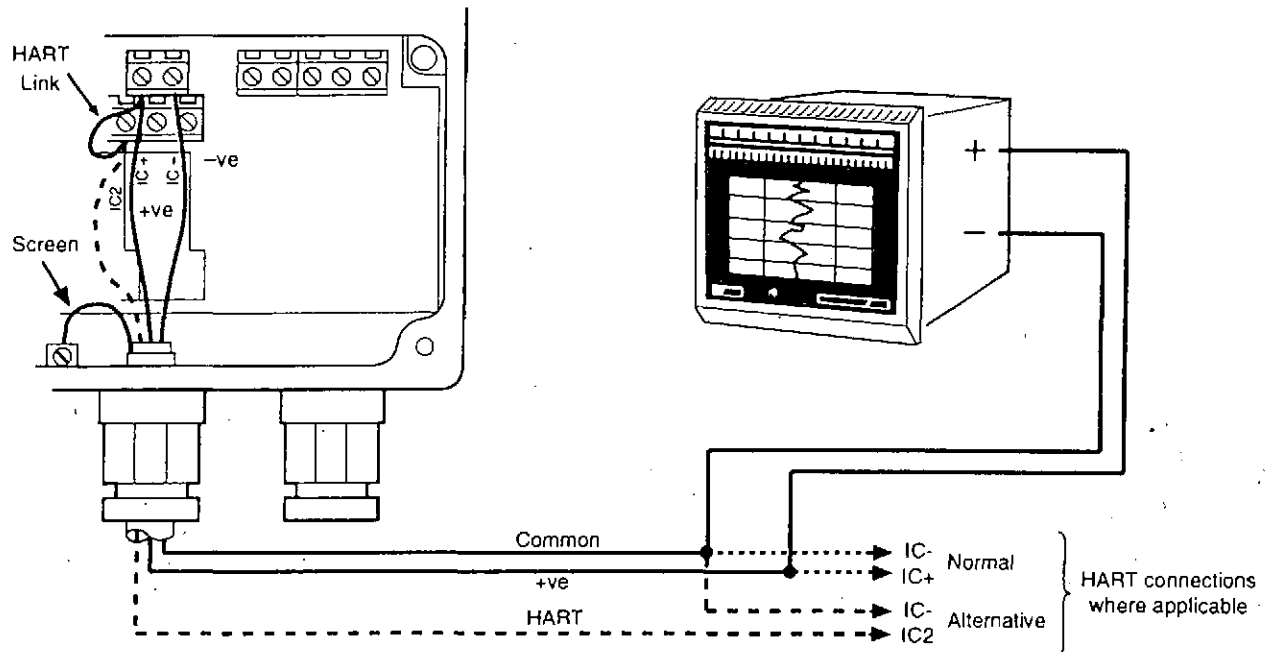


## 3 INSTALLATION...

## 3.7.5 Current Output – Fig. 3.15 and 3.16

**i** Information.

- Output is fully programmable – see Configuration Manual.
- Output is electrically separated from all other MagMaster connections.
- External isolators are not normally required and may significantly limit accuracy if used.



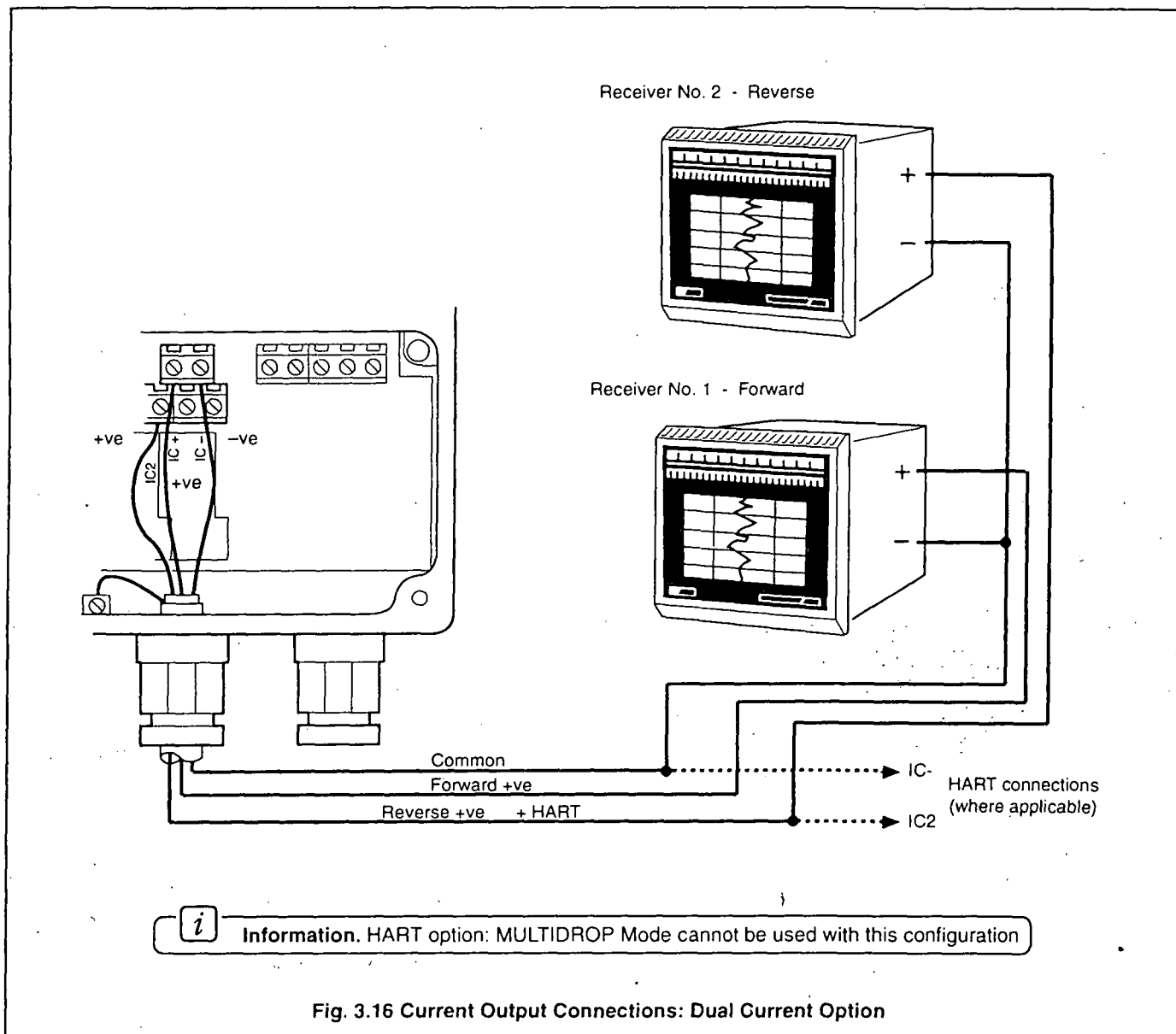
**i** Information. For MULTIDROP HART installations, remove 'HART Link' and connect HART systems directly to IC2: this allows the analog output function to be retained.

Fig. 3.15 Current Output Connections: Standard

Current Output...

### ...3 INSTALLATION

#### ... Current Output



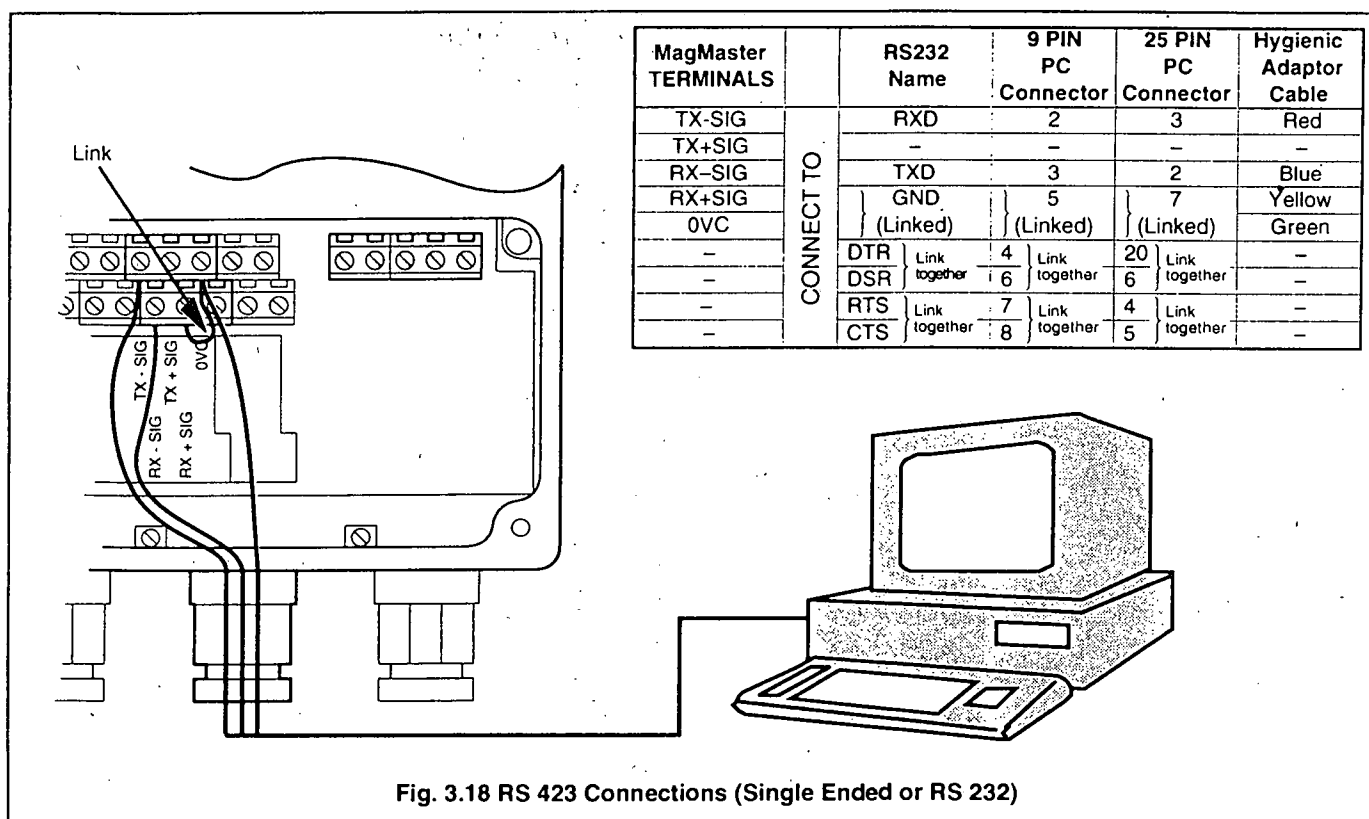
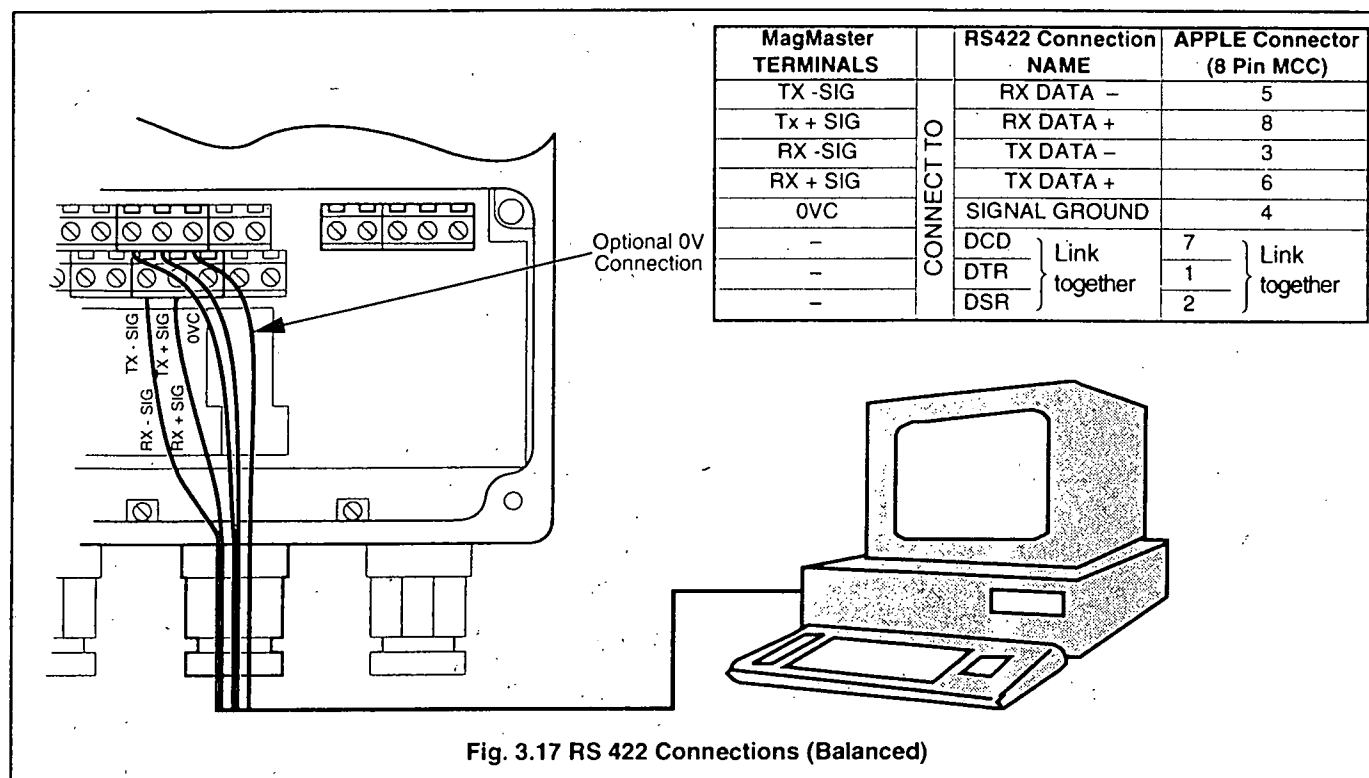
### 3 INSTALLATION...

#### 3.7.6 Computer Connection – Fig. 3.17 and 3.18



##### Information.

- RS422/423 option is electrically isolated from all other MagMaster connections.



### ...3 INSTALLATION

#### 3.7.7 Power Supply Connections – Figs. 3.19 and 3.20



#### Warning.

- DISCONNECT THE SUPPLY FROM ANY CABLES BEING TERMINATED ON THE TRANSMITTER.
- Electrical installation and earthing must be in accordance with relevant national and local standards.

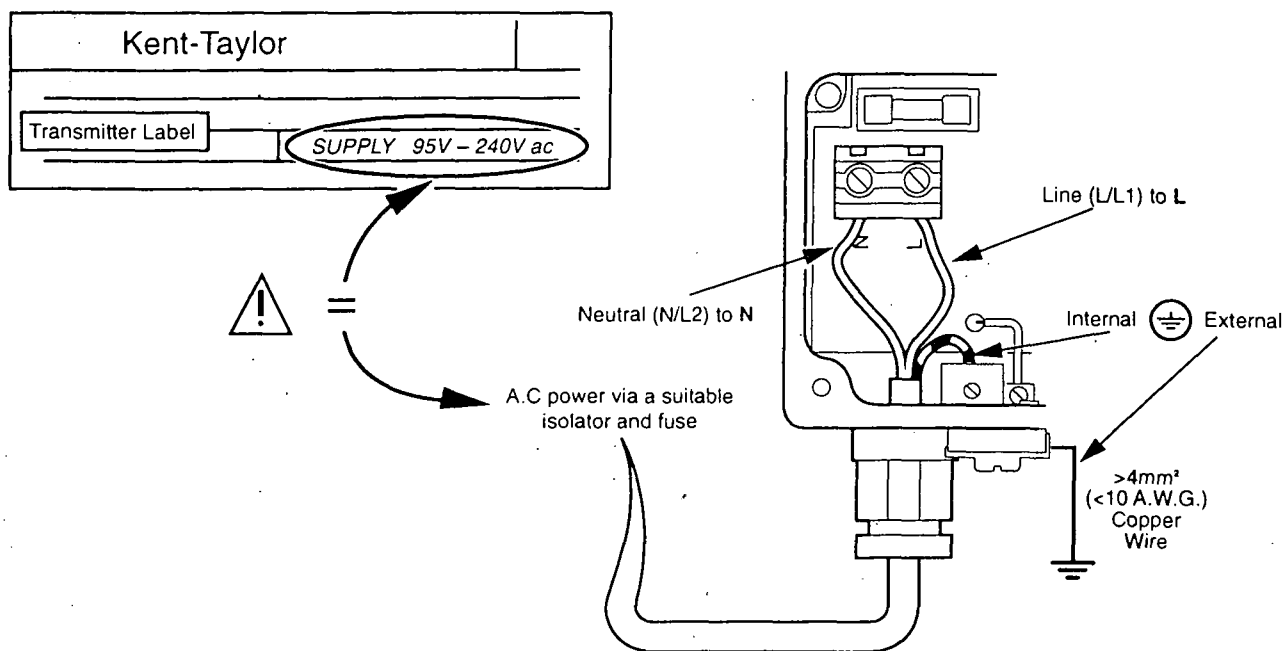


Fig. 3.19 Power Supply Connections (A.C. Version Transmitter)

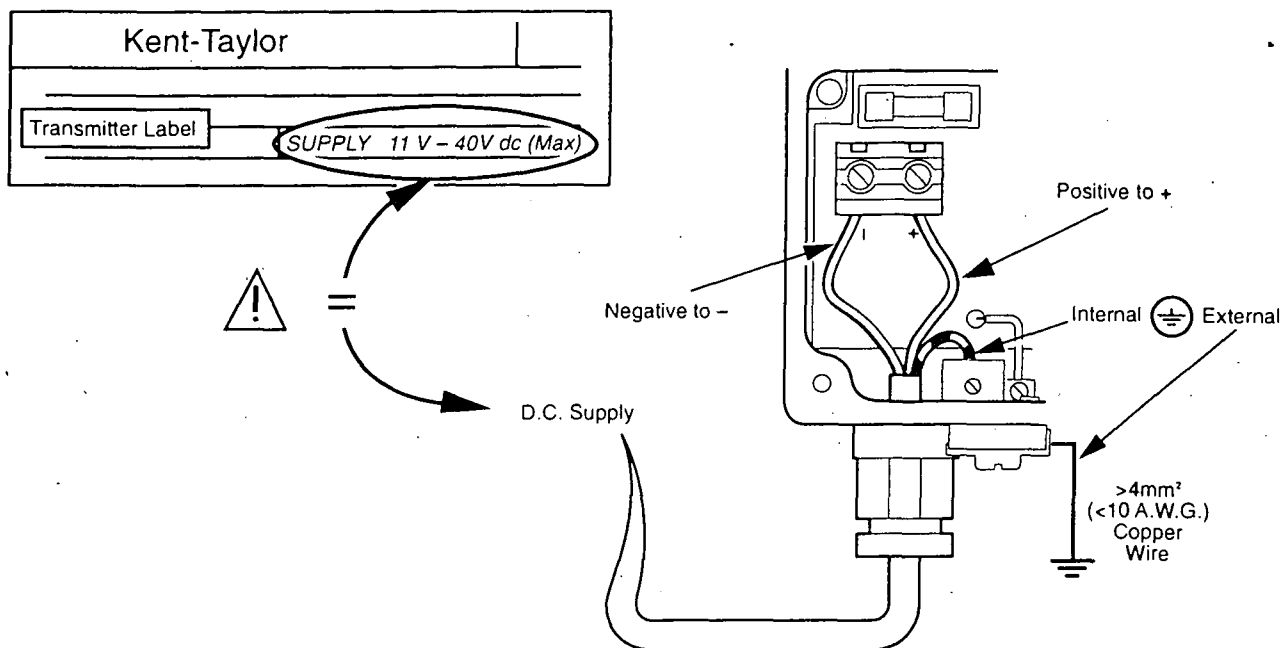


Fig. 3.20 Power Supply Connections (D.C. Version Transmitter)

**APPENDIX A – ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION****...APPENDIX A****Warning.**

- Potting materials are toxic – use suitable safety precautions.
- Read the manufacturers instructions carefully before preparing the potting material.
- The remote sensor terminal box connections must be potted immediately on completion to prevent the ingress of moisture. For hazardous area versions – see HAZARDOUS AREA APPROVALS.
- Check all connections before potting – see ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION.
- Do not overfill the terminal box or allow the potting material to come into contact with the 'O' ring or groove.
- Do not let potting material enter conduit, if used.

## PRODUCTS AND SERVICING

### A Comprehensive Instrumentation Range

**Sensors, transmitters and related instruments for flow, temperature, pressure, level and other process variables**

#### **Flowmeters**

electromagnetic, ultrasonic, turbine, differential pressure, wedge, rotary shunt, coriolis.

#### **Differential Pressure transmitters**

electronic and pneumatic.

#### **Temperature**

sensors and transmitters, fibre optic systems.

#### **Pressure transmitters.**

#### **Level**

sensors and controllers.

#### **Tank gauging systems.**

#### **Cable-length measuring systems.**

**Indicators, recorders, controllers and process management systems**

#### **Recorders**

circular and strip-chart types (single and multi-point) for temperature, pressure, flow and many other process measurements.

#### **Controllers**

digital display, electronic, pneumatic. Discrete single-loop and multi-loop controllers which can be linked to a common display station, process computer or personal computer.

#### **Pneumatic panel or rack-mounted display and control instrumentation**

**Liquid and gas monitors and analysers for on-line and laboratory applications**

#### **Sensors**

pH, redox, selective ion, conductivity and dissolved oxygen.

#### **Transmitters**

Online pH, conductivity, and dissolved oxygen transmitters and associated sensing systems.

#### **Monitors and Analysers**

for water quality monitoring in environmental, power generation and general industrial applications including: pH, conductivity, ammonia, nitrate, phosphate, silica, sodium, chloride, fluoride, dissolved oxygen and hydrazine.

#### **Packaged analytical instrumentation laboratories.**

#### **Gas analysers**

Zirconia, paramagnetic, infrared, thermal conductivity.

### Servicing

ABB Kent-Taylor provides a comprehensive after sales service via a Worldwide Service Organisation. Contact one of the following offices for details on your nearest Service and Repair Centre.

#### **United Kingdom**

London

ABB Kent-Taylor Limited

Tel: (01480) 470781

Fax: (01480) 470787

#### **United States of America**

Rochester

ABB Kent-Taylor Inc.

Tel: (716) 2926050

Fax: (716) 2736207

#### **Italy**

Lenno (Como)

ABB Kent-Taylor SpA

Tel: (0344) 58111

Fax: (0344) 56278

## Instruction Manual

# MagMaster™ Electromagnetic Flowmeters

## BOOK 4 Operation

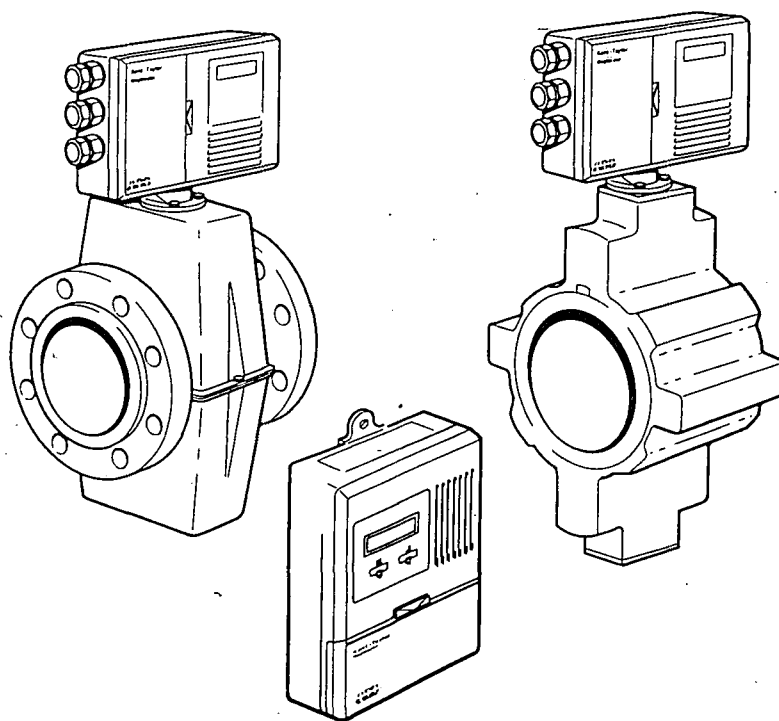


ABB Kent-Taylor



## ABB KENT-TAYLOR



**St Neots**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. Q5907



**Stonehouse**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. FM 21106



**Stonehouse**  
Certificate No. 0255

### The Company

ABB Kent-Taylor is an established world force in process instrumentation offering users a total capability in the wide range of product lines available, backed by the worldwide manufacturing, test, calibration and sales and service facilities that are expected from a market leader.

The quality, accuracy and performance of the Company's products result from over 100 years experience of instrument manufacture, combined with a continuous programme of innovative design and development to incorporate the latest technology.

The NAMAS Calibration Laboratory No. 0255(B) is just one of the ten flow calibration plants operated by the Company, and is indicative of ABB Kent-Taylor's dedication to quality and accuracy.

The Company's instrumentation is suitable for a wide range of industrial and scientific applications such as process control, batch processing, power generation, heat treatment, heating and ventilation, laboratories, food, chemical, petrochemical and water industries.

All products are backed by a high standard of technology, service and engineering support, from skilled, experienced sales and design engineers.

### Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 (UK)

Section 6(4) of the above Act requires manufacturers to advise their customers on the safety and handling precautions to be observed when installing, operating, maintaining and servicing their products. Accordingly, the following points must be noted:

1. The relevant sections of these instructions must be read carefully before proceeding.
2. Warning labels on containers and packages must be observed.
3. Installation, operation, maintenance and servicing must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel and in accordance with the information given.
4. Normal safety precautions must be taken to avoid the possibility of an accident occurring when operating in conditions of high pressure and/or temperature.
5. Chemicals must be stored away from heat, protected from temperature extremes and powders kept dry. Normal safe handling procedures must be used.
6. When disposing of chemicals ensure that no two chemicals are mixed.

Safety advice concerning the use of the equipment described in this manual or any relevant hazard data sheets (where applicable) may be obtained from the Company address on the back cover, together with servicing and spares information.

### Notice

Information in this manual is intended only to assist our customers in the efficient operation of our equipment. Use of this manual for any other purpose is specifically prohibited and its contents are not to be reproduced in full or part without prior approval of Technical Communications Department, ABB Kent-Taylor.

### Use of Instructions



**Warning.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of injury or death.



**Caution.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of damage to the product, process or surroundings.



**Note.** Clarification of an instruction or additional information.



**Information.** Further reference for more detailed information or technical details.

Although **Warning** hazards are related to personal injury, and **Caution** hazards are associated with equipment or property damage, it must be understood that operation of damaged equipment could, under certain operational conditions, result in degraded process system performance leading to personal injury or death. Therefore, comply fully with all **Warning** and **Caution** notices.



## CONTENTS

### BOOK 4 OPERATION

Section	Page	Section	Page
<b>SAFETY MEASURES</b>	<b>1</b>	3.7 Advanced Techniques	9
<b>1 INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>1</b>	3.7.1 Fast Selection of Parameters	9
<b>2 OPERATION</b>	<b>2</b>	3.7.2 Fast Selection plus Data Entry	9
2.1 Startup	2	<b>APPENDIX A</b>	
<b>3 CONFIGURING THE TRANSMITTER</b>	<b>2</b>	A1.1 Programming the transmitter with a data terminal	10
3.1 Filing Cabinet Analogy	2	A1.2 Using personal computers with MagMaster	10
3.1 Getting Started	3	A1.2.1 PC Tools	11
3.2 Looking at the Main Menu	4	A1.2.2 Windows 'TERMINAL'	11
3.3 Choosing a Main Menu Item	4	A1.2.3 Odyssey and Procomm Plus	11
3.4 The Main Menu	6	A1.2.4 'VBC' and 'AQUAMAG'	11
3.5 Password Access	6	A1.3 Quick set-up for Psion Series 3	11
3.5.1 Gaining Access to the User Level	6	A1.4 Set up for Psion Organiser II	13
3.5.2 Gaining Access to the Engineer Level	7	(CM, XP, LZ, LZ64)	
3.6 Changing the Value of a Parameter	7	A1.4.1 Keyboard Designations (Psion Organiser II)	13
3.6.1 Numerical Value Parameters	7	<b>APPENDIX B</b>	
3.6.2 Logic ('1' or '0') Value Parameters	8	B1.1 Parameter Tree Structure	14
3.6.3 Alarm Parameters	9	B1.2 Description of Parameters	16
		<b>APPENDIX C</b>	
		MagMaster System Diagram	23

**Trademarks:** All Trademarks used in this manual are gratefully acknowledged.

#### SAFETY MEASURES



##### Warning.

- EXPLOSION HAZARD.  
SUBSTITUTION OF COMPONENTS MAY IMPAIR SUITABILITY FOR CLASS I, DIVISION 2.
- EXPLOSION HAZARD.  
DO NOT REMOVE FUSE OR DISCONNECT POWER LEADS WHILE CIRCUIT IS LIVE.
- THE LOCAL TERMINAL MUST NOT BE USED WHEN THERE IS AN EXPLOSION RISK.

#### MESURES DE SÉCURITÉ



##### Avertissement.

- RISQUE D'EXPLOSION.  
SUBSTITUTION DE COMPOSANTS PEUT RENDRE CE MATÉRIEL INACCEPTABLE POUR LES EMPLACEMENTS DE CLASSE I, DIVISION 2.
- RISQUE D'EXPLOSION.  
NE PAS RETIRER LE FUSIBLE NI DÉBRANCHER LES FILS D'ALIMENTATION TANT QUE LE CIRCUIT EST SOUS TENSION.
- NE PAS UTILISER LE TERMINAL LOCAL EN ATMOSPHÈRE EXPLOSIVE.



##### Warning.

- Installation and maintenance must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel.
- HAZARDOUS AREA DESIGNATION ON THE EQUIPMENT LABEL MUST BE SUITABLE FOR THE INTENDED DUTY AND LOCATION.
- All relevant sections of this manual must be read before selecting a location.
- Safety requirements of this equipment, any associated equipment, and the local environment must be taken into consideration.
- The installation and use of this equipment must be in accordance with relevant national and local standards.

## 1 INTRODUCTION

This manual provides details to enable the MagMaster™ transmitter to be reconfigured from default parameters or from parameters initially set up by the factory to special order. This may be achieved via the communications link or a HART Terminal.

## 2 OPERATION

### 2.1 Startup

Switch on the power supply to the flowmeter and if a transmitter with display has been ordered, the flow rate will be shown on the bottom line of the display as shown below.

Sequential application of the provided magnetic wand to the left hand icon in the transmitter display area steps the top line display through the following sequence:

%	(Flow Rate % of Range)
>	(Forward flow total value)
<	(Reverse flow total value)
*	(Net flow total value)
Alm	(Active alarms)
Vel	(Flow Velocity in m/s or ft/s)

Any alarms are displayed sequentially if more than one alarm is present.

The second display line normally indicates flow rate in chosen units, but alternates with an alarm indication signal (Alm) if any alarms occur – see **Fault Finding** book.

Application of the wand to the right hand icon resets the totaliser display if reset is enabled (see Para 3.7, Parameter 73).

To gain access to the above information when a transmitter without display has been ordered, proceed as detailed in the following pages.

## 3 CONFIGURING THE TRANSMITTER

### 3.1 Filing Cabinet Analogy

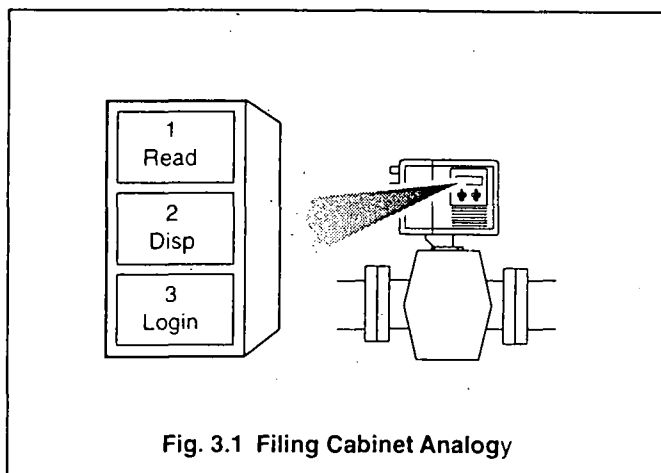


Fig. 3.1 Filing Cabinet Analogy

The main menu is accessed similarly to opening the drawers of a filing cabinet, each drawer of the cabinet representing an item of the main menu.

Main Menu items 1 to 3 are generally accessible; the remainder are password protected.

Files in the drawers of the cabinet would represent the groups of parameters provided by the transmitter which, if required, may be viewed or changed as shown in this, and the following pages.

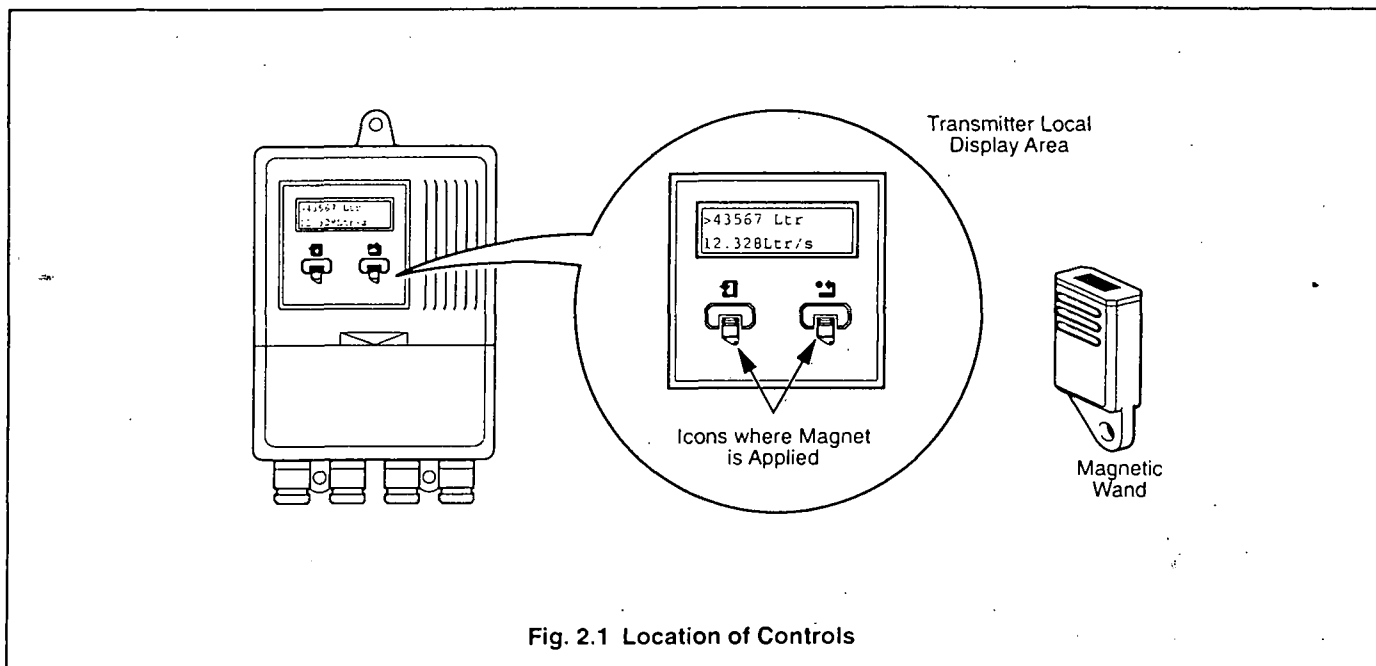


Fig. 2.1 Location of Controls

## CONFIGURING THE TRANSMITTER...

### 3.2 Getting Started

The Transmitter is delivered set up either with your chosen units, or set with our standard default values.



**Warning.** Ensure Plant Safety while configuring at all times.

If you need to change the transmitter configuration for any reason, this may be done by connecting a terminal device e.g. Personal Computer, Electronic Organiser etc., to the transmitter via the 9-way D-Type connector, found by sliding the movable section of the transmitter cover in the direction of the cable glands.



**Note.** There is no 9-way D-Type connector available on the Hygienic version transmitter; cable must be hard-wired from inside the transmitter via the cable glands.

Special software is not required for configuring the transmitter; any communication program will suffice.

Connect the programming terminal to the transmitter (See APPENDIX A for details of connection and setup of data terminals etc. to the transmitter).

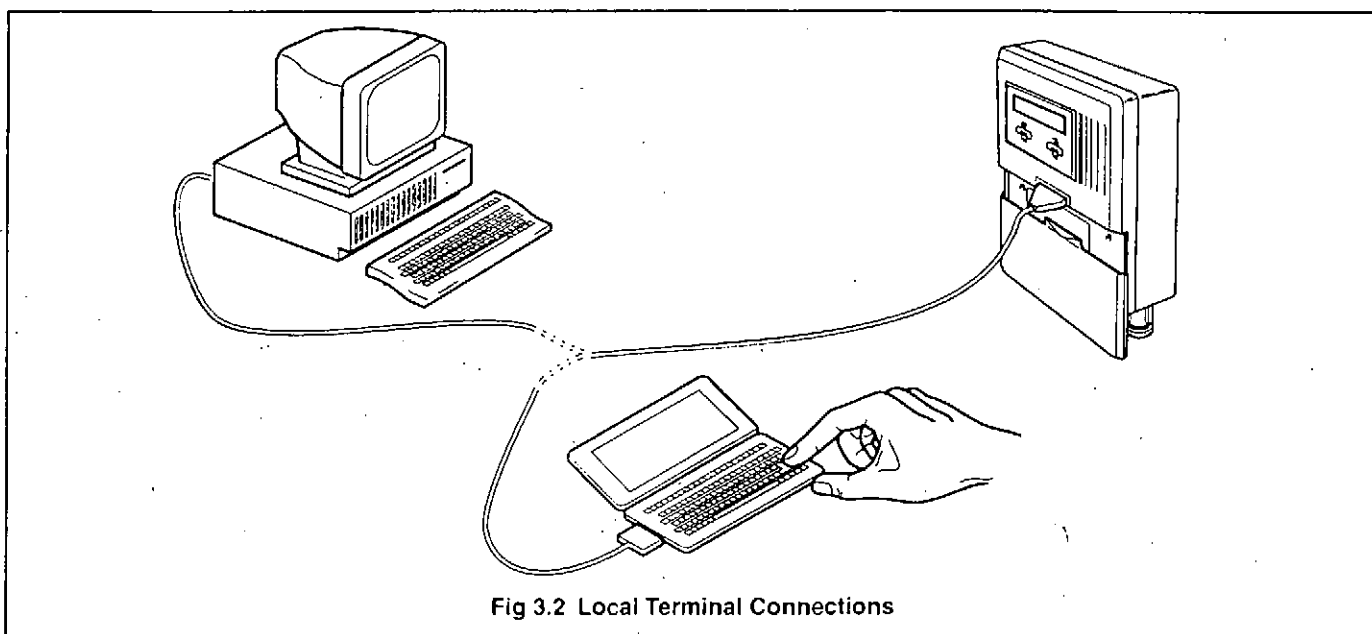
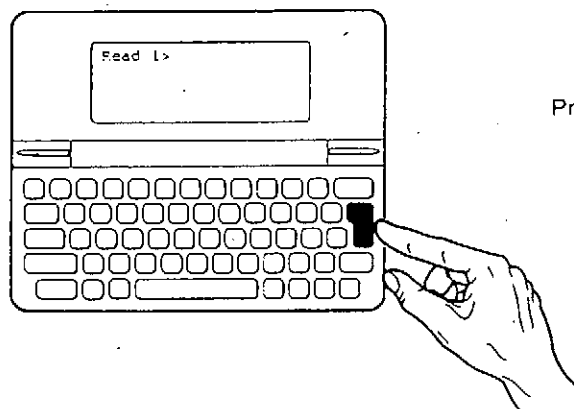
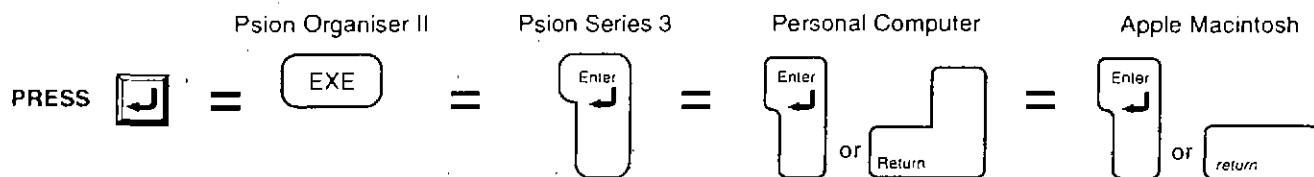


Fig 3.2 Local Terminal Connections

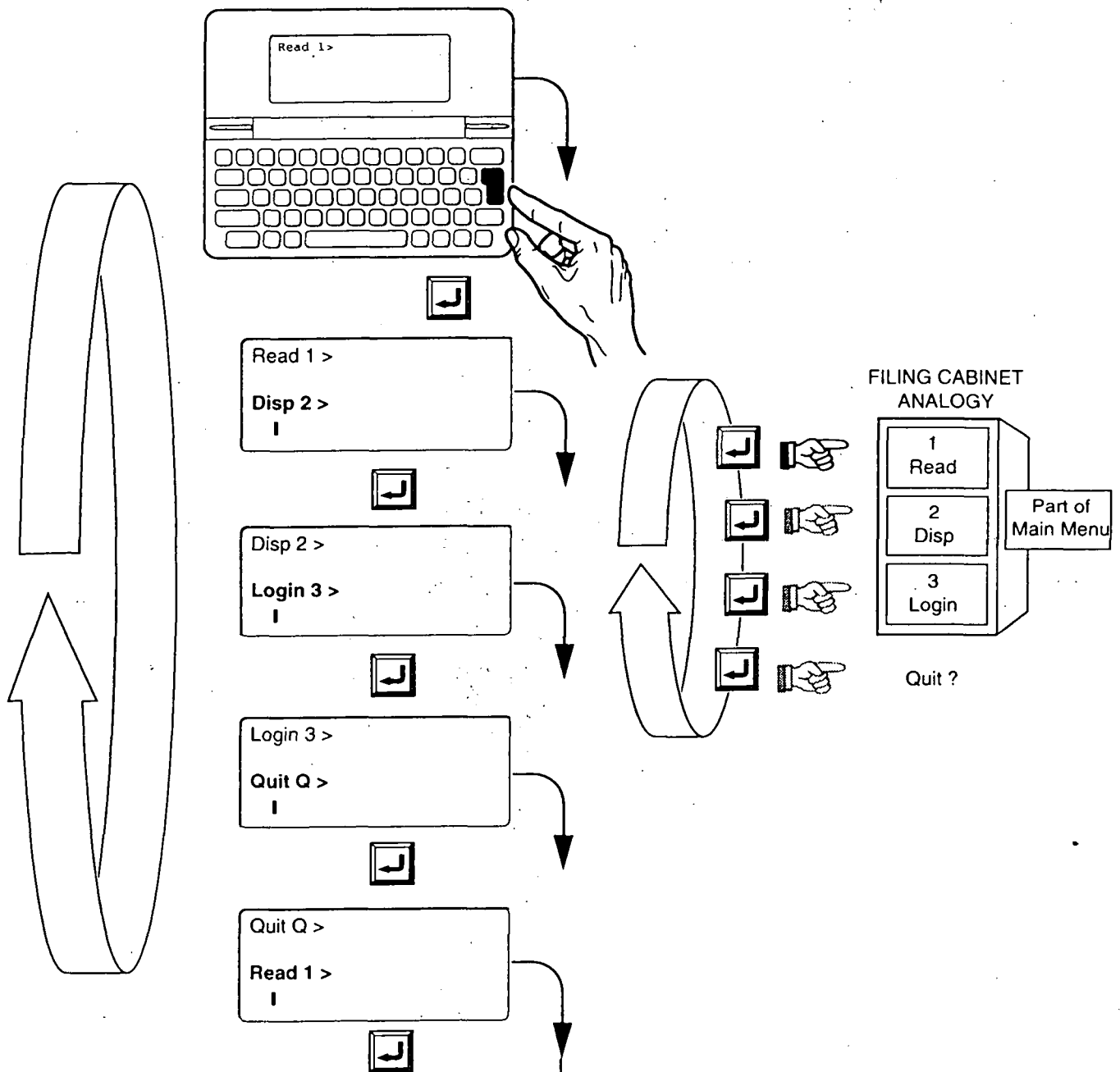
With connections made and the power switched onto the transmitter and terminal, proceed as shown below:



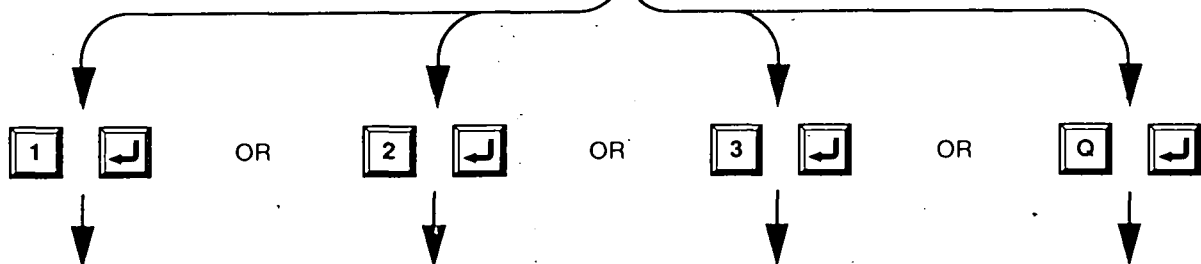
Press until display shows first item on main menu  
i.e. 'Read 1>'

## ...CONFIGURING THE TRANSMITTER

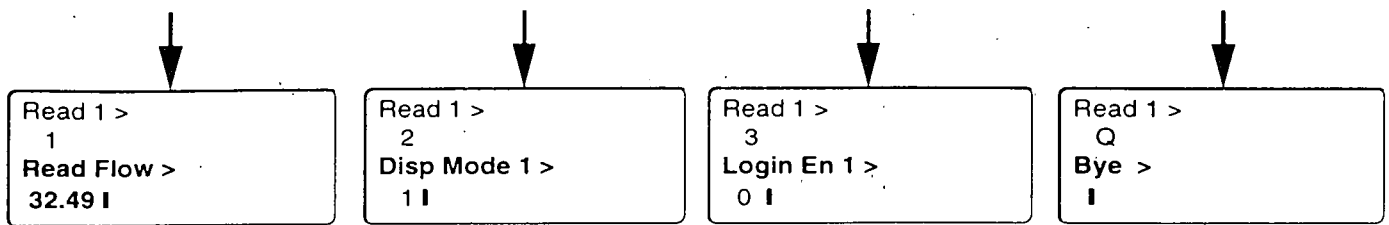
### 3.3 Looking at the Main Menu



### 3.4 Choosing a Main Menu Item



## CONFIGURING THE TRANSMITTER...

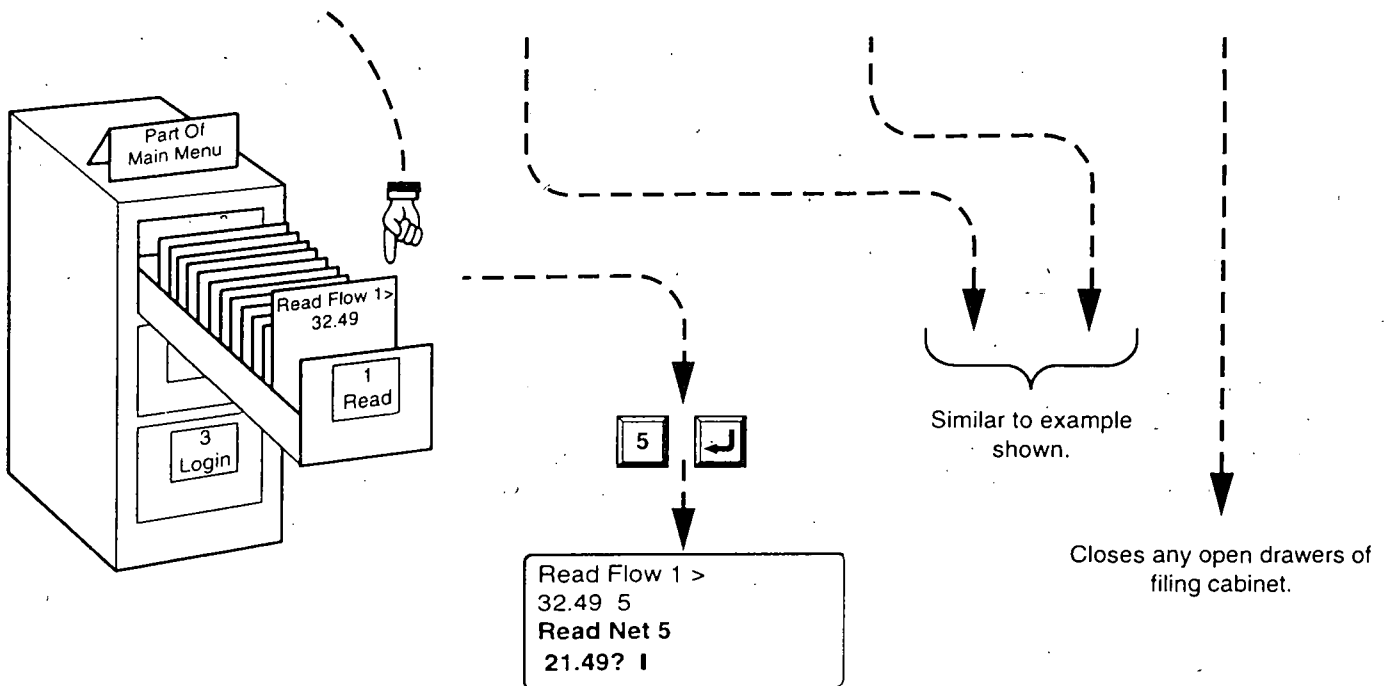


'Read Flow' (Item 1 of 'Read' menu) opened and parameter value displayed.

'Disp Mode' (Item 1 of 'Disp' menu) opened and parameter value displayed.

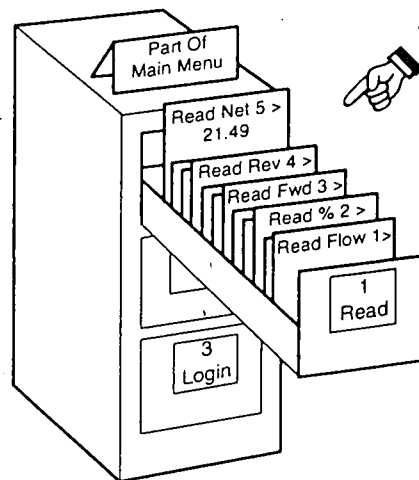
'Login En' (Item 1 of 'Login' menu) opened and parameter value displayed.

'Quit'



'Read Net' (Item 5 of 'Read' menu) opened and parameter value displayed.

FILING CABINET ANALOGY



## ...2 CONFIGURING THE TRANSMITTER

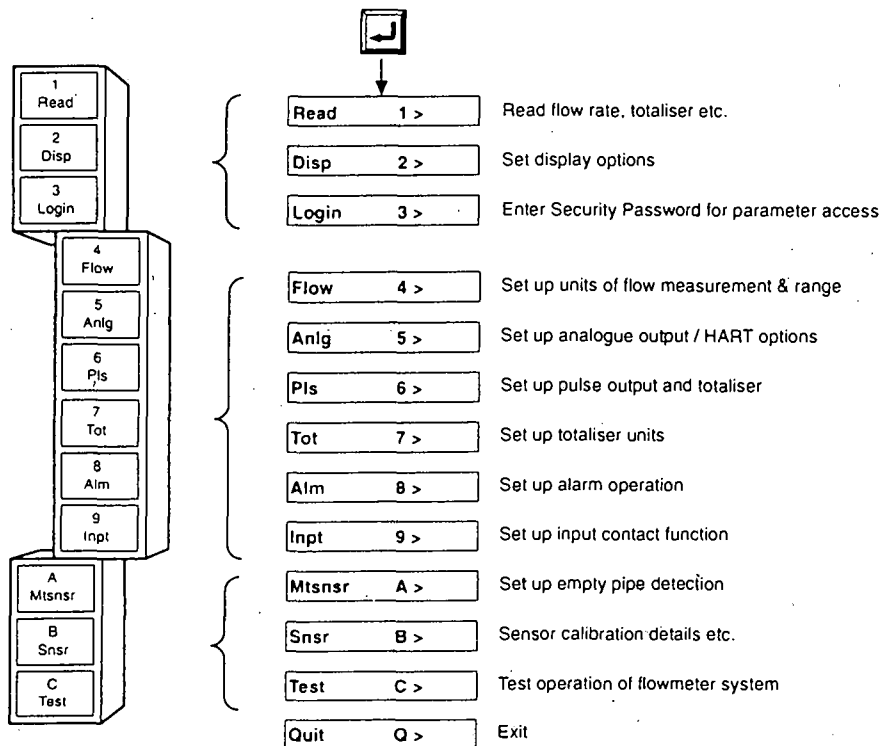
### 3.5 The Main Menu

#### SECURITY ACCESS

No security password required  
(Level '0')

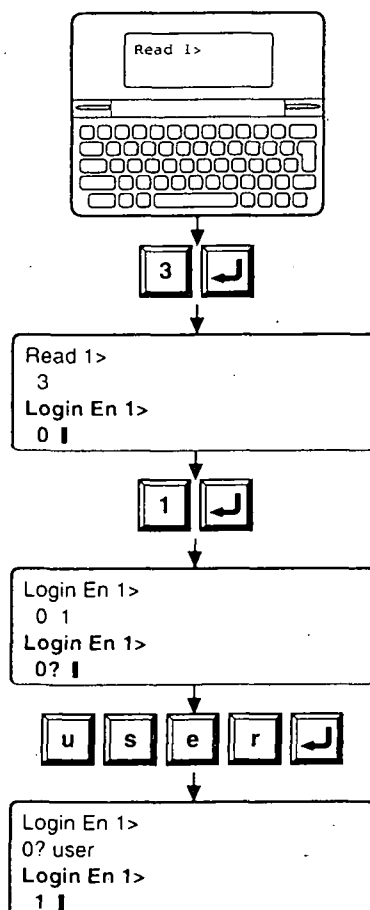
User security password required  
(Level '1')

Engineer security password required  
(Level '2')



### 3.6 Password Access

#### 3.6.1 Gaining access to the user level



#### ★ Note.

The passwords shown below ('user' and 'engineer') are the factory default settings: you can change these for increased security, if required.

From '3.1 Getting Started'

Entering '3' accesses 'Login' item from Main Menu.

Entering '1' accesses Login Enable parameter.

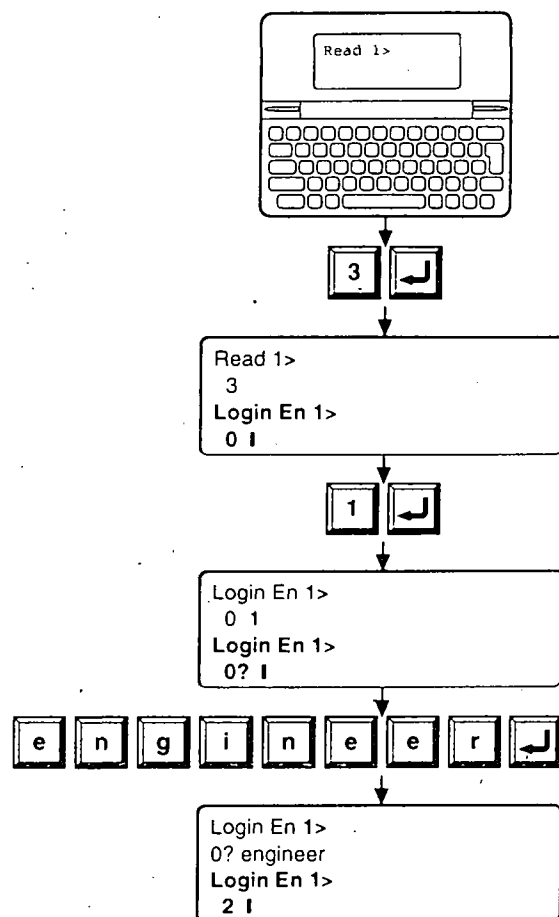
'?' shows that you can change the '0' security level value.

Entering password 'user' accesses level 1 security level.  
Note the use of lower case in this example. All passwords are case sensitive.

'1' indicates security access level 1 is now in operation.

## 2 CONFIGURING THE TRANSMITTER...

### 3.6.2 Gaining Access to the Engineer Level



From '3.1 Getting Started'.

Entering '3' accesses 'Login' item from Main Menu.

'0' indicates security access level 0 is in operation.

Entering '1' accesses Login Enable parameter.

'?' shows that you can change the '0' level value.

Entering password 'engineer' accesses level 2 security level. Note the use of lower case in this example. All passwords are case sensitive.

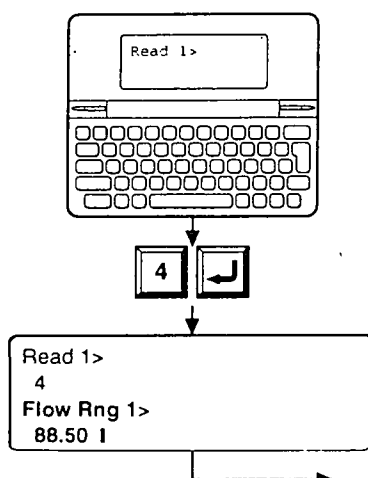
'2' indicates security access level 2 is in operation.

### 3.7 Changing the Value of a Parameter

#### 3.7.1 Numerical Value Parameters



**Note.** Many parameters, e.g. the flowrate, are calculated internally, and the new value entered will therefore be ignored.

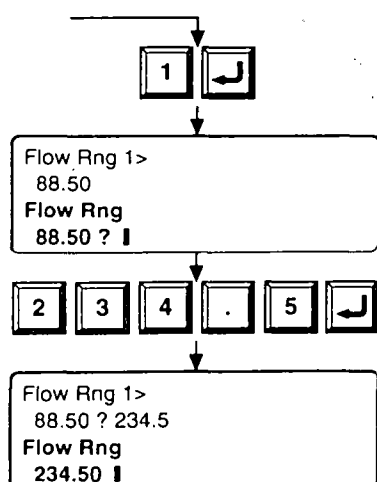


From 3.5.1 or 3.5.2, after gaining 'user' or 'engineer' access.

Entering '4' accesses Flow sub-menu from Main Menu: Item 1 (Flow Range) displayed.

'88.50' indicates present 100% Flow Range or 'Upper Range Value' ('URV')

## ...2 CONFIGURING THE TRANSMITTER




Entering '1' selects this parameter.

'?' shows that you can change this value.

Enter a new value of % Flow Range.

New range setting of 234.5 now in use.

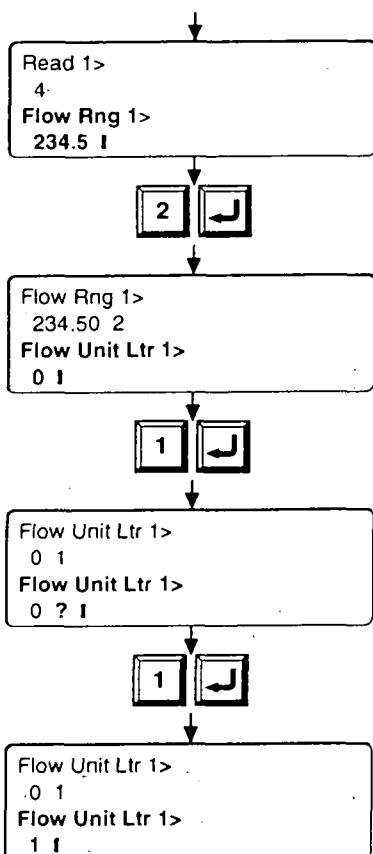


**Note.** When a '?' prompt is showing, press  to leave current value unaltered.

### 3.7.2 Logic ('1' or '0') Value Parameters (excluding Alarm Parameters)



**Note.** Flow units are mutually exclusive in that only one unit can be selected at any one time. All other units are automatically deselected.



Entering '4' as above in 3.7.1 accesses Flow sub-menu.

Entering '2' accesses item 2 (Flow Units) of the Flow sub-menu.

'0' shows that this Flow Unit parameter (Litres) is not selected.  
1 = Unit selected; 0 = Unit not selected.

Entering '1' accesses Flow Unit Ltr parameter 1.

'?' shows that you can change this logic '0' value.

Entering '1' selects this 'units' parameter.  
(All other parameters in the Flow Unit sub-menu automatically change to '0').

'1' indicates that litre flow units have been selected.



## ...2 CONFIGURING THE TRANSMITTER

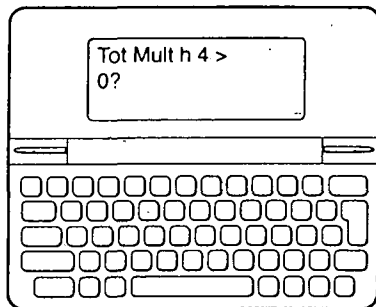
### 3.7.3 Alarm Parameters

**\*** **Note.** Alarm Parameters are selected with a '1' and deselected with a '0' as shown in the previous flow unit types, but any combination of Alarm Parameters may be selected or deselected as required. Automatic deselection of parameters not required does not take place with alarm parameters.

### 3.8 Advanced Techniques

#### 3.8.1 Fast Selection of Parameters

Refer to the B1.1 Parameter Tree Structure diagram.



To select 'Flow Unit lGal' from **any** parameter (e.g. Tot Mult h):

Pressing the ESCAPE key resets the prompt to the START position. 4 2 3 routes the prompt through the required menus to the Flow Unit Menu.

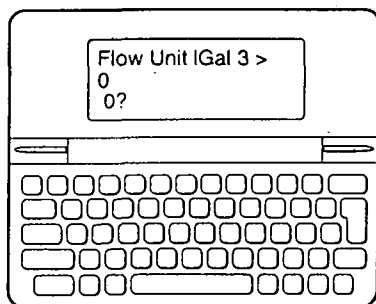
'0' indicates that the gallon units are not selected.

? indicates that it is possible to change the value to a '1' if required.

Any route through the tree structure can be similarly processed if the associated numbers and/or letters for the route is known.

e.g. ESC 8 3 1 followed by ENTER will allow the High Alarm Trip Level to be altered.

#### 3.8.2 Fast Selection plus Data Entry



!>532 \* 1  
Anlg Dir Rev2> 1

To select 'Reverse Analogue Direction parameter'

Pressing the ESCAPE key resets the prompt to the START position.

5 3 2 routes the prompt through the required menus to the **Reverse Analogue Direction** parameter.

\* simulates the ENTER key without terminating the sequence, which would occur if the normal ENTER key were used. '1' is entered to select the parameter.

**\*** **Note.** Any other necessary data can be entered at this point; e.g. with the correct routing, a password could be entered. (31\* user)

The enter key completes the command.

## APPENDIX A

### A1.1 Programming The Transmitter with a Data Terminal

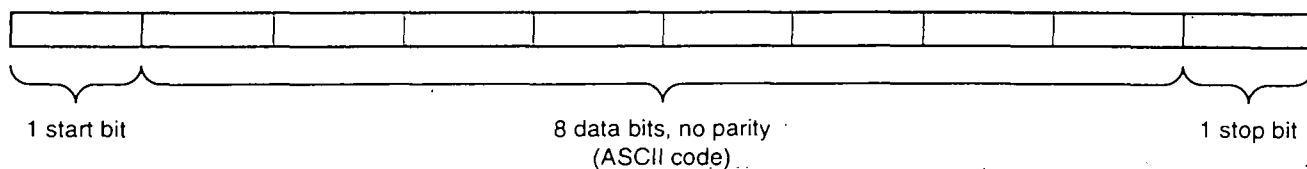
The nine-pin transmitter front panel connector is compatible with most serial devices, e.g. PSION Organiser, IBM PC, using proprietary adaptors where required. This connection is for 'local' use only, i.e. for up to approximately 5 metres between transmitter and data terminal.

The optional RS422/423 interface may be used for considerably greater distances (see **Installation Manual** for connections).

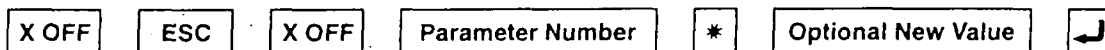
Most serial data terminals may be connected to the transmitter providing that the following three requirements are met:

1. The data rate (transmit and receive) is 4800 Baud.

2. The data format is:



3. Format for computer entry is as above plus the control codes to alter response are typically as follows:



Where 'X OFF' suppresses character echo and the reply consists of the value only.

'ESC' forces the parameter number to start from the top of the Menu Tree.

'\*' Separates the Parameter Number from the New Value.

**N.B.** If no value is entered before pressing ENTER, RETURN etc, the current value is retained.

X ON and/or ENTER will cancel the X OFF control.

Consult the Handbook for your particular terminal device.

### A1.2 Using Personal Computers with MagMaster

Many communications software packages are available and in use, and can be used to interface with the MagMaster™.

The following is a sample of typical communications programmes and setup details for interfacing with the MagMaster™.

A personal computer can be used to communicate with MagMaster to set up its operating parameters. The only requirements are:

- 1) The computer can be any make or type (eg. Apple, BBC, Atari, Amiga, PC etc.) but it must be equipped with a serial communications port capable of operation at 4800 baud. (RS232C is the most common type). Most computers are fitted with this as standard. It is not possible to give specific instructions for all types of computer, because of the large number of computers available, but reference to the instructions of the machine to be used will provide the necessary information. A "dumb terminal", usually found connected to a mainframe computer, can also be used for configuring MagMaster.
- 2) The computer must be equipped with Terminal emulation software. In many machines (for example the BBC computer) this is built in, in others (IBM PC and AT for example) this has to be added. The software is not special in any way and there are many programmes on the market which provide or include this function, all of which are suitable for MagMaster use. Typical examples for the IBM PC/AT are:

Central Point's PC Tools	(Desktop Telecommunications)
Microsoft Windows	(Built in Terminal Emulator)
Odyssey	(Shareware programme)
Procomm Plus	(Shareware programme)
VBC.EXE	(ABB Kent-Taylor)
AQUAMAG.EXE	(VBC.EXE upgrade)

## APPENDIX A...

In all cases the Comms port parameters need to be set up as below; this function is normally provided as part of the software package being used.

**Settings**

Baud rate 4800  
 Data bits 8  
 Stop bits 1  
 Parity NONE  
 Handshaking NONE (OR RTS/CTS)  
 COMMS PORT As appropriate (COM1, COM2 etc.)

**Interconnection details**

9-pin to 9-pin		9-pin to 25-pin	
2	3	2	2
3	2	3	3
4	6	4	6
5	5	5	7
6	4	6	20
7	8	7	5
8	7	8	4

The most common reason for lack of communication between a MagMaster and a computer or terminal, assuming that everything is set up as above, is the interconnecting lead. The correct lead to use is a LAPLINK lead, also known as a NULL MODEM. This is a lead which is designed to connect the communication ports of two computers together, and therefore the internal wiring "crosses over" (see **Interconnection Details** above). A serial printer lead will therefore not be suitable.

However, where the incorrect lead has been fitted, correct operation will normally result if the wires on pins 2 and 3 of one of the connectors are swapped over. **N.B.** A suitable lead (which also permits operation with certain Toshiba Laptop PCs) is available from ABB Kent-Taylor – see Book 6 Spares and Accessories.

**A1.2.1 PC Tools**

From the 'Desktop: Telecommunications' utility, use 'Edit: Create new entry' to enter the serial settings as required above and use 'Modem: Setup' to select the COMMS Port.

Use F8 or select 'Manual' to run the utility as a terminal emulator. Press ALT and ESC together once (the MENU bar will show 'ALT-ESC On'). This will allow the ESC key to be used with MagMaster.

**A1.2.2 Windows 'TERMINAL'**

Use 'Settings: Communications' to set up terminal settings as above.



**Note.** Avoid using the backspace key for editing, as this produces misleading results with the Windows Terminal display. Use the Delete key instead for this function.


**A1.2.3 Odyssey and Procomm Plus**

Use the Port and Setup menus to configure the settings as above.

**A1.2.4 'VBC' and 'Aquamag'**

These two programmes are very similar and provide a basic, but totally adequate, communication facility for MagMaster. The programmes are configured ready to use with COM1. They will also terminate if the serial port is not connected.

**A1.3 Quick Set-up for Psion Series 3**

The following instructions are a quick guide to setting up a Psion Series-3 for use with a MagMaster. Refer to the Psion Series-3 Instruction Manuals for full information. These steps are only necessary the first time that the Series 3 is used. If your Psion Series 3 was supplied by ABB Kent-Taylor, the Comms. Application will have been installed. Locate 'MagMastr' under the COMMS icon and press ; otherwise proceed as follows:

## ...APPENDIX A

- 1) Fit batteries to Organiser as described in Series 3 User guide page 3. Note ERRATUM sheet, if any, packed with unit.
- 2) Use the **Esc** key to turn it on and then use **↑** and **↓** keys, followed by **Enter** to select the language required (most models have this facility).
- 3) There may be a warning that the Backup battery is low, if so this can be ignored at this stage. (a new backup battery should be fitted later – see manual). If this happens press the **Esc** key.
- 4) To ensure sufficient memory is available (128k Model), close down the applications 'Data', 'Word', 'World', 'Calc' and 'Agenda' as follows:

Move the highlight block with **←** or **→** to application, press **Delete**, followed by **Y**.

Switch off by holding down **⏻** and **1** together.

Assemble the Psion 3-link cable as described in the 3-link manual page 2 onwards and plug it into the connector on the left side of the Series 3.

- 6) Press **Esc** to switch on again, this will give the system screen, showing the applications available. Press the Menu key, and use the **←** and **→** keys to select the "Apps" menu (the centre menu). Select "Install application" by using the **↑** and **↓** keys then press **Enter**.

Short cut: from the system screen, hold down **⏻** and press **1**.

- 7) Press **↓** key to select disk and then **←** and **→** to select "C". The top line should now show "Comms.app". If so press **Enter**. (If not press the **↑** and then use the **←** and **→** keys to select it, then press **Enter**). A new icon will appear, a picture of the organiser connected to a computer.
- 8) If necessary, use the cursor keys to highlight "Comms[C]" and press **Enter** to run the communications application. One of two possibilities will occur:
  - a) The screen will blank briefly and then a box containing a flashing cursor will appear, together with a message "Online..." Proceed to step 9.
  - b) A message "No system memory" appears. See step 4 above.

Move the highlight back to "Comms[C]" and repeat step 8.

- 9) Hold down **⏻** and press **J**. Use the cursor (**←** **→** **↑** and **↓**) keys to make Serial Port settings as below:

### Set Serial Port

* Baud rate	4800
* Data bits	8
* Stop bits	1
* Parity	none
* Ignore parity	yes

Press **Enter** when finished.

- 10) Hold down **⏻** and press **K** to set up handshakes as below.

### Set Serial Handshake

* Xon/Xoff	off
* Rts/Cts	off
* Dsr/Dtr	off
* Dcd	off

- 11) Press the **⏻** and **O** keys, followed by **↓**, **←**, **→** to select drive 'Internal' and then press **↑**.

Type in a suitable name, eg. 'MagMastr' (8 characters max.) and press **Enter**, to save the settings for future use.

The Series 3 is now ready for use with the MagMaster transmitter, as described in this Configuration Manual.

## APPENDIX A...

## A1.4 Setup for Psion Organiser II (CM, XP, LZ, LZ64)



**Note.** It is recommended that the mains adapter is used to power the 'Organiser' where possible.

1. Connect the Psion Organiser Communications Link Adapter to the MagMaster Transmitter using a suitable adapter lead consisting of a 25-pin D-Type plug to 9-pin D-Type socket (available as a Psion accessory).
2. Scroll through the following list of items which will be shown on the 'screen' in the Comms 'SETUP' mode.

BAUD	4800
PARITY	NONE
BITS	8
STOP	1
HAND	NONE
PROTOCOL	NONE
ECHO	HOST
WIDTH	NONE
TIMEOUT	NONE
REOL	<CR><LF>
REOF	NONE
RTRN	NONE
TEOL	<CR>
TEOF	NONE
TTRN	NONE

Enter the following numbers to give the operations shown in the above:



13,10            <CR><LF>

13                <CR>



Select 'TERM' from the 'Comms' menu to allow communication with the MagMaster Transmitter.  
Set COMMS to 'No Handshaking', 'No translations'.

Set the MagMaster Display Mode (Parameter '21') to '1'. (Refer to 3.6 Changing the Value of a Parameter in this manual).

## A1.4.1 Keyboard Designations (Psion Organiser II)

Function	Key
	EXE
DEL	DEL
ESC	 + A



**Note.** The  and  keys cannot be used, as these enable and disable the Organiser data output. Consult the Psion Organiser handbook for further information.

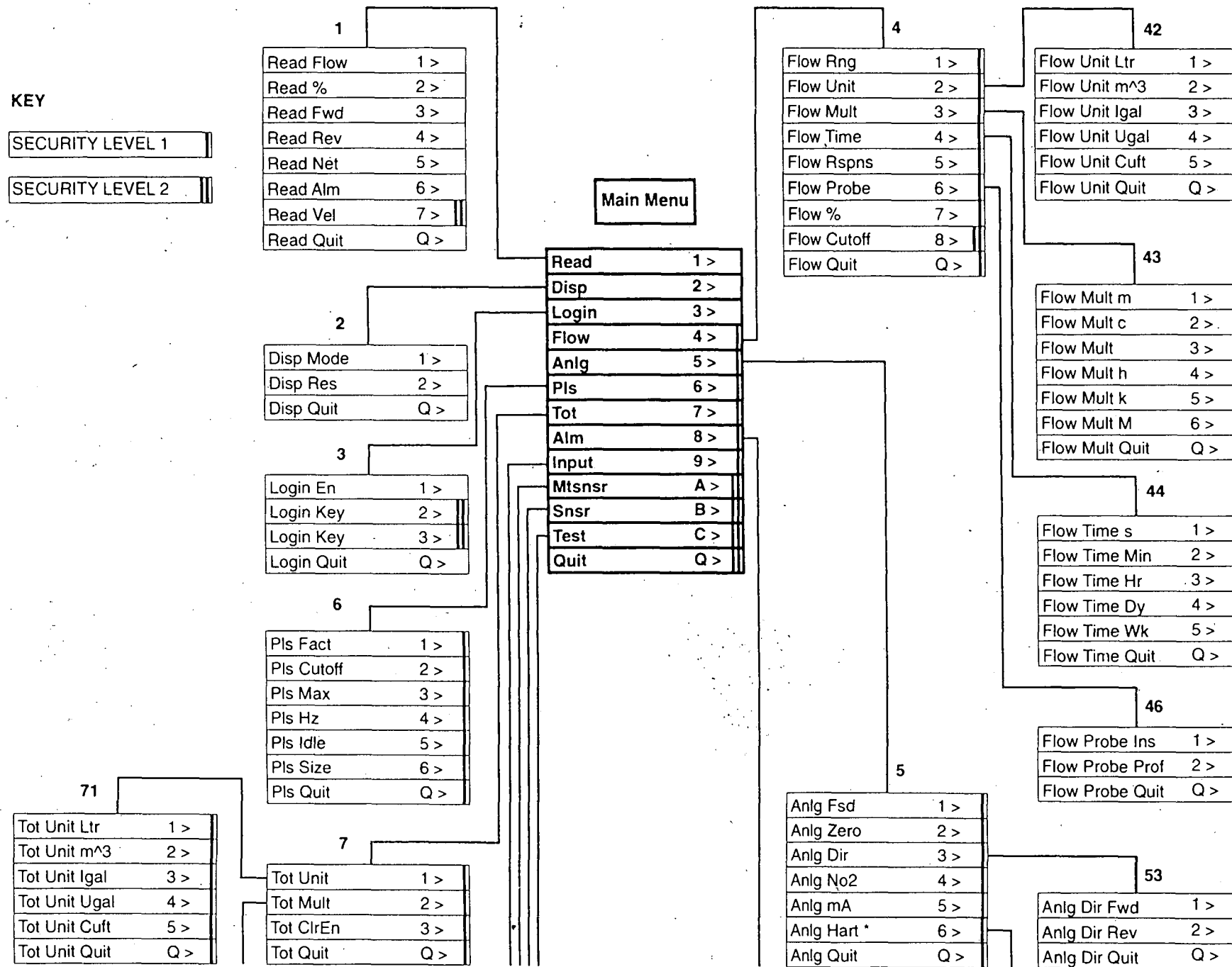
# APPENDIX B

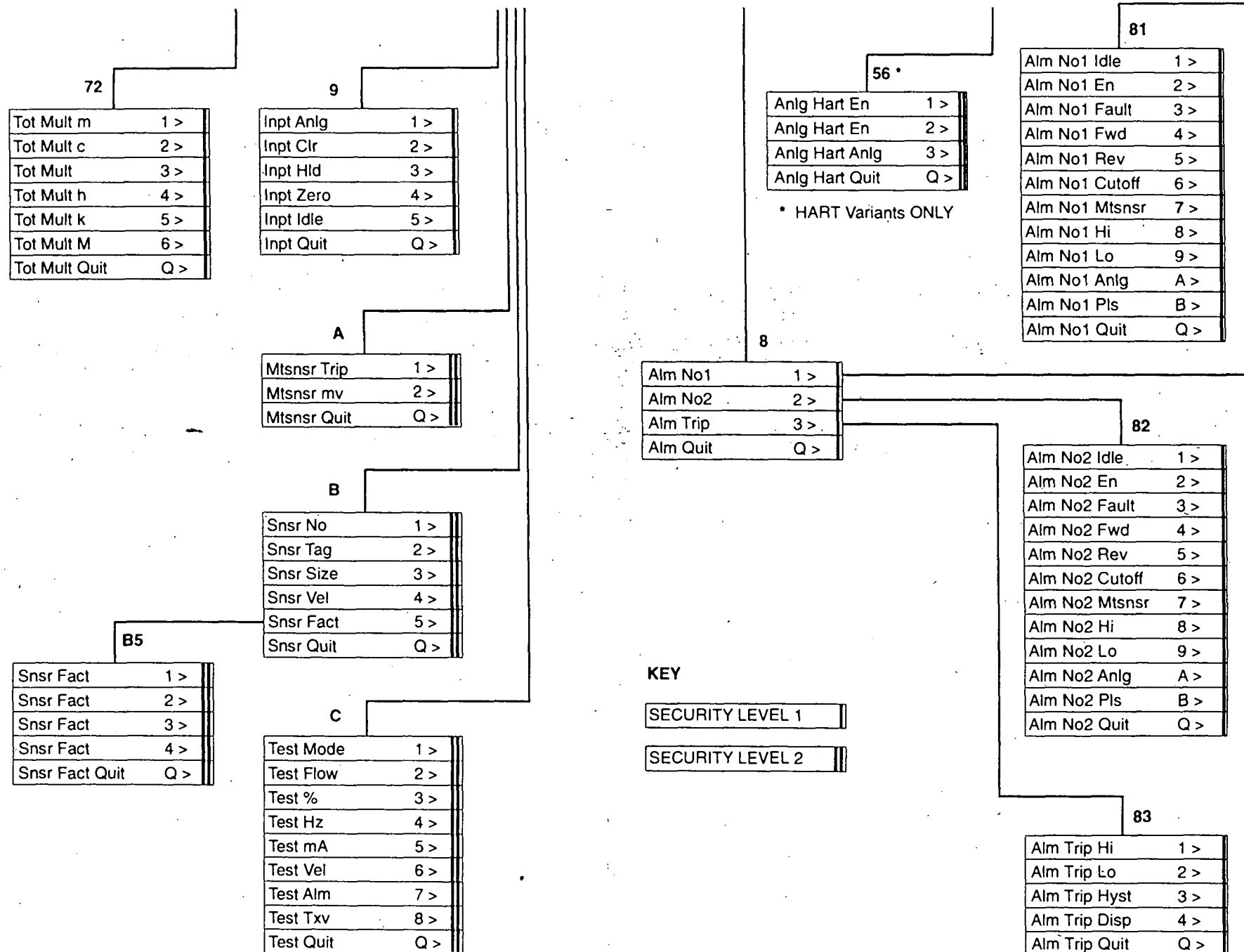
## B1.1 Parameter Tree Structure

### KEY

SECURITY LEVEL 1

SECURITY LEVEL 2





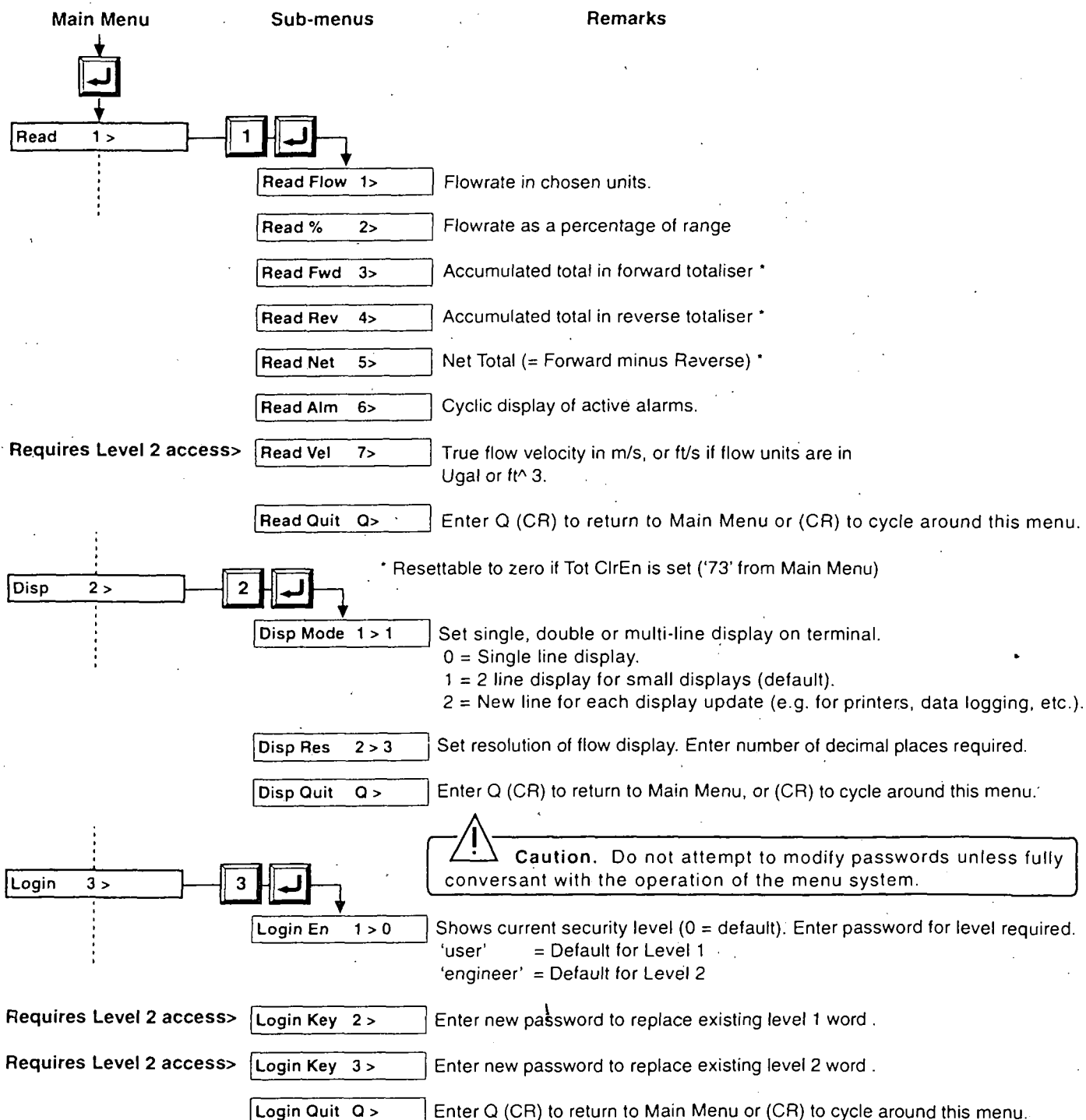
## ...APPENDIX B

### B1.2 Description of Parameters

Select the access number or letter, of any of the items in the Main Menu, followed by a CR (RETURN etc), to access its associated sub-menu. It is not necessary for the parameter to be displayed to select it by number.

**\*** **Note.** The correct security level must be selected in **Login** parameter below to access certain parameters. See headings in this description or access notes against individual parameters.

Select the access number or letter of any item in a sub-menu, followed by a CR, to read the value or to change it as necessary. (CR)s without an access code cycles through a menu continuously without accessing a parameter. All 'live' data displayed is updated each second.



**\*** **Note.** Access level selected is reset to Level 0 after a 'Quit' from Main Menu.



## 2 ACCESSORIES AND SPARES...

Table 2.1 Fuses

Component Ref.	Part No.	Description	Supplier	Approvals	
				IEC	BS
F1 - DC	B6490	FUSE 3.15A AS.T 20mm	SHURTER 034-3122	IEC 127/111	BS4265
			BUSSMAN S506/3.15A	IEC 127/111	UL BS4265
F1 - AC	B7721	FUSE 500mA AS.T 20mm	SHURTER 034-3114	IEC 127/111	BS4265
			BUSSMAN S504/500MA	IEC 127/111	UL BS4265
			BUSSMAN S506/500MA	IEC 127/111	UL BS4265

Table 2.2 Gaskets (for Hygienic Flowmeters)

Meter Size	Part No.	
	EPDM	Nitrile Rubber
20mm (0.75in)	MRAX2708	MRAX2808
25mm (1in)		
40mm (1.5in)	MRAX2711	MRAX2811
50mm (2in)	MRAX2712	MRAX2812
65mm (2.5in)	MRAX2713	MRAX2813
80mm (3in)	MRAX2714	MRAX2814

## ...2 ACCESSORIES AND SPARES

### 2.2 AquaMag and AquaProbe

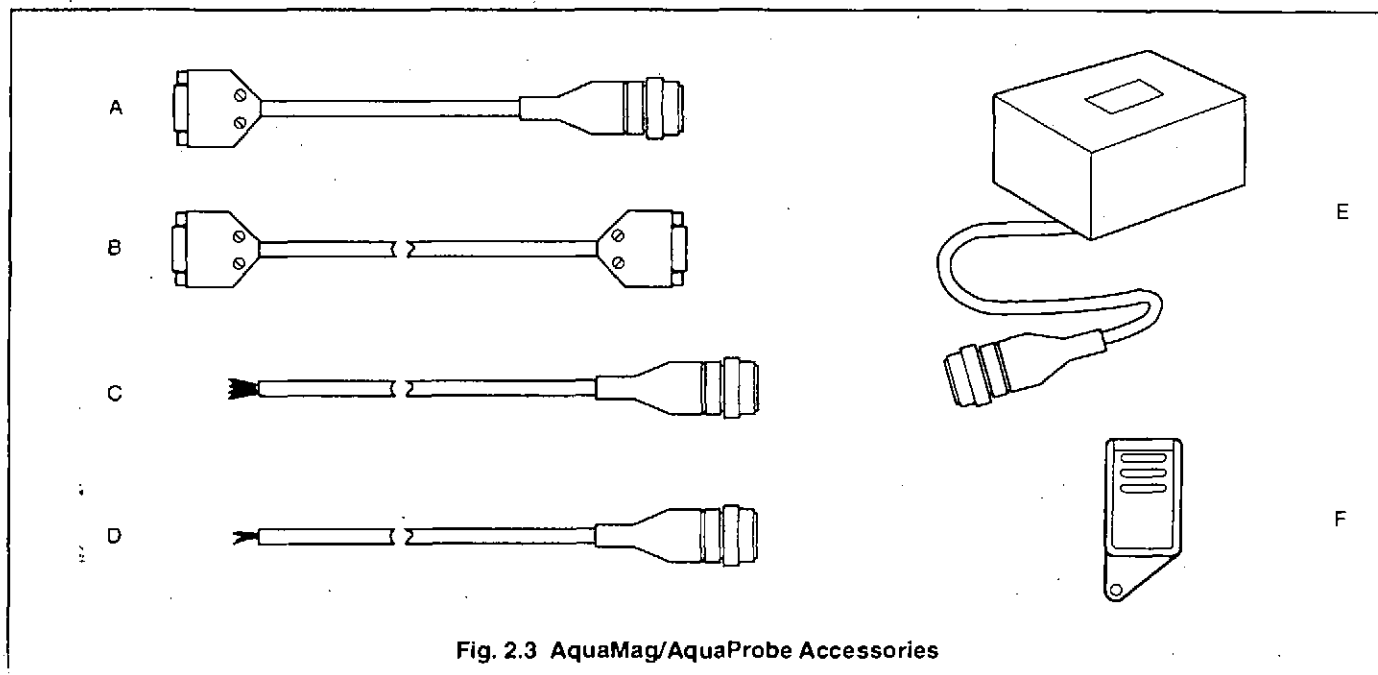


Fig. 2.3 AquaMag/AquaProbe Accessories

- A Communication adaptor (to connect to Psion Organiser etc.)
- B Serial Data Lead (to connect PC to 'A' above)
- C Output Cable Assembly (14-core plus screen)
- D Power Supply Lead
- E Battery Pack
- F Display Operating Wand

WEBC 0004  
WEBC 0003  
MVBX 99147  
STT 3162  
STT 3310  
MEBX 9902

#### 2.2.1 AquaProbe Replacement Parts

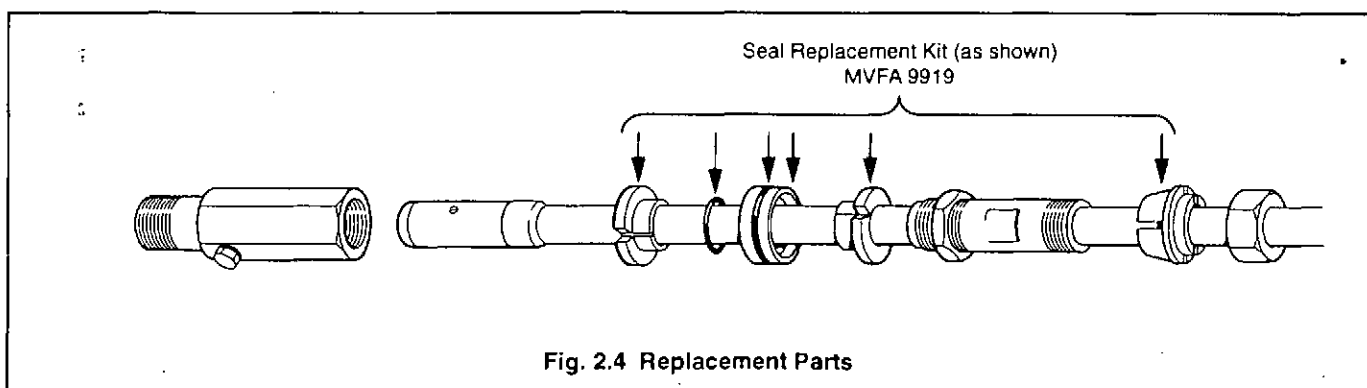


Fig. 2.4 Replacement Parts

## PRODUCTS AND SERVICING

### A Comprehensive Instrumentation Range

**Sensors, transmitters and related instruments for flow, temperature, pressure, level and other process variables**

**Flowmeters**

electromagnetic, ultrasonic, turbine, differential pressure, wedge, rotary shunt, coriolis.

**Differential Pressure transmitters**

electronic and pneumatic.

**Temperature**

sensors and transmitters, fibre optic systems.

**Pressure transmitters.**

**Level**

sensors and controllers.

**Tank gauging systems.**

**Cable-length measuring systems.**

**Indicators, recorders, controllers and process management systems**

**Recorders**

circular and strip-chart types (single and multi-point) for temperature, pressure, flow and many other process measurements.

**Controllers**

digital display, electronic, pneumatic. Discrete single-loop and multi-loop controllers which can be linked to a common display station, process computer or personal computer.

**Pneumatic panel or rack-mounted display and control instrumentation**

**Liquid and gas monitors and analysers for on-line and laboratory applications**

**Sensors**

pH, redox, selective ion, conductivity and dissolved oxygen.

**Transmitters**

Online pH, conductivity, and dissolved oxygen transmitters and associated sensing systems.

**Monitors and Analysers**

for water quality monitoring in environmental, power generation and general industrial applications including: pH, conductivity, ammonia, nitrate, phosphate, silica, sodium, chloride, fluoride, dissolved oxygen and hydrazine.

**Packaged analytical instrumentation laboratories.**

**Gas analysers**

Zirconia, paramagnetic, infrared, thermal conductivity.

### Servicing

ABB Kent-Taylor provides a comprehensive after sales service via a Worldwide Service Organisation. Contact one of the following offices for details on your nearest Service and Repair Centre.

**United Kingdom**

London

ABB Kent-Taylor Limited

Tel: (01480) 470781

Fax: (01480) 470787

**United States of America**

Rochester

ABB Kent-Taylor Inc.

Tel: (716) 2926050

Fax: (716) 2736207

**Italy**

Lenno (Como)

ABB Kent-Taylor SpA

Tel: (0344) 58111

Fax: (0344) 56278



# 1 CENELEC & SAA APPROVED FLOWMETERS...

## EXTRACT FROM EECS NEWSLETTER NUMBER 15 (OCTOBER 1991)

Certification of intrinsically safe apparatus for use at non-atmospheric pressure.





The certification of intrinsically safe electromagnetic flowmeters and like devices which have probes protruding into the process fluids have given us cause for concern for some time. The problem stems from the possibility of voids which contain flammable atmospheres occurring within the process fluid. If the user can guarantee that such voids will not occur, then the inside of the pipe or vessel can be classified as a safe area and no further precautions are needed. If voids may occur but the pressure is not greater than atmospheric, then the problem is already taken care of by the intrinsic safe certification of the circuit of which the probes form a part. Unfortunately, the pressure in the pipe or vessel is almost certainly above atmospheric, and this is where the problem really lies. The intrinsic safety Standard is written and provides data only for explosive mixtures at atmospheric pressure. We do know that as the pressure of an explosive mixture increases, the minimum ignition energy (MIC) required to initiate an explosion, decreases. The amount of information which we have available on this topic is very limited, but we do know that the MIC decreases at an alarming rate as the pressure increases. EECS put the problem to the members of the Heads of Testing Laboratories Working Group (HOTL) and after some discussion, the unanimous conclusions were as follows:

- Certificates of conformity with the European Standard are valid only for apparatus which operates at atmospheric pressure;
- the manufacturer must be informed that any certificate of conformity will not be valid for cases where the apparatus is exposed to pressures significantly above atmospheric;
- a national or inspection certificate may be issued for the apparatus if testing (with the appropriate factors of safety) shows that it is safe for use at the specified elevated pressure.

We have discussed this recommendation with the BASEEFA Advisory Council who have agreed that, if satisfactory measures to prevent the occurrence of voids cannot be taken, we should advise applicants of the limitations of certification of equipment of this type and ask them for confirmation that any danger arising from this source has been recognised and catered for.

Reproduced from EECS Newsletter No. 15 courtesy EECS, Buxton, Derbyshire

## 1.6 The Approval Certificate

 British Approvals Service for Electrical Equipment in Flammable Atmospheres	
<b>Certificate of Conformity</b>	
1.	
2. BAS No Ex 91C2413	
3. This certificate is issued for the electrical apparatus:	
THE MF SERIES HA3 ELECTROMAGNETIC FLOWMETER	
4. manufactured and submitted for certification by:	
ABB KENT TAYLOR LIMITED of Gloucestershire, GL10 3TA	
5. This electrical apparatus and any acceptable variation thereto is specified in the Schedule to this Certificate and the documents therein referred to.	
6. BASEEFA being an Approved Certification Body in accordance with Article 14 of the Council Directive of the European Communities of 18 December 1973 (76/117/EEC) certifies that the apparatus has been found to comply with harmonised European Standards	
EN50 014 (1977) + Amendments 1 to 5 EN50 019 + Amendments 1 to 3 EN50 020 (1977) + Amendments 1 and 2 EN50 028 (1987)	
and has successfully met the examination and test requirements as recorded in confidential Report	
No 91(C)123	
7. The apparatus marking shall include the code	
EEx e m ia IIC T4 (Tamb = 60°C)	
File No: EECS 0614/02/012	
Sheet 1/4	
SM	
 Electrical Equipment Certification Service Health and Safety Executive Harpur Hall, Buxton, Derbyshire, S61 7 9NN, United Kingdom Tel: 0798 262111 Fax: 0798 795114 Telex: 668113 RLSD G	
 I. M. CLEARE DIRECTOR EECS 19 February 1992	

Extracts from remaining 'Sheets 2 to 4 of 4 sheets' of CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMITY BAS No Ex 91C2413 dated 19 February 1992.

### APPARATUS

MF Series HA3 Electromagnetic Flowmeter  
 Um = 250V r.m.s.  
 Un = 60V r.m.s.

The apparatus is coded EEx e m ia IIC T4  
 (Tamb = 60°C. Tprocess fluid = 60°C)

### 1.6.1 Variation One

To permit the range of MF Series Electromagnetic flowmeters to be constructed in an alternative manner for the 25mm to 150mm diameter pipes which results in the process pipework not being provided with fixing flanges. This range is designated MF Series HA4 Electromagnetic Flowmeters.

### 1.6.2 Variation Two

To permit the range of MF Series Electromagnetic flowmeters to be extended to include nominal diameters from 200mm to 600mm. This range is designated the MF Series HA5 Electromagnetic Flowmeters.

## ...1 CENELEC AND SAA APPROVED FLOWMETERS

### 1.6.3 Variation Three

To permit the terminal box, enclosing the electrode safety shunt unit, to be mounted on an extended stalk on any of the range of sizes or styles. This provides a thermal gradient when the process fluid temperature exceeds the normally permitted ambient temperature limit or for installations where steam cleaning of pipework may be required. The safety assessment and the code of the apparatus is unaffected by this change but the permitted process fluid temperatures are as follows:

HA3 15mm to 150mm  
EEx e m ia IIC T4  
(Tamb max = 60°C. Tprocess fluid max = 120°C)


HA4 25mm to 150mm  
EEx e m ia IIC T4  
(Tamb max = 60°C. Tprocess fluid max = 120°C)

HA5 200mm to 600mm  
EEx e m ia IIC T4  
(Tamb max = 60°C. Tprocess fluid max = 100°C)



#### Caution.

The actual process fluid temperature limit may be lower depending on the lining option chosen.

EXPLOSION PROTECTED ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT		Certificate No.	Ex 1489
<b>Certificate of Compliance</b>			
This certificate is issued for the electrical equipment:			
Range of Electro-magnetic Flowmeters Series MF Type BA3, 4 and 5			
Submitted for certification by: ABB Kent-Taylor Oldends Lane Schoorhouse CLOS GL10 3TA UNITED KINGDOM			
and manufactured by: ABB Kent-Taylor Pty Ltd			
This electrical equipment and any acceptable variation thereto is specified in the Schedule or Schedules attached hereto and in the documents referred to therein.			
This certifies that the equipment described has been found to comply with AS 2380.1-1989, AS 2380.6-1988, AS 2380.7-1987 and AS 2431-1981.			
TYPE OF PROTECTION: Ex e, ia, m IIC T4 (Tamb 60°C) Class I Zone 1			
This certificate is granted subject to the conditions as set out in Standards Australia Miscellaneous Publication MP42 and any additional conditions as may be prescribed by Standards Australia.			
Test Report No: LOSC 9794A			
File: P/3: 93026.N/73			
Date of Issue: 10 January 1994			
Date of Expiry of Validity: 10 January 2004			
Page 1 of 2			
Signed for and on behalf of Standards Australia			
 General Manager Quality Assurance Services			
This certificate is not transferable and remains the property of Standards Australia and must be returned in the event of its being revoked or not renewed.			
<b>QUALITY ASSURANCE SERVICES</b> Standards Australia <small>Standards Australia Quality Assurance Services Pty Limited A.C.N. 050 611 642</small>			

## 2 FM APPROVED/CSA CERTIFIED FLOWMETERS

## 2 FM & CSA ...

### 2.1 Introduction

The range of hazardous area approved MagMaster Flowmeters are listed in Table 2.1 and 2.2.

Identification and use is shown on certification labels – on the side of the terminal box on remote sensors and a corresponding label on the remote transmitter, or, a label on the transmitter only in the case of an integral transmitter and sensor.

Three versions are offered:

- A remote version consisting of a sensor and transmitter bearing both CSA and FM markings; a major achievement in Hazardous Area approvals. This innovative design employs a multiple zener barrier assembly, the operation of which is transparent in normal use. The barrier is an internal part of the sensor which simplifies installation. The cable entering the Hazardous area is no different to that supplied on the standard product and has no special segregation requirements or any external zener barriers to install, but still offers full Intrinsic Safety inside the pipe section. This version is also certified for use in many other countries worldwide.
- A remote version with CSA markings but with lower installed cost. This offers non-incendive protection inside the pipe section.
- An integral version with CSA markings with still lower installed cost. This offers non-incendive protection inside the pipe.

These three versions are depicted in Table 2.2, with a descriptive title and a designation of duty or location.

### 2.2 Specific Requirements

#### 2.2.1 Supply

Supply to the transmitter must be single phase supply rated at no more than 240 volts. This supply must be fitted with a means of disconnection and be fused with a fuse suitable for the cable employed but not exceeding 35 Amps

#### 2.2.2 Wiring

The safety of the system depends on making reliable connections, and ensuring that connections are checked for being neither loose nor too tight.

#### Sensor wiring

The cable between the remote Sensor and the Transmitter must only be that supplied for the purpose by ABB Kent-Taylor Ltd. Other types of cable may not be substituted, even for part runs. Where joints between cables have to be made (e.g. for repairs, or for junctions in panels etc.) use only the ABB Kent-Taylor junction box (see Accessories and Spares section). The junction box must be approved for the relevant duty.



#### Caution.

The DIV 2 Hazardous (Intrinsically safe electrodes) version has a different sensor terminal connection block to all the other variants. (The terminal box is also larger). For this version only, the bared cable ends must be 10mm (0.4") long, and not 5mm as for all other versions.

### Transmitter wiring

The transmitter is not designed to accept rigid conduit direct entry. If rigid conduit is employed, the last few feet must be run in flexible conduit and the transmitter be fitted with face sealing adaptors of the type specified in this manual. Alternatively, armoured or standard cable may be used with the face sealing cable glands as specified in this manual.

Only the 0.5" NPT glands and adaptors specified in the manual may be used.

### 2.2.3 Environmental Considerations

The required NEMA Enclosure Rating must be maintained.

### 2.2.4 Potting

It is not necessary to pot the remote terminal box unless environmental conditions demand it.

It may be necessary to seal the conduit entry to prevent moisture entering the terminal box via the conduit.

Conduit entries must be sealed if the terminal box is to be potted.

### 2.2.5 General

Only the specified cables and adaptors may be fitted, and in the manner described elsewhere in this manual.

Some of these options may not be suitable for a particular installation. For example, if mechanical damage to cable could occur, only armoured cable or conduit would be used. Local and National requirements may also preclude some of the above methods.

### 2.2.6 MagMaster Sensor Temperature Limits

Table 2.1 Temperature Limits

MagMaster Sensor Description	Type	Std	Ext
Flange type, 15mm to 150mm	HA3	60	120
Wafer type 25mm to 150mm	HA4	60	120
Flange type, 200mm to 600mm	HA5	60	100

Std. Standard temperature versions – Maximum process and ambient temperatures in °C.

Ext. High temperature versions which are fitted with a terminal box extension – Maximum process temperatures in °C; ambient temperature limits remain at 60°C.







#### Note.

Actual process temperature limit may be restricted further by the temperature limit of the lining option chosen.

## ...2 FM AND CSA APPROVED FLOWMETERS

Table 2.2 Typical Labels for FM and CSA Approved Flowmeters

<p>FM/CSA DIV 2 HAZARDOUS REMOTE ONLY</p>	<p>SENSOR</p> <div> <p><b>ABB Kent-Taylor</b> CLASS I, DIV 2 GROUPS A,B,C,D Electrodes are intrinsically safe Enclosure 6P</p> <p>ABB Kent-Taylor Limited Stonehouse, Glos. England GL10 3TA Made in England</p> <p>  APPROVED</p> </div> <p>TRANSMITTER</p> <div> <p><b>ABB Kent-Taylor</b> ABB Kent-Taylor Limited Stonehouse, Glos. England GL10 3TA</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>CODE</td><td>CLASS I, DIV 2 GROUPS A,B,C,D</td></tr> <tr> <td>SER No</td><td>ENCLOSURE 4X</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUPPLY 20VA</td><td></td></tr> </table> <p>FREQUENCY 47 to 440Hz Made in England</p> <p>  APPROVED</p> </div>	CODE	CLASS I, DIV 2 GROUPS A,B,C,D	SER No	ENCLOSURE 4X	SUPPLY 20VA	
CODE	CLASS I, DIV 2 GROUPS A,B,C,D						
SER No	ENCLOSURE 4X						
SUPPLY 20VA							



## PRODUCTS AND SERVICING

### A Comprehensive Instrumentation Range

**Sensors, transmitters and related instruments for flow, temperature, pressure, level and other process variables**

**Flowmeters**

electromagnetic, ultrasonic, turbine, differential pressure, wedge, rotary shunt, coriolis.

**Differential Pressure transmitters**

electronic and pneumatic.

**Temperature**

sensors and transmitters, fibre optic systems.

**Pressure transmitters.**

**Level**

sensors and controllers.

**Tank gauging systems.**

**Cable-length measuring systems.**

**Indicators, recorders, controllers and process management systems**

**Recorders**

circular and strip-chart types (single and multi-point) for temperature, pressure, flow and many other process measurements.

**Controllers**

digital display, electronic, pneumatic. Discrete single-loop and multi-loop controllers which can be linked to a common display station, process computer or personal computer.

**Pneumatic panel or rack-mounted display and control instrumentation**

**Liquid and gas monitors and analysers for on-line and laboratory applications**

**Sensors**

pH, redox, selective ion, conductivity and dissolved oxygen.

**Transmitters**

Online pH, conductivity, and dissolved oxygen transmitters and associated sensing systems.

**Monitors and Analysers**

for water quality monitoring in environmental, power generation and general industrial applications including: pH, conductivity, ammonia, nitrate, phosphate, silica, sodium, chloride, fluoride, dissolved oxygen and hydrazine.

**Packaged analytical instrumentation laboratories.**

**Gas analysers**

Zirconia, paramagnetic, infrared, thermal conductivity.

### Servicing

ABB Kent-Taylor provides a comprehensive after sales service via a Worldwide Service Organisation. Contact one of the following offices for details on your nearest Service and Repair Centre.

**United Kingdom**

London

ABB Kent-Taylor Limited

Tel: (01480) 470781

Fax: (01480) 470787

**United States of America**

Rochester

ABB Kent-Taylor Inc.

Tel: (716) 2926050

Fax: (716) 2736207

**Italy**

Lenno (Como)

ABB Kent-Taylor SpA

Tel: (0344) 58111

Fax: (0344) 56278



# Instruction Manual

## MagMaster™/AquaMag Electromagnetic Flowmeters

### BOOK 2 Mechanical Installation

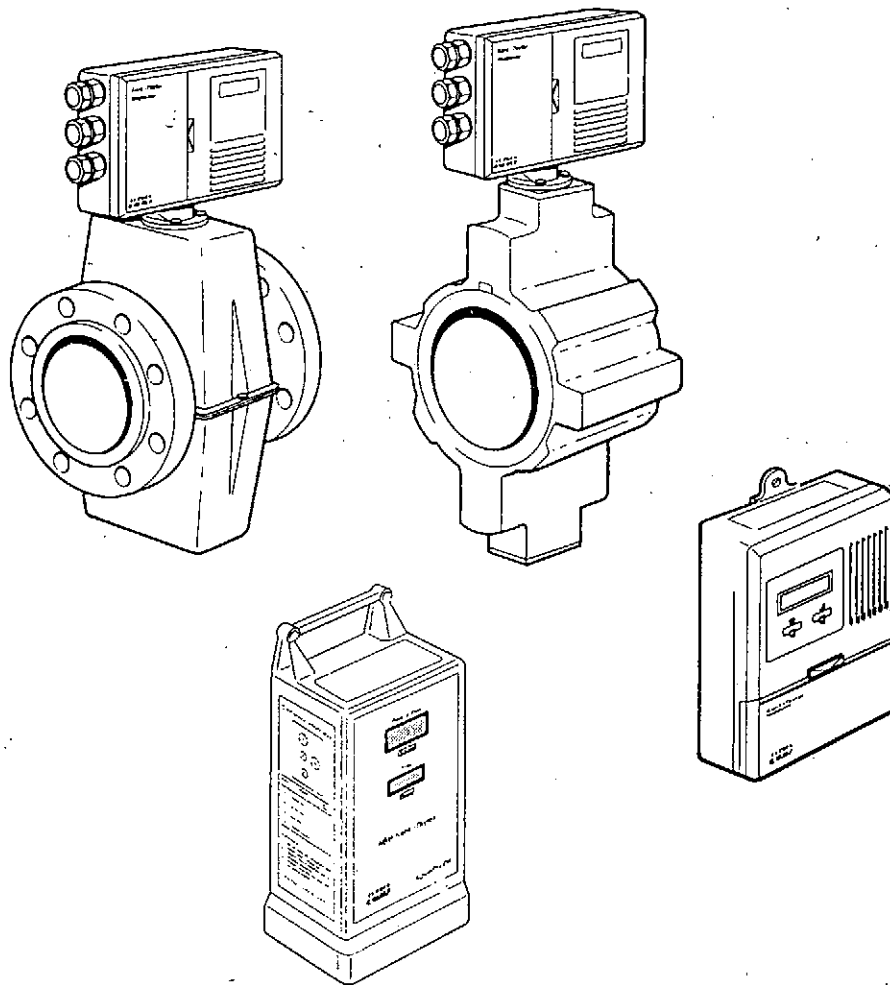


ABB Kent-Taylor



## ABB KENT-TAYLOR



**St Neots**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. Q5907



**Stonehouse**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. FM 21106



**Stonehouse**  
Certificate No. 0255

### The Company

ABB Kent-Taylor is an established world force in process instrumentation offering users a total capability in the wide range of product lines available, backed by the worldwide manufacturing, test, calibration and sales and service facilities that are expected from a market leader.

The quality, accuracy and performance of the Company's products result from over 100 years experience of instrument manufacture, combined with a continuous programme of innovative design and development to incorporate the latest technology.

The NAMES Calibration Laboratory No. 0255(B) is just one of the ten flow calibration plants operated by the Company, and is indicative of ABB Kent-Taylor's dedication to quality and accuracy.

The Company's instrumentation is suitable for a wide range of industrial and scientific applications such as process control, batch processing, power generation, heat treatment, heating and ventilation, laboratories, food, chemical, petrochemical and water industries.

All products are backed by a high standard of technology, service and engineering support, from skilled, experienced sales and design engineers.

### Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 (UK)

Section 6(4) of the above Act requires manufacturers to advise their customers on the safety and handling precautions to be observed when installing, operating, maintaining and servicing their products. Accordingly, the following points must be noted:

1. The relevant sections of these instructions must be read carefully before proceeding.
2. Warning labels on containers and packages must be observed.
3. Installation, operation, maintenance and servicing must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel and in accordance with the information given.
4. Normal safety precautions must be taken to avoid the possibility of an accident occurring when operating in conditions of high pressure and/or temperature.
5. Chemicals must be stored away from heat, protected from temperature extremes and powders kept dry. Normal safe handling procedures must be used.
6. When disposing of chemicals ensure that no two chemicals are mixed.

Safety advice concerning the use of the equipment described in this manual or any relevant hazard data sheets (where applicable) may be obtained from the Company address on the back cover, together with servicing and spares information

### Notice

Information in this manual is intended only to assist our customers in the efficient operation of our equipment. Use of this manual for any other purpose is specifically prohibited and its contents are not to be reproduced in full or part without prior approval of Technical Communications Department, ABB Kent-Taylor.

### Use of Instructions



**Warning.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of injury or death.



**Caution.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of damage to the product, process or surroundings.



**Note.** Clarification of an instruction or additional information.



**Information.** Further reference for more detailed information or technical details.

Although **Warning** hazards are related to personal injury, and **Caution** hazards are associated with equipment or property damage, it must be understood that operation of damaged equipment could, under certain operational conditions, result in degraded process system performance leading to personal injury or death. Therefore, comply fully with all **Warning** and **Caution** notices.

## CONTENTS

### BOOK 2 MECHANICAL INSTALLATION

Contents	Page
<b>SAFETY MEASURES</b> .....	<b>1</b>
<b>1 INTRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>1</b>
<b>2 INSTALLATION CONDITIONS</b> .....	<b>2</b>
<b>3 INSTALLATION</b> .....	<b>4</b>
3.1 Transmitters .....	4
3.1.1 Location .....	4
3.1.2 Mounting .....	4
3.2 Sensors .....	5

## 1 INTRODUCTION

This book describes the mechanical installation of MagMaster™ and AquaMag ranges of electromagnetic flowmeters.

Attention to safety measures, installation conditions and general precautions will ensure trouble free operation.



**Note.** Not all available versions are approved. Mechanical Installation covers general aspects of both approved and non-approved products.



#### **Warning.**

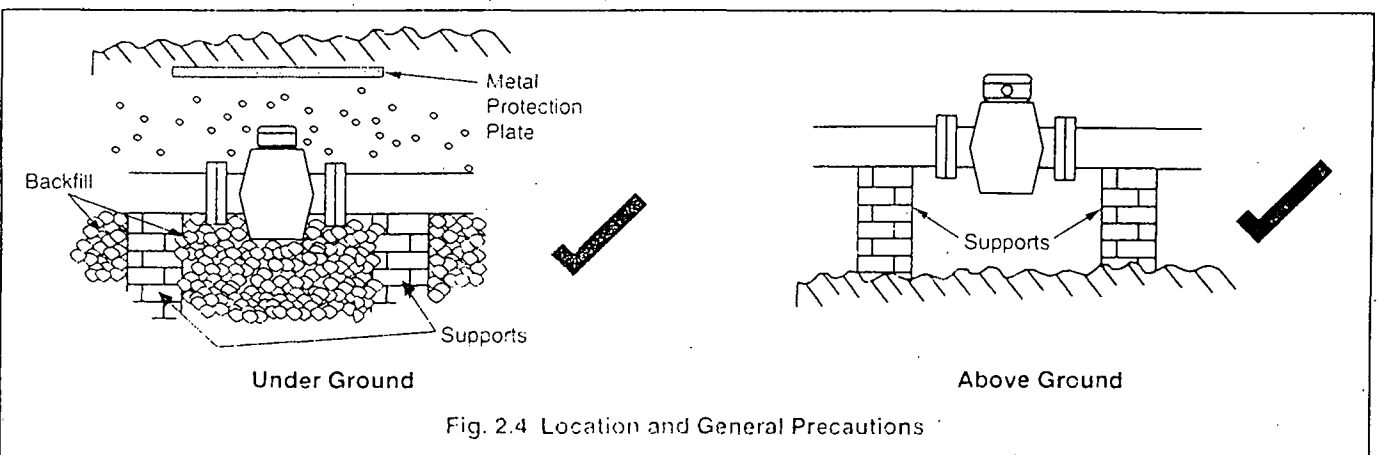
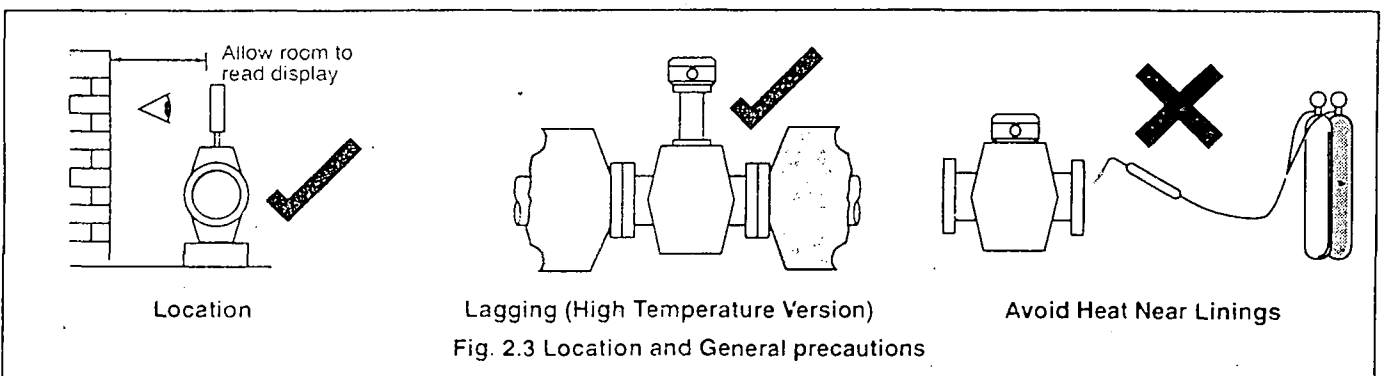
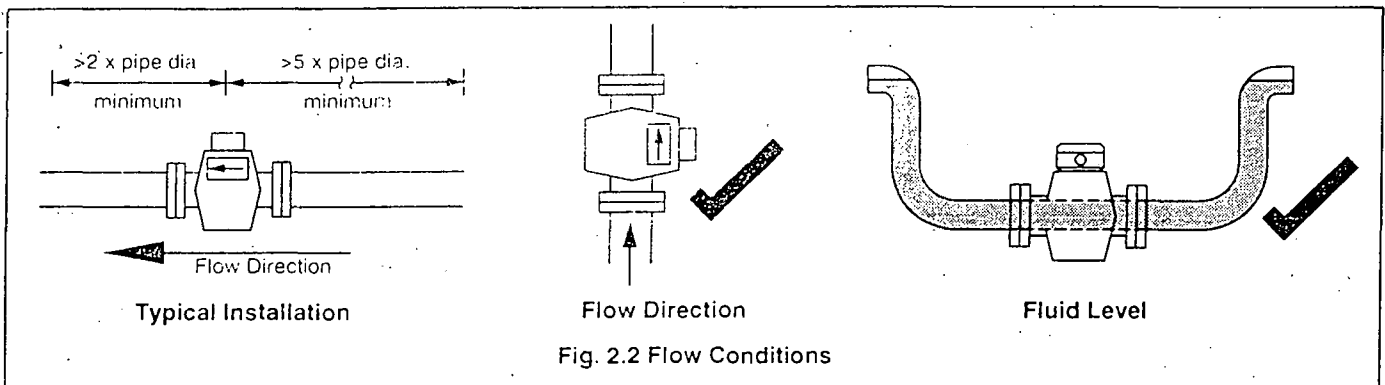
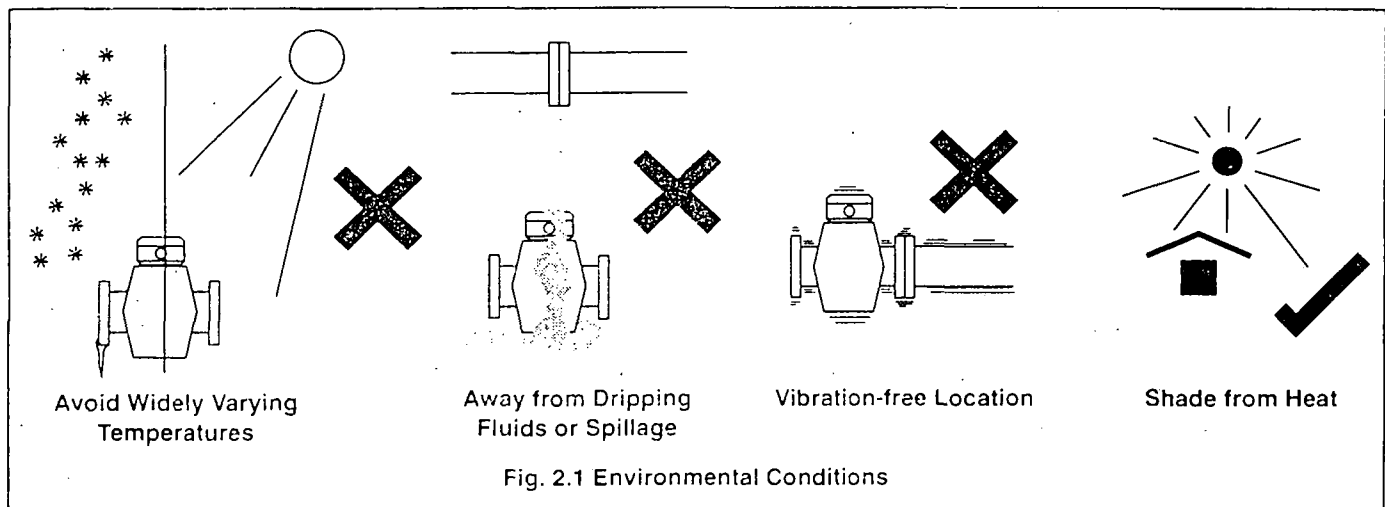
- Installation and maintenance must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel.
- **HAZARDOUS AREA DESIGNATION ON THE EQUIPMENT LABEL MUST BE SUITABLE FOR THE INTENDED DUTY AND LOCATION.**
- All relevant sections of this manual must be read before selecting a location.
- Safety requirements of this equipment, any associated equipment, and the local environment must be taken into consideration.
- The installation and use of this equipment must be in accordance with relevant national and local standards.



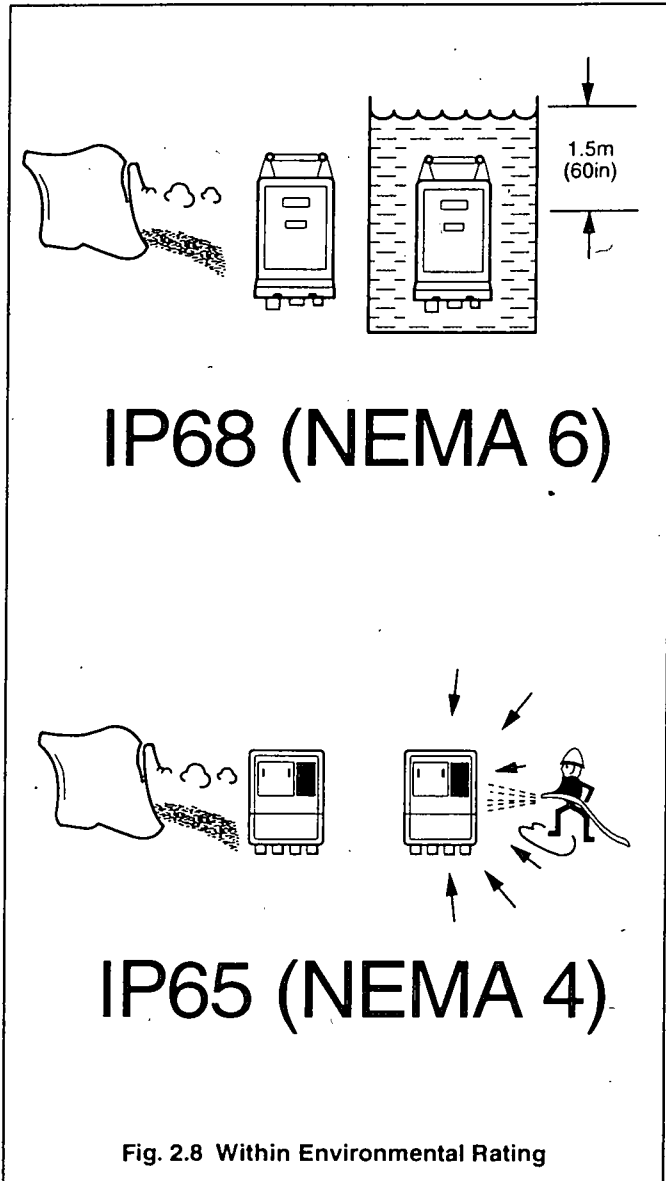
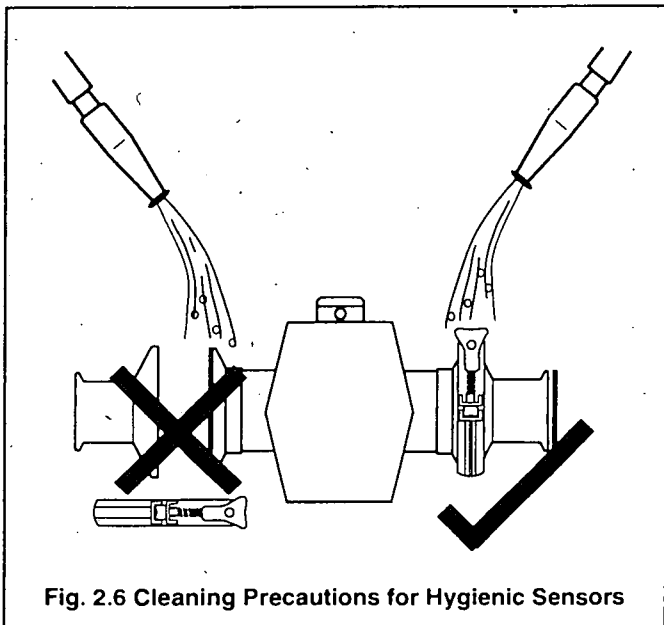
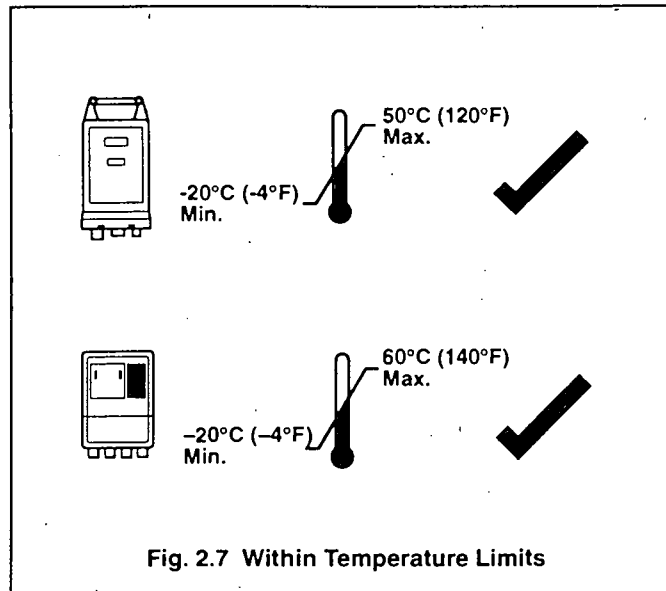
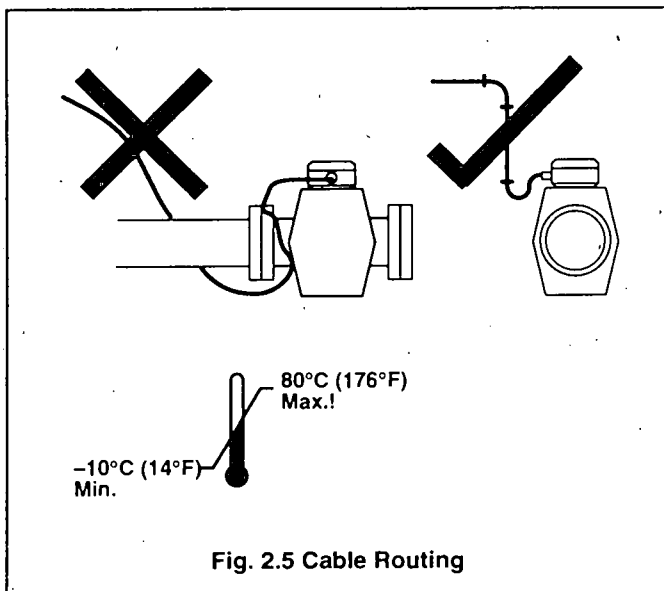
#### **Warning.**

- Mating Hygienic end connections, clamps and supplied gaskets as ordered may have a lower pressure and temperature limit than that shown on the sensor data label.

## 2 INSTALLATION CONDITIONS



## ...2 INSTALLATION CONDITIONS

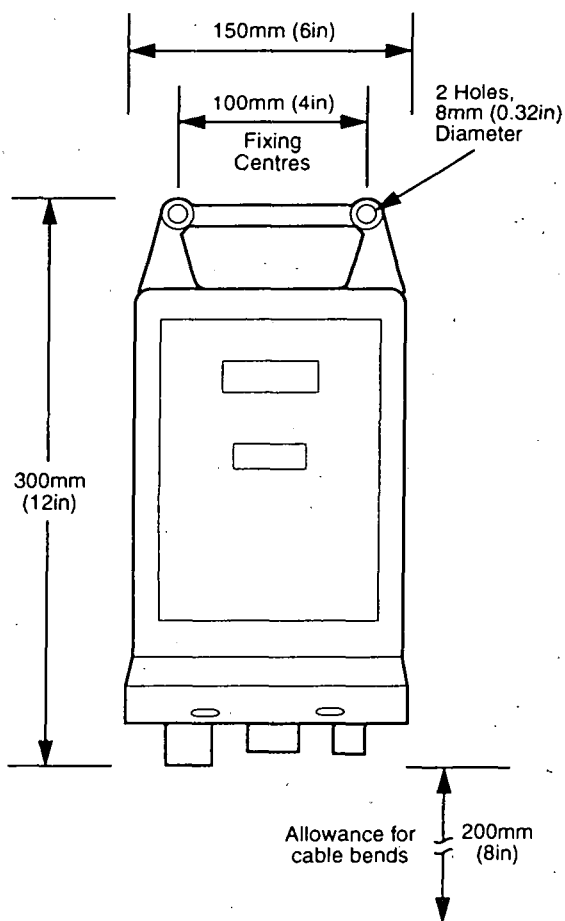


### 3.1.1 Location

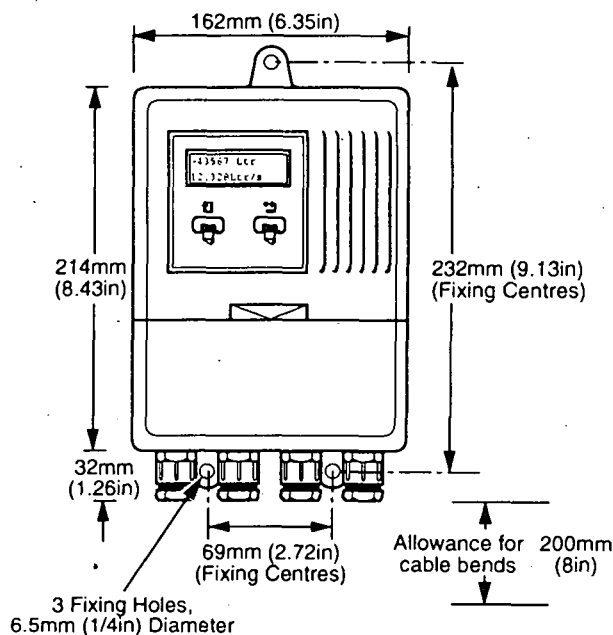
### 3.1.2 Mounting



Providing that free access is available to allow the display to be viewed as required, the unit can be either wall mounted or panel mounted with masonry fixings or nuts and bolts respectively via the fixing holes provided.



### Fig. 3.1 AquaMag Transmitter Mounting Details



### Fig. 3.2 MagMaster Transmitter Mounting Details



### 3 INSTALLATION...

#### 3.2 Sensors



##### Caution.

- Do NOT exceed the maximum working pressure marked on the equipment.
- Use stainless steel (austenitic) bolts, studs and nuts for flanged sensors below 200mm bore.

Sensor size Nominal Bore		Maximum Misalignment	
(mm)	(in.)	(mm)	(in.)
≤ 50	≤ 2	1.5	0.06
50 to 300	2 to 12	2	0.08
> 300	> 12	4	0.16

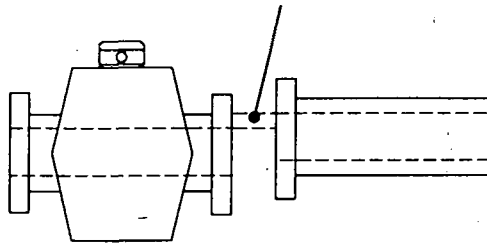


Fig. 3.3 Sensor Alignment

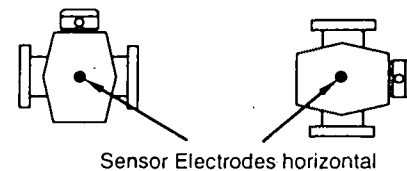
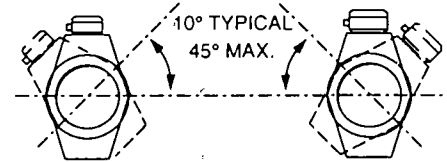


Fig. 3.4 Sensor Position

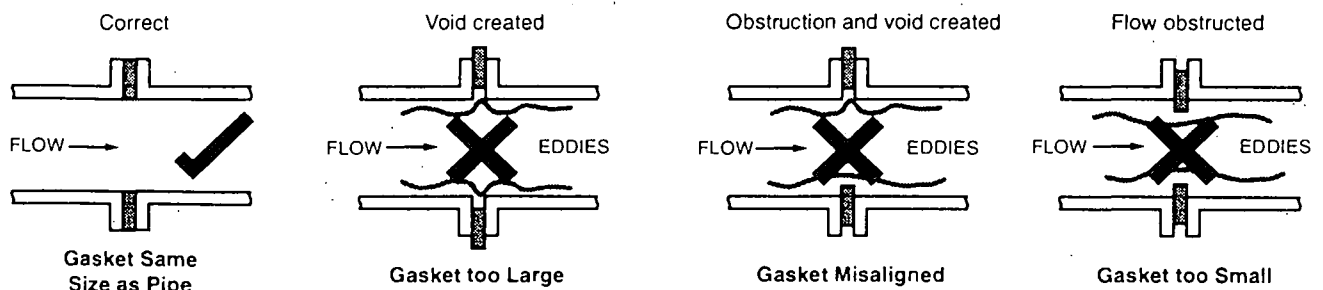
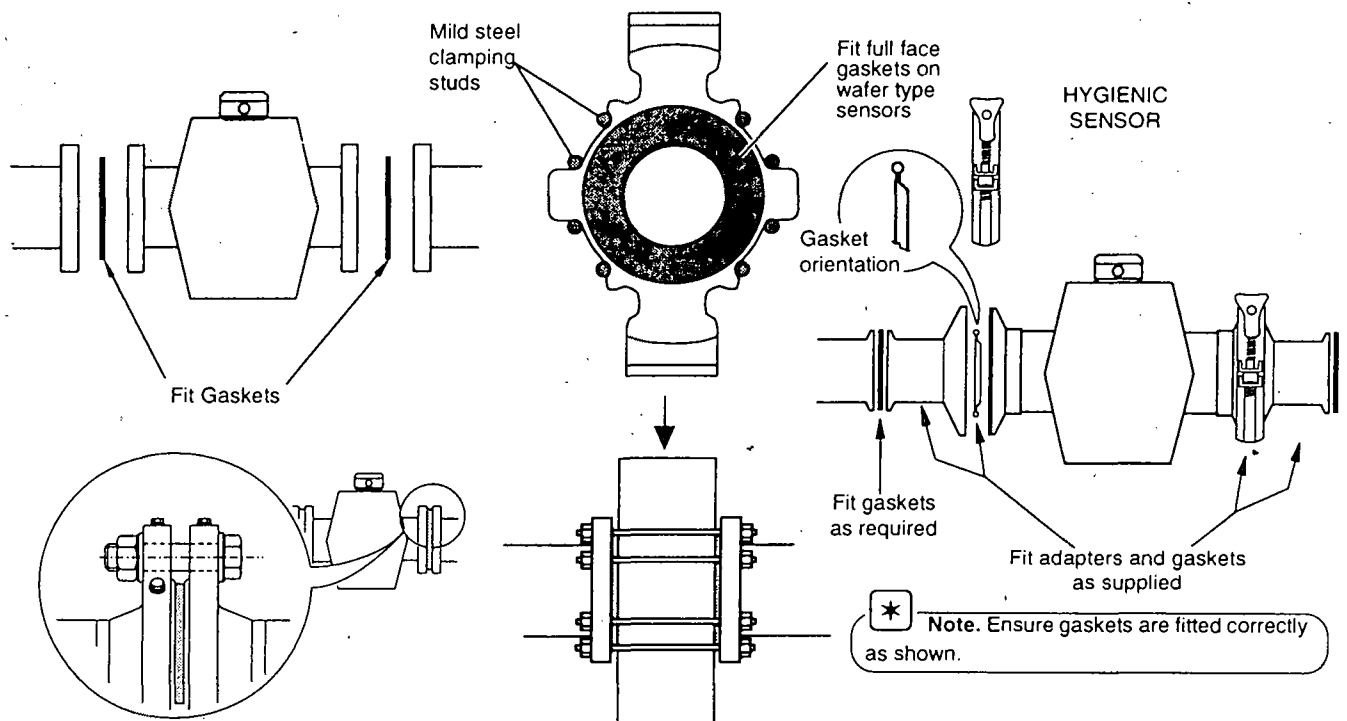


Fig. 3.5 Gasket Installation

### ...3 INSTALLATION

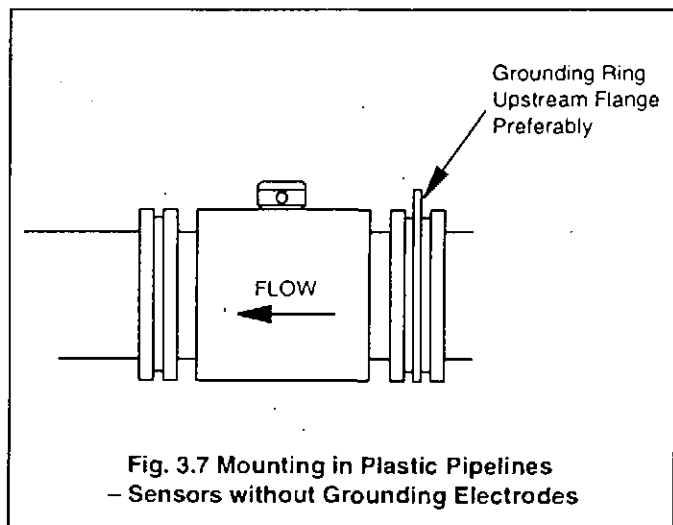
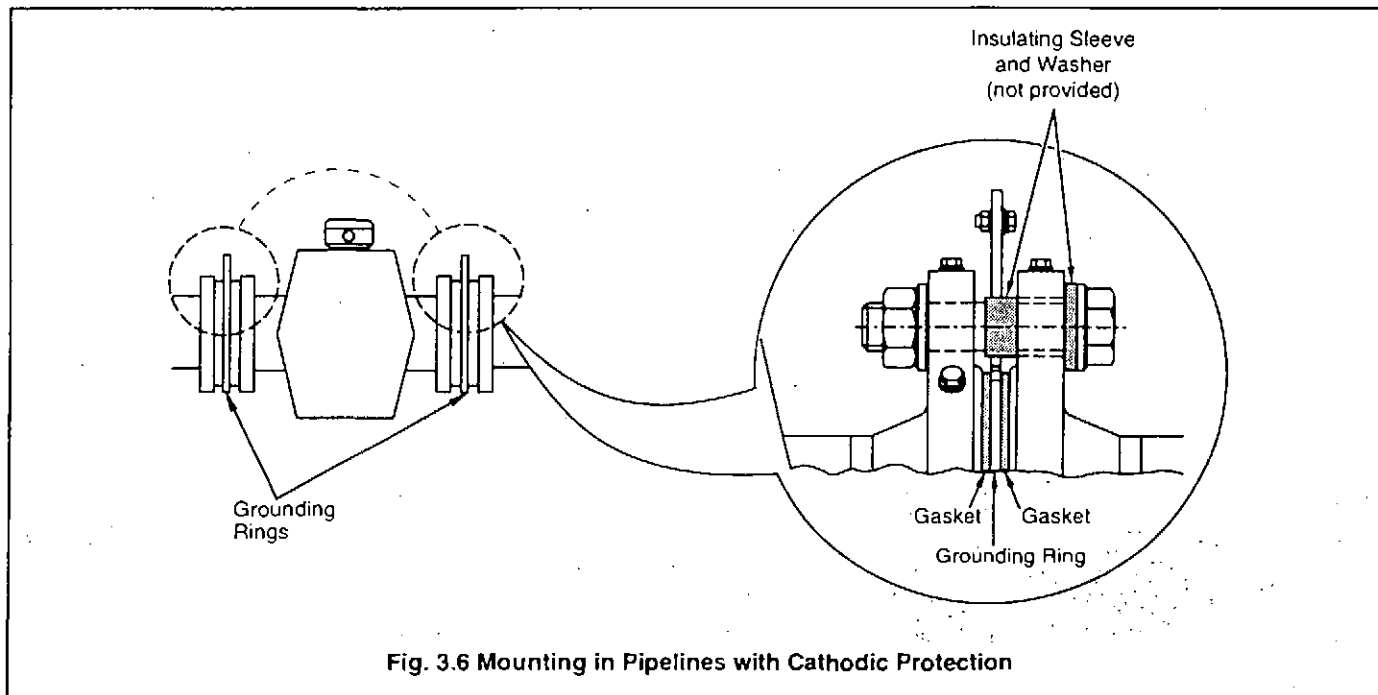


**Caution.** Do not rely on flange bolts or studs for electrical connection.



**Information.** See ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION book for ground wiring.

#### ...3.2 Sensors



# SUPPLEMENT

No. SUPP 1/95

Date 22.5.95

## MagMaster Installation

Ensure all transportation ties, tapes or temporary feet/protection strips (fitted to the underside of sensors) are removed prior to installation.

Failure to remove such items could invalidate any approval associated with the product.

ABB Kent-Taylor





## Instruction Manual

## **MagMaster™ Electromagnetic Flowmeters**

### **Supplementary Instructions to Book 3.**

**For use where the following  
cables are provided in place of  
that shown in Book 3:**

**STT 3200/3400 Standard 4-Core  
(as used in IEC installation practice)**

**STT 3300 Armoured 4-Core  
(as used in IEC installation practice)**

**STT3350 Standard 6-Core  
(as used in North American installation  
practice)**

**ABB Kent-Taylor**



**CONTENTS****Page****SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS TO  
BOOK 3 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION**

Section	Page
<b>1 INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2 CABLE INFORMATION</b>	<b>2</b>
2.1 IEC Installation Practice	2
2.1.1 4-Core Cable Identification	2
2.1.2 4-Core Cable Preparation	2
2.2 North American Installation Practice	3
2.2.1 6-Core Cable Identification	3
2.2.2 6-Core Cable Preparation	3
<b>3 CABLE CONNECTIONS</b>	<b>4</b>
3.1 Sensor Terminal box Connections (Remote System) .....	4
3.1.1 IEC Wiring Practice .....	4
3.1.2 North American Wiring Practice .....	4
3.2 Transmitter Sensor Cable Connections (Remote Transmitter Only)	5

**1 INTRODUCTION****1 INTRODUCTION**

The cable supplied with your MagMaster flowmeter may not be as described in Book 1 or Book 3 ELECTRICAL INSTRUCTIONS. (Cable Part Numbers are printed/embossed on the cable sheath)

The alternative cables are as follows:

STT 3200/3400 Standard 4-Core Cable as used in IEC installation practice.

STT 3300 Armoured 4-Core Cable as used in IEC installation practice.

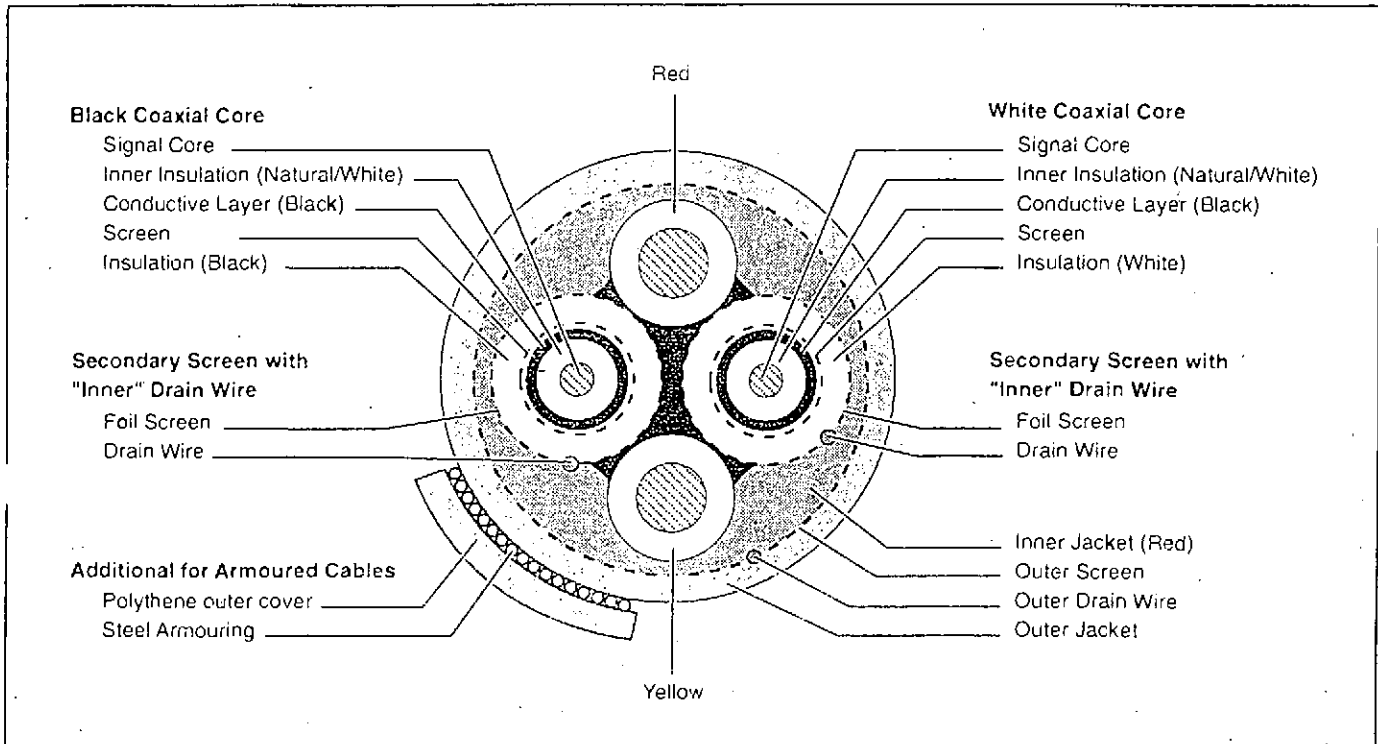
STT3350 Standard 6-Core Cable as used in North American installation practice.

and are as described in this supplement.

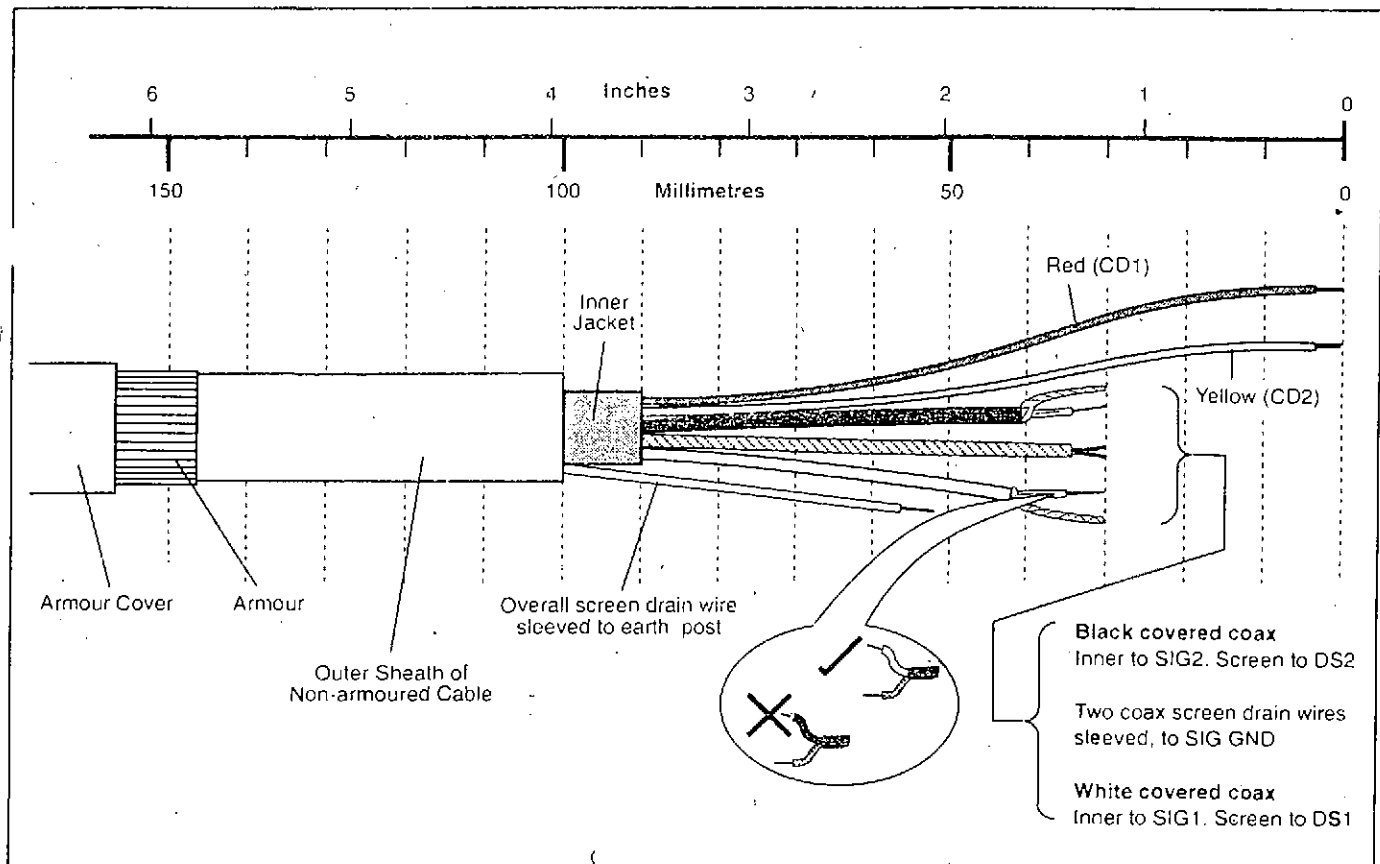
## 2 CABLE INFORMATION

### 2.1 IEC Wiring Practice

#### 2.1.1 4-Core Cable Identification



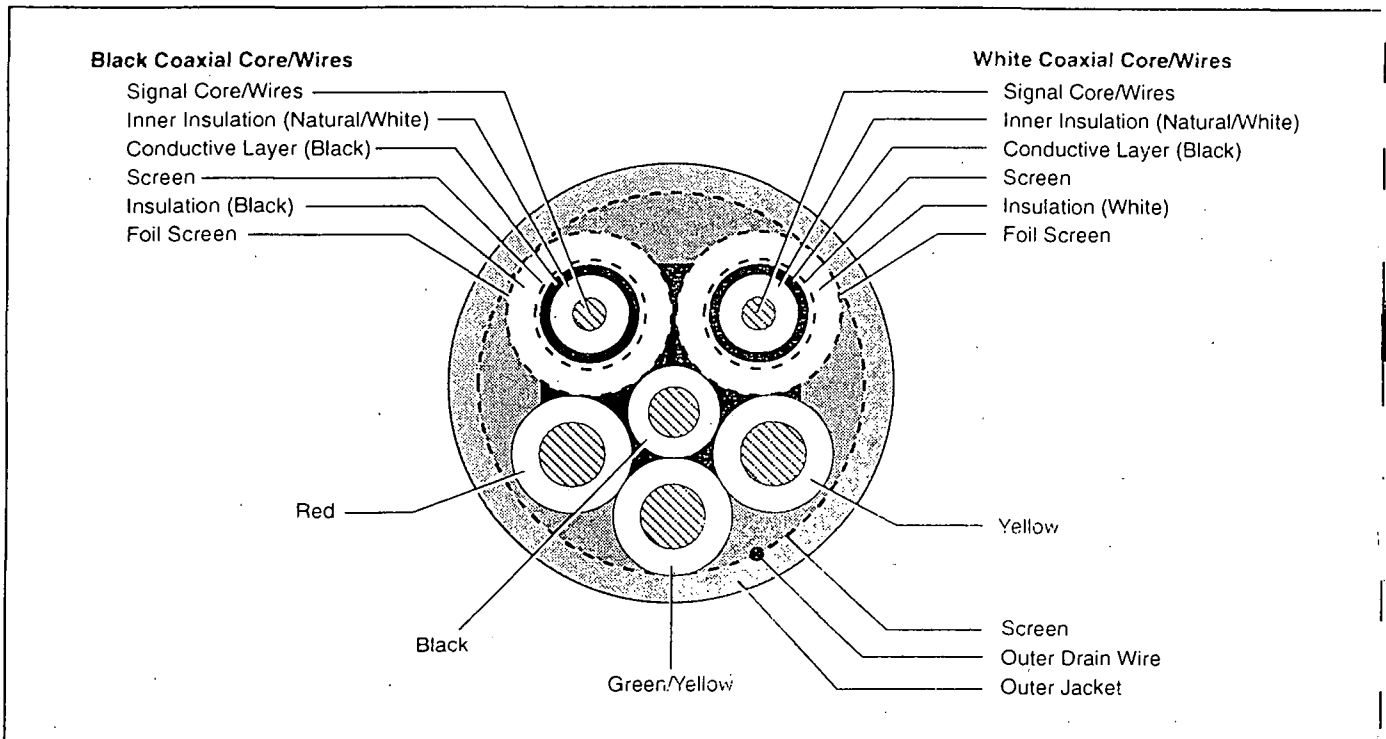
#### 2.1.2 4-Core Cable Preparation



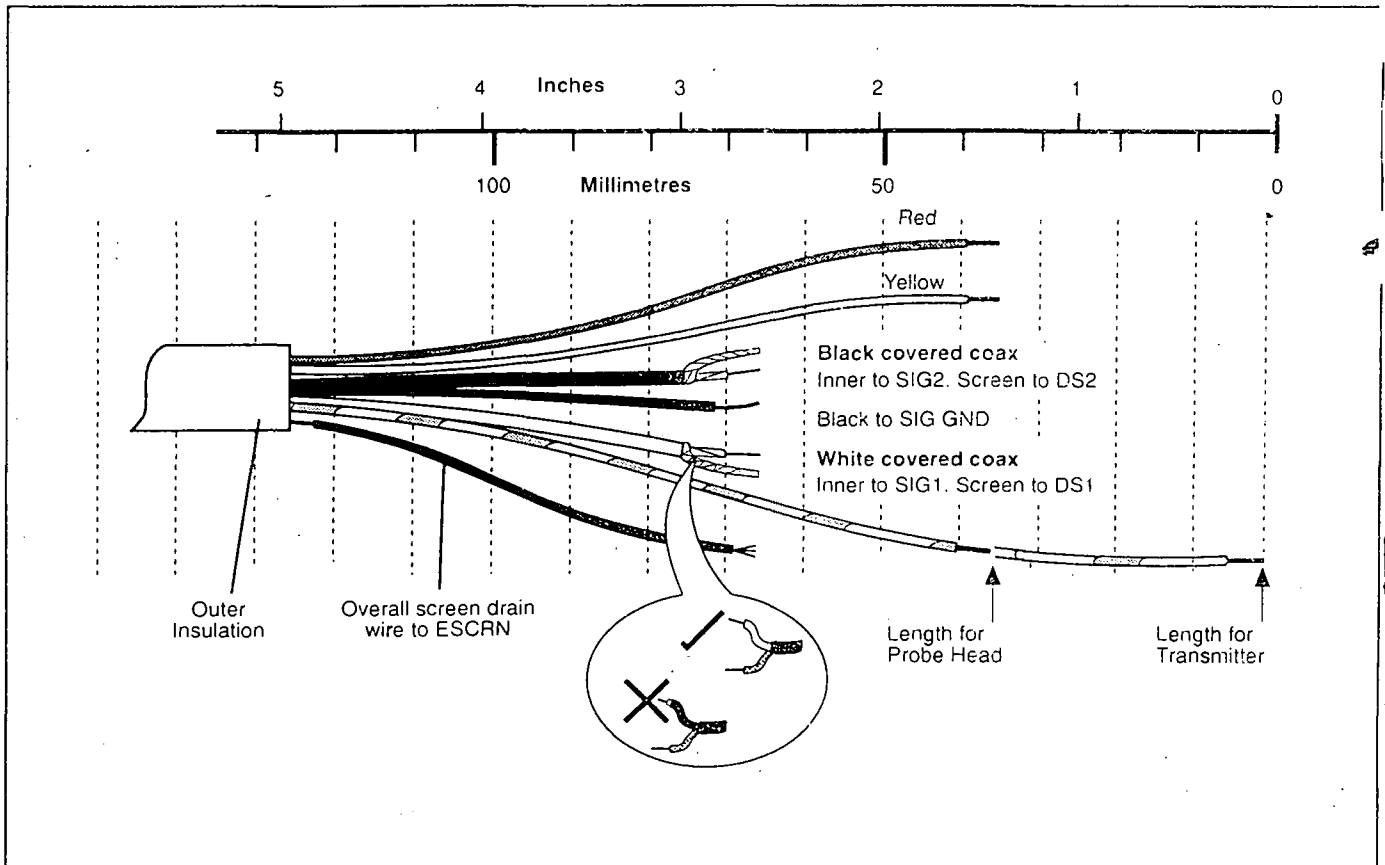
## ...2 CABLE INFORMATION

### 2.2 North American Wiring Practice

#### 2.2.1 6-Core Cable Identification



#### 2.2.2 6-Core Cable Preparation





### 3 CABLE CONNECTIONS

#### 3.1 Sensor Terminal Box Connections (Remote System)



##### Caution.

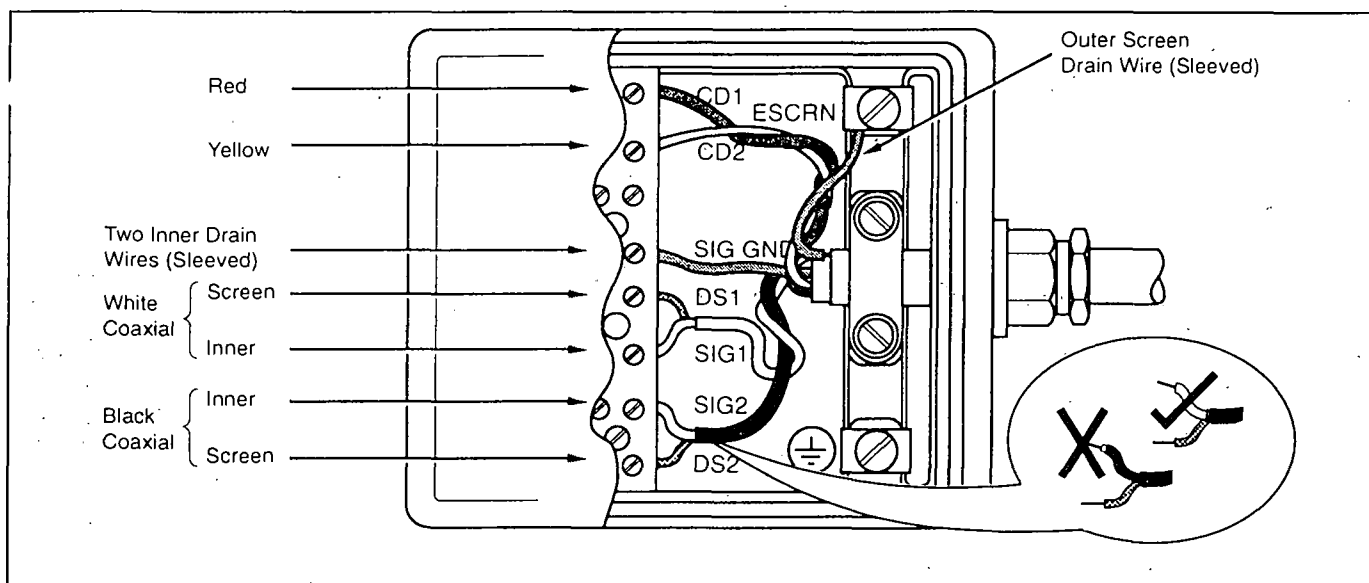
- Remove any exposed black conductive layer from under coaxial screens.
- Make connections only as shown.
- Sleeve all bare wiring.
- Twist RED and YELLOW cores lightly together.
- Twist WHITE and BLACK coaxial cables lightly together.
- Maintain Environmental Protection at all times.
- Conduit connections must provide cable entry sealing.



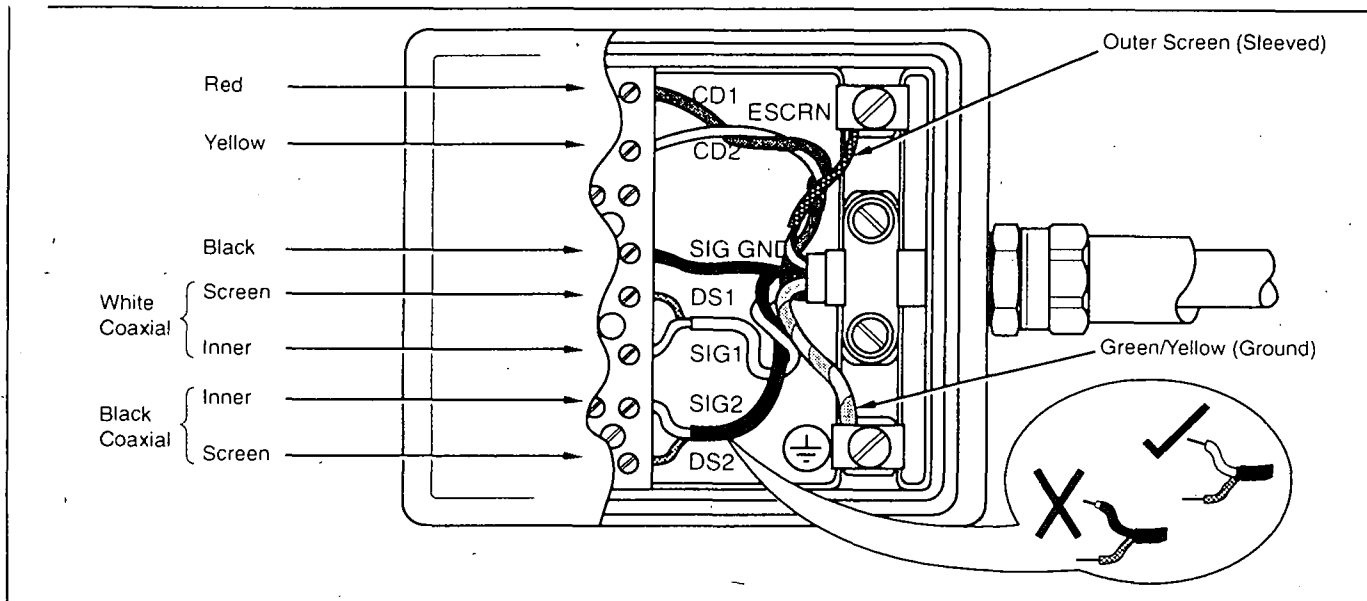
##### Information.

- Refer to ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION (BOOK 3).
- Internal appearance of Terminal Box may vary from that shown.

#### 3.1.1 IEC Wiring Practice – General Locations only (For Hazardous Area Versions see Book 1)



#### 3.1.2 North American Wiring Practice – General Locations and CSA-Hazardous (Non-incendive electrodes). For all other Hazardous Area Versions see Book 1.



### ...3 CABLE CONNECTIONS

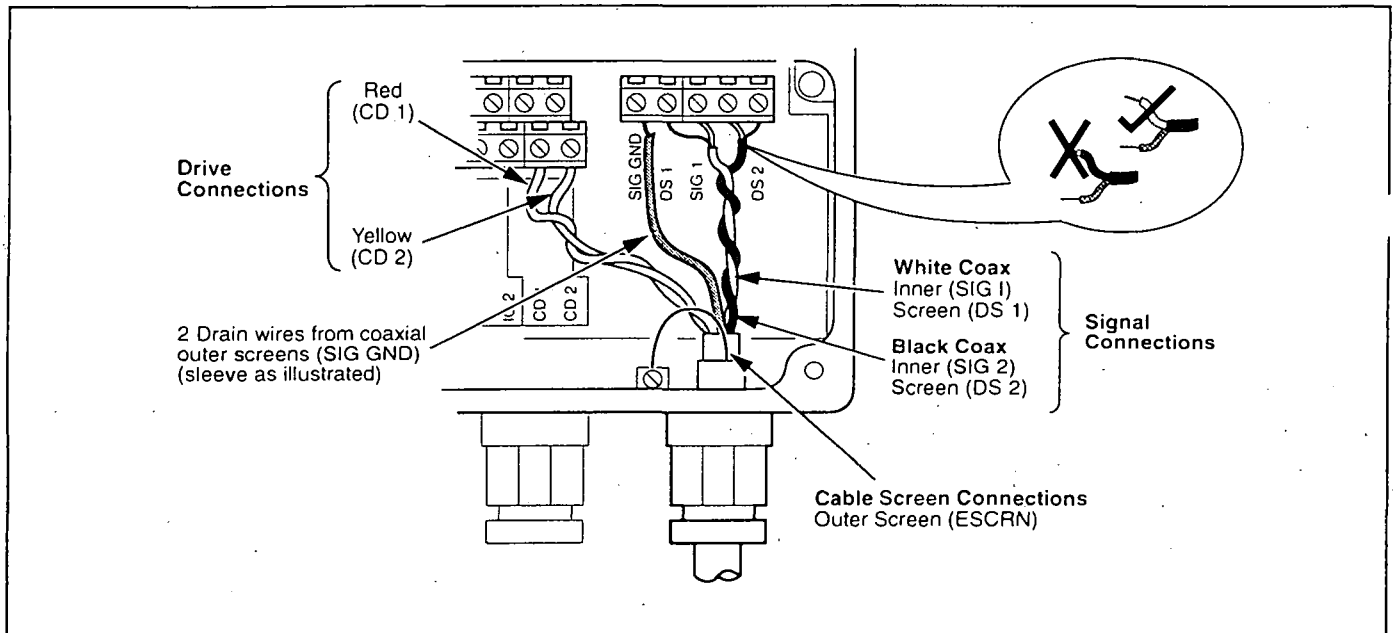
#### 3.2 Transmitter Sensor Cable Connections (Remote Transmitter Only)



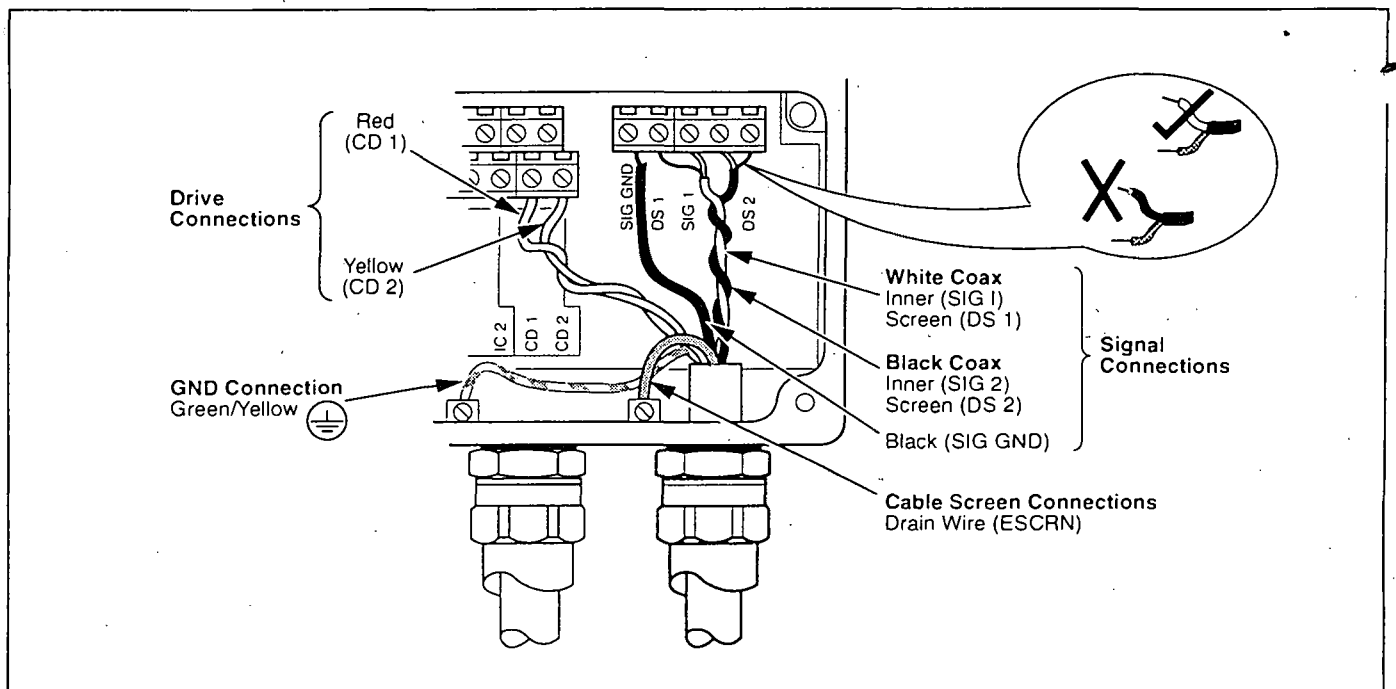
##### Caution.

- Remove any exposed black conductive layer from the inner insulation of both coaxial cables.
- Substitute sensor cable of any kind is not acceptable.
- Do not make connections except as shown.
- Twist cable pairs together as shown.
- Sleeve ALL bare wires.
- Sensor cable may only be joined using company supplied junction box - available separately.

##### 3.2.1 IEC Wiring Practice



##### 3.2.2 North American Wiring Practice



# Instruction Manual

## MagMaster™ Electromagnetic Flowmeters

### BOOK 3 Electrical Installation

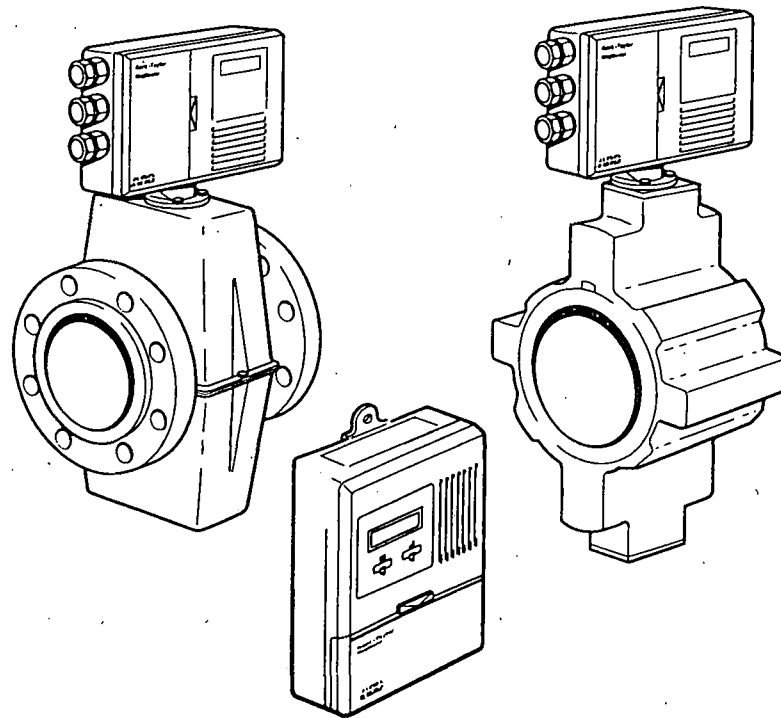


ABB Kent-Taylor



## ABB KENT-TAYLOR



**St Neots**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. Q5907



**Stonehouse**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. FM 21106



**Stonehouse**  
Certificate No. 0255

### The Company

ABB Kent-Taylor is an established world force in process instrumentation offering users a total capability in the wide range of product lines available, backed by the worldwide manufacturing, test, calibration and sales and service facilities that are expected from a market leader.

The quality, accuracy and performance of the Company's products result from over 100 years experience of instrument manufacture, combined with a continuous programme of innovative design and development to incorporate the latest technology.

The NAMAS Calibration Laboratory No. 0255(B) is just one of the ten flow calibration plants operated by the Company, and is indicative of ABB Kent-Taylor's dedication to quality and accuracy.

The Company's instrumentation is suitable for a wide range of industrial and scientific applications such as process control, batch processing, power generation, heat treatment, heating and ventilation, laboratories, food, chemical, petrochemical and water industries.

All products are backed by a high standard of technology, service and engineering support, from skilled, experienced sales and design engineers.

### Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 (UK)

Section 6(4) of the above Act requires manufacturers to advise their customers on the safety and handling precautions to be observed when installing, operating, maintaining and servicing their products. Accordingly, the following points must be noted:

1. The relevant sections of these instructions must be read carefully before proceeding.
2. Warning labels on containers and packages must be observed.
3. Installation, operation, maintenance and servicing must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel and in accordance with the information given.
4. Normal safety precautions must be taken to avoid the possibility of an accident occurring when operating in conditions of high pressure and/or temperature.
5. Chemicals must be stored away from heat, protected from temperature extremes and powders kept dry. Normal safe handling procedures must be used.
6. When disposing of chemicals ensure that no two chemicals are mixed.

Safety advice concerning the use of the equipment described in this manual or any relevant hazard data sheets (where applicable) may be obtained from the Company address on the back cover, together with servicing and spares information

### Notice

Information in this manual is intended only to assist our customers in the efficient operation of our equipment. Use of this manual for any other purpose is specifically prohibited and its contents are not to be reproduced in full or part without prior approval of Technical Communications Department, ABB Kent-Taylor.

### Use of Instructions



**Warning.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of injury or death.



**Caution.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of damage to the product, process or surroundings.



**Note.** Clarification of an instruction or additional information.



**Information.** Further reference for more detailed information or technical details.

Although **Warning** hazards are related to personal injury, and **Caution** hazards are associated with equipment or property damage, it must be understood that operation of damaged equipment could, under certain operational conditions, result in degraded process system performance leading to personal injury or death. Therefore, comply fully with all **Warning** and **Caution** notices.

## CONTENTS

### BOOK 3 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

Section	Page	Section	Page
<b>SAFETY MEASURES</b> .....	<b>1</b>	3.5 Transmitter Sensor Cable Connections (Remote Transmitter) .....	8
<b>1 INTRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>1</b>	3.6 Cable Glands and Conduit Fixings .....	9
<b>2 GROUNDING</b> .....	<b>2</b>	3.6.1 Cable Glands .....	9
2.1 Full Bore Sensors .....	2	3.6.2 Conduit Adapters (N. American - 0.5") .....	10
2.2 Insertion Probe Sensors .....	3	3.6.3 Cable Glands (N. American - 0.5") .....	10
<b>3 INSTALLATION</b> .....	<b>4</b>	3.7 Input/Output Connections .....	11
3.1 Connection Requirements .....	4	3.7.1 Frequency Outputs .....	11
3.1.1 Sensors .....	4	3.7.2 PLC Interface .....	12
3.1.2 Transmitters .....	5	3.7.3 Alarm Outputs .....	13
3.2 Cable Identification .....	6	3.7.4 Contact Input .....	14
3.3 Cable Preparation .....	6	3.7.5 Current Output .....	15
3.4 Sensor Terminal Box Connections (Remote System) .....	7	3.7.6 Computer Connection .....	17
		3.7.7 Power Supply Connections .....	18
		<b>APPENDIX A – ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION</b> .....	<b>19</b>
		<b>APPENDIX B – MAGMASTER BLOCK DIAGRAM</b> .....	<b>20</b>



Note. Not all versions referred to are available as approved. This book covers general aspects for hazardous and general approved products.

### SAFETY MEASURES



#### Warning.

- EXPLOSION HAZARD. SUBSTITUTION OF COMPONENTS MAY IMPAIR SUITABILITY FOR CLASS 1, DIVISION 2.
- EXPLOSION HAZARD. DO NOT REMOVE FUSE OR DISCONNECT POWER LEADS WHILE CIRCUIT IS LIVE.
- THE LOCAL TERMINAL MUST NOT BE USED WHEN THERE IS AN EXPLOSION RISK.

### MESURES DE SÉCURITÉ



#### Avertissement.

- RISQUE D'EXPLOSION. SUBSTITUTION DE COMPOSANTS PEUT RENDRE CE MATÉRIEL INACCEPTABLE POUR LES EMPLACEMENTS DE CLASSE I, DIVISION 2.
- RISQUE D'EXPLOSION. NE PAS RETIRER LE FUSIBLE NI DÉBRANCHER LES FILS D'ALIMENTATION TANT QUE LE CIRCUIT EST SOUS TENSION.
- NE PAS UTILISER LE TERMINAL LOCAL EN ATMOSPHÈRE EXPLOSIVE.



#### Warning.

- Installation and maintenance must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel.
- HAZARDOUS AREA DESIGNATION ON THE EQUIPMENT LABEL MUST BE SUITABLE FOR THE INTENDED DUTY AND LOCATION.
- All relevant sections of this manual must be read before selecting a location.
- Safety requirements of this equipment, any associated equipment, and the local environment must be taken into consideration.
- The installation and use of this equipment must be in accordance with relevant national and local standards.

## 1 INTRODUCTION

This book describes the electrical installation of the MagMaster Transmitter with full bore and insertion type electromagnetic flowmeters.

Attention to the installation procedures, safety measures and general precautions will ensure trouble free operation of the system.

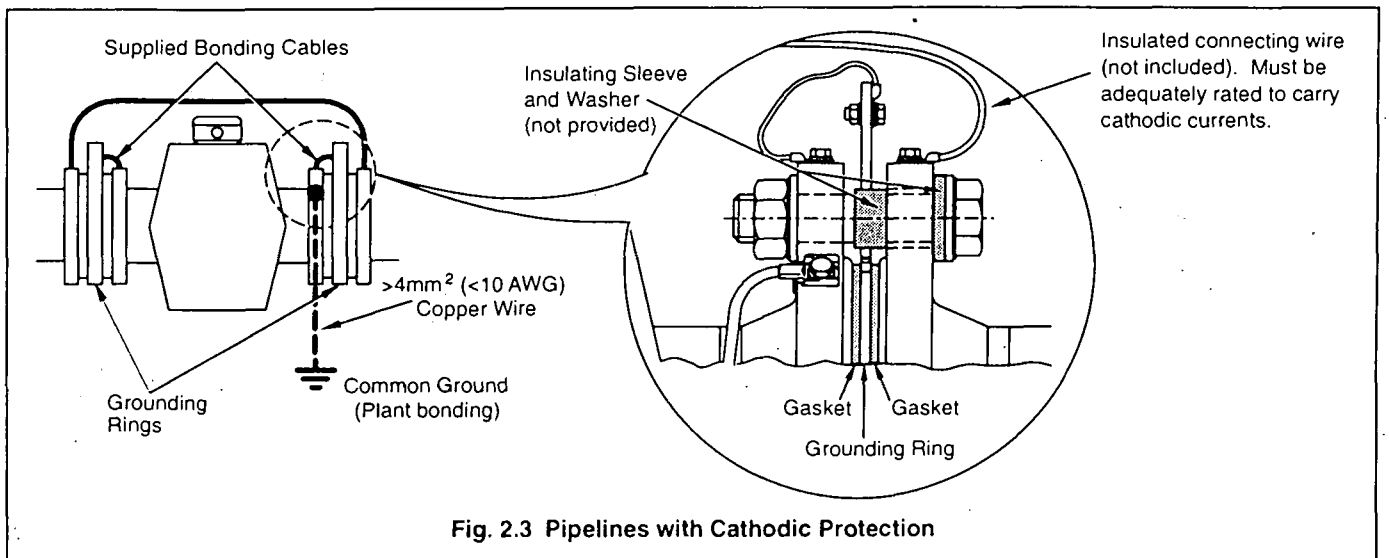
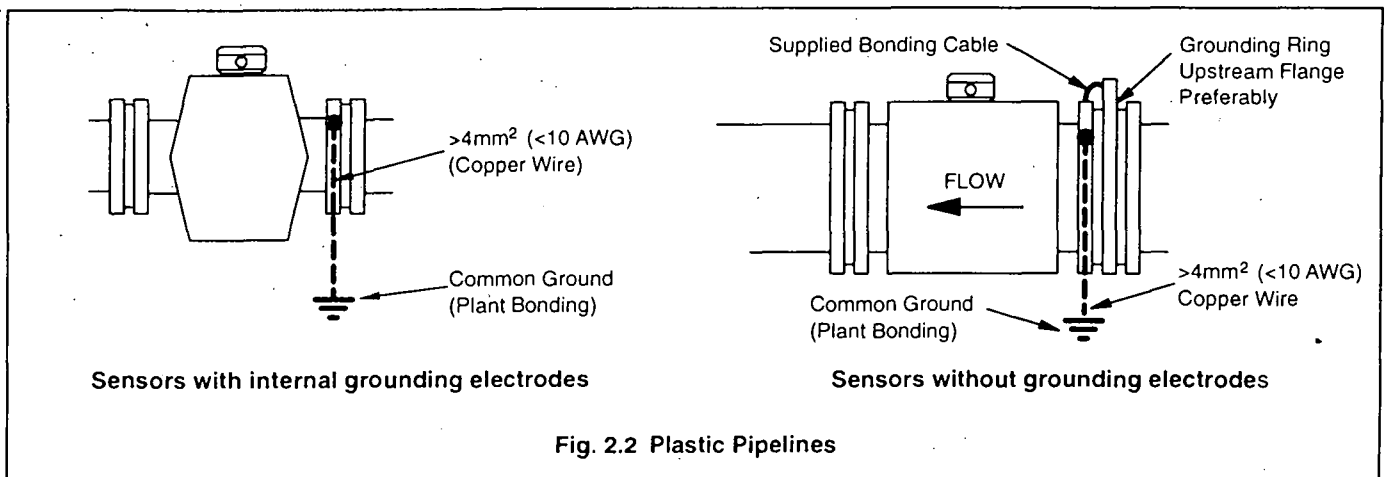
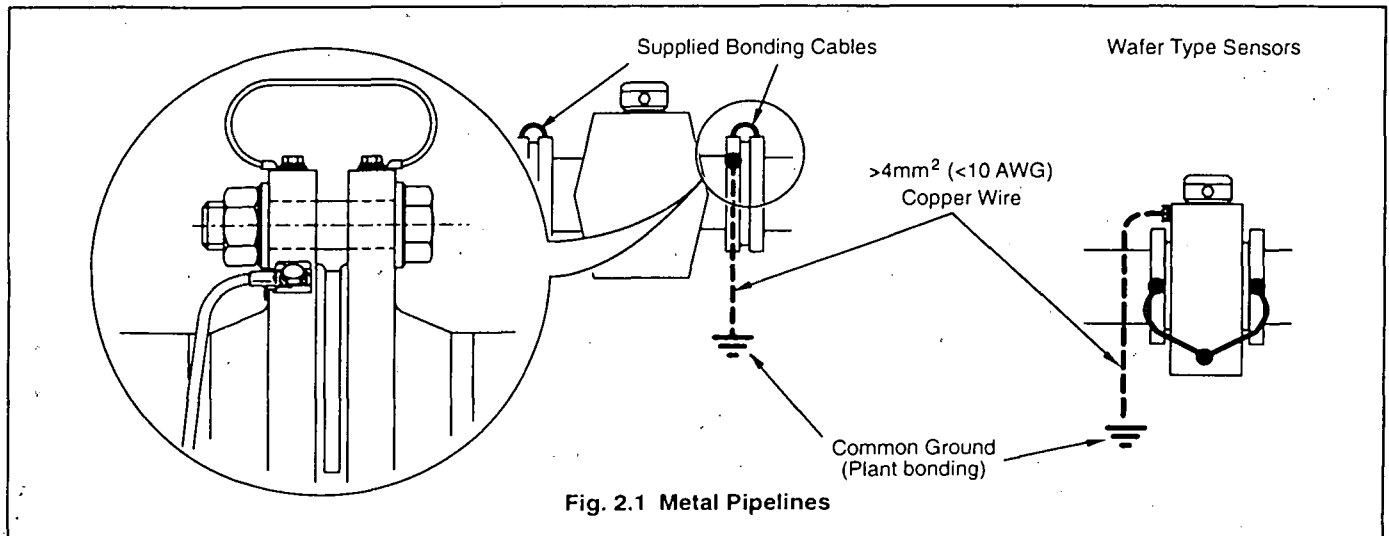
## 2 GROUNDING

### 2.1 Full bore Sensors



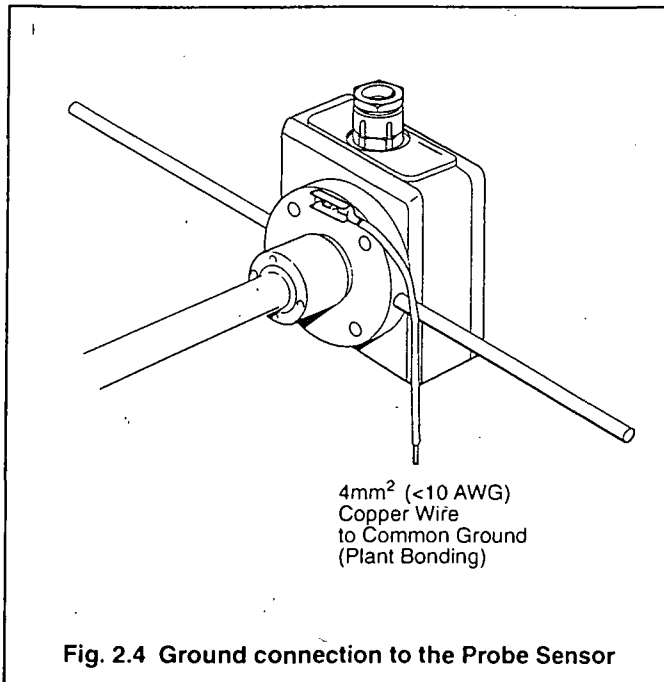
#### Caution.

- Do NOT rely on the flange bolts or studs for electrical connection.
- All earth bonding (grounding) must be in accordance with relevant national and local safety standards.



## ...2 GROUNDING

### 2.2 Insertion Probe Sensors



### 3 INSTALLATION

#### 3.1 Connection Requirements

##### 3.1.1 Sensors



##### Caution.

- Each connection **MUST** be insulated from all others; in particular, **NO** connections must be made to screens or drain wires except as shown.
- All cable entries must be properly sealed.
- Glands must be appropriate for sealing on the cable size in use.
- Unused cable entries must be plugged.
- Electrical installation and earthing must be in accordance with relevant national and local standards.
- The transmitter and sensor are supplied as a matched system. Check serial numbers to ensure matched pair.

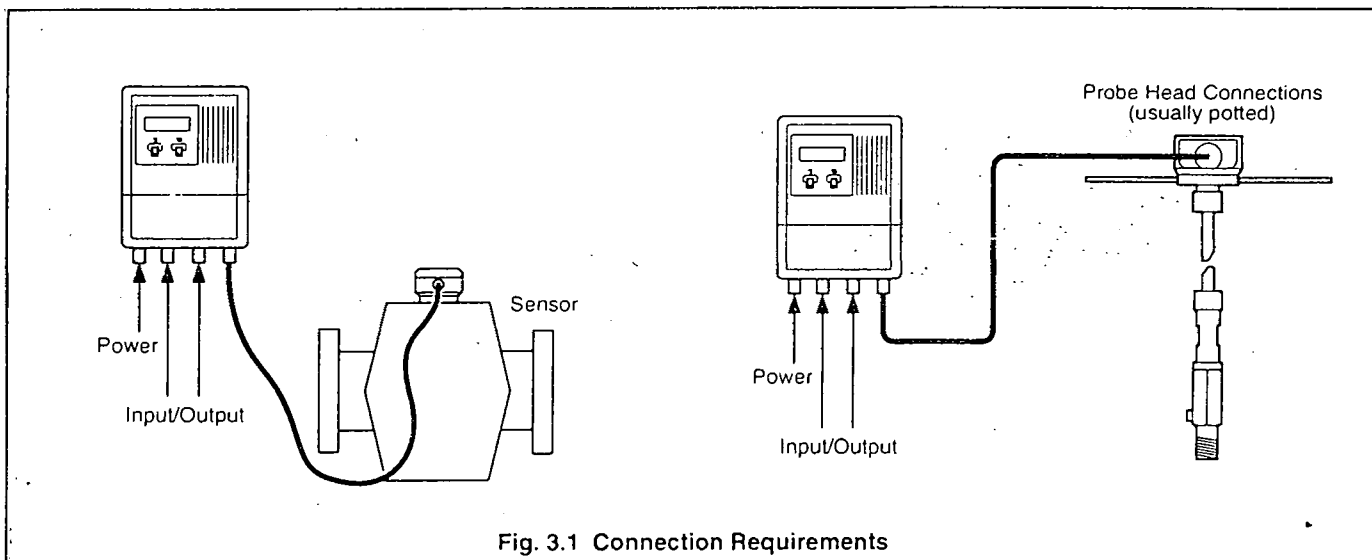


Fig. 3.1 Connection Requirements

##### Sensor Connections

Sensors are usually supplied with an integral cable and potted head connections. The transmitter end of the cable, the power supply and any output cables must be prepared and connected as detailed in the relevant parts of this book. If the sensor has been supplied unpotted, connections must also be made to the full-bore sensor terminal box or probe head (Fig. 3.1) and then potted on completion – see ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION.



### 3 INSTALLATION...

#### 3.1.2 Transmitter



**Caution.** Unused cable entries must be blanked with the permanent blanking plugs supplied.

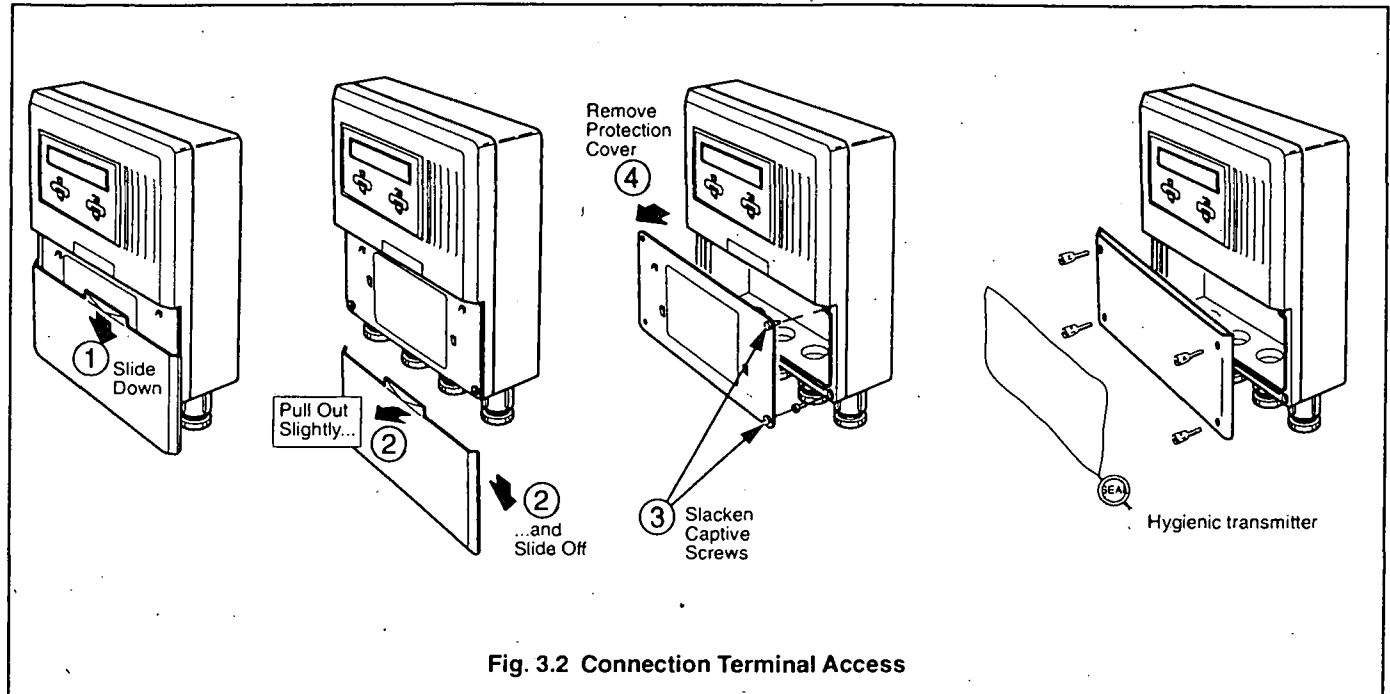


Fig. 3.2 Connection Terminal Access

#### Transmitter Connections

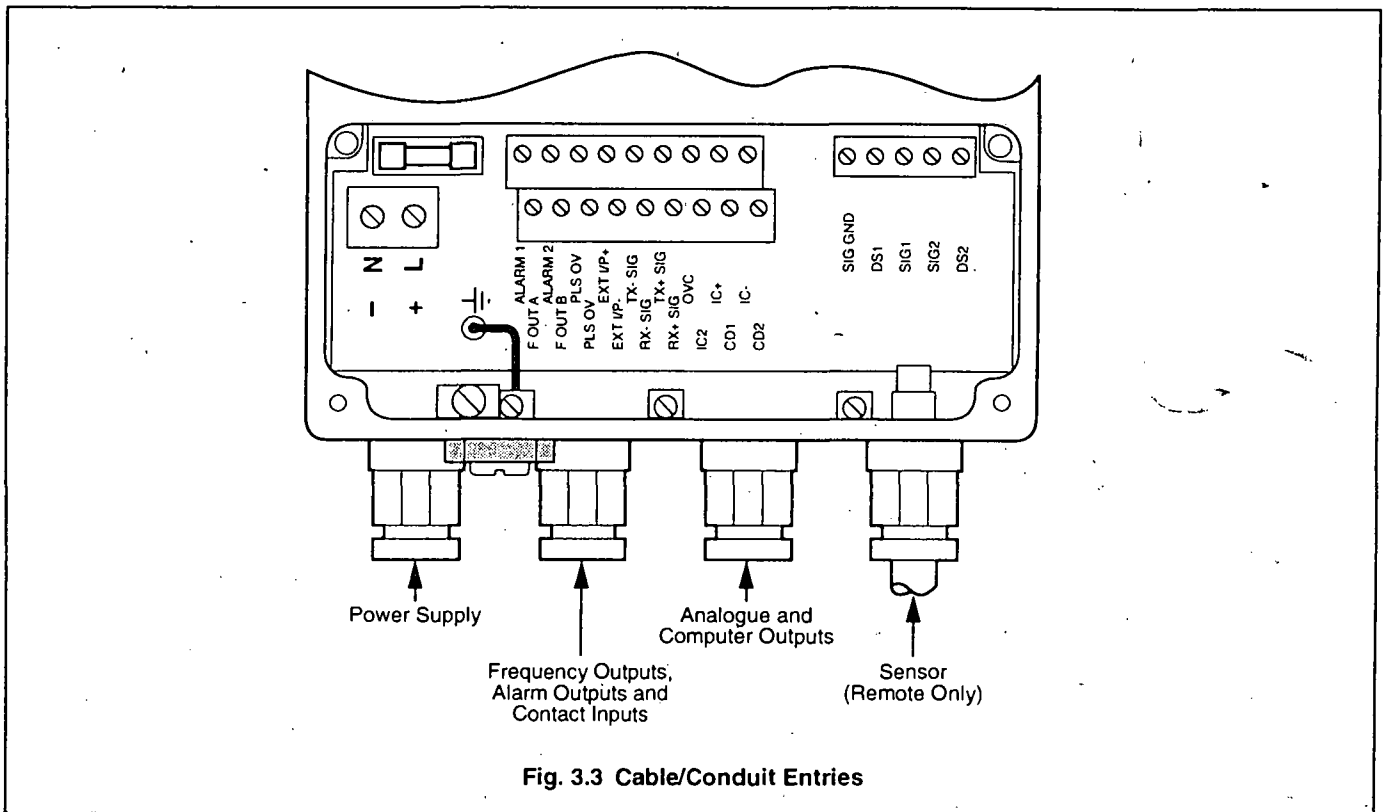
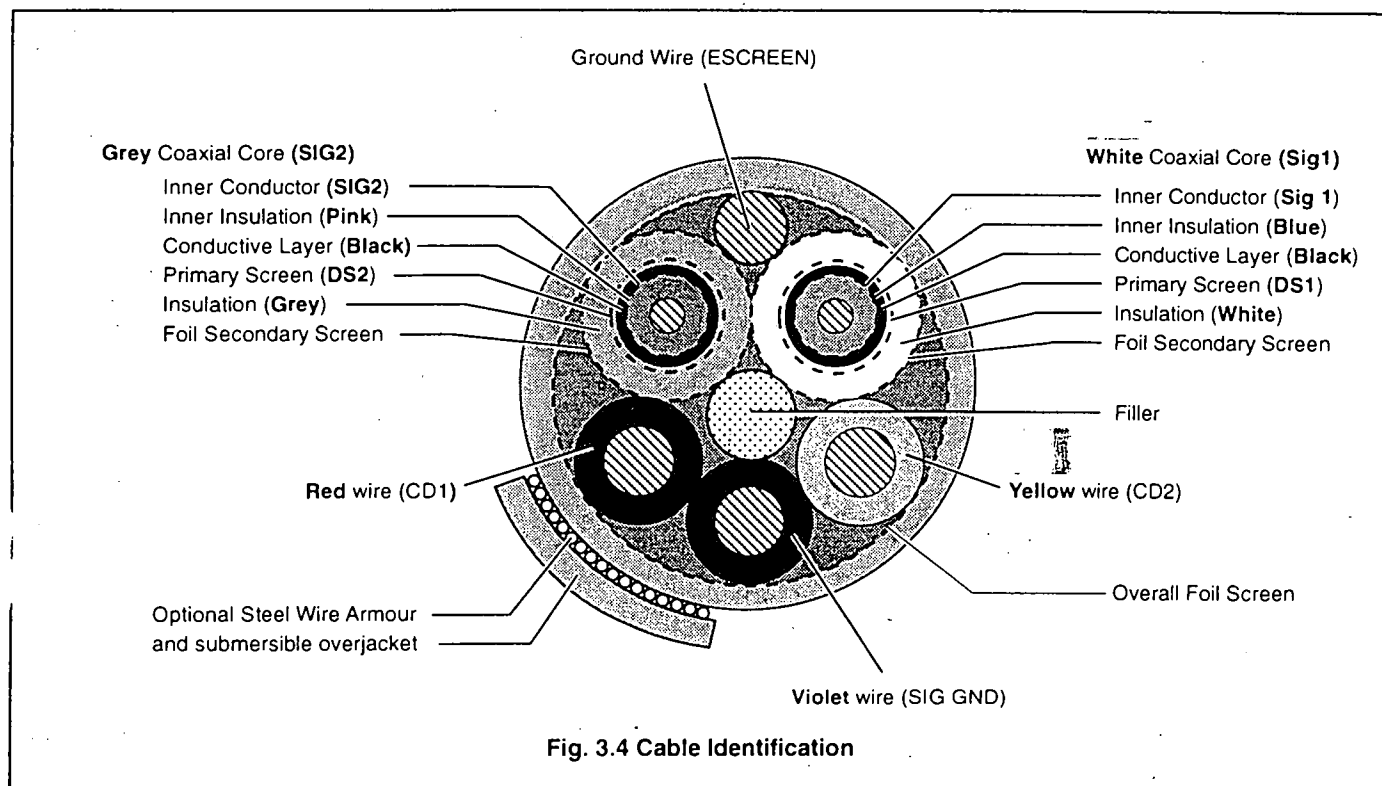


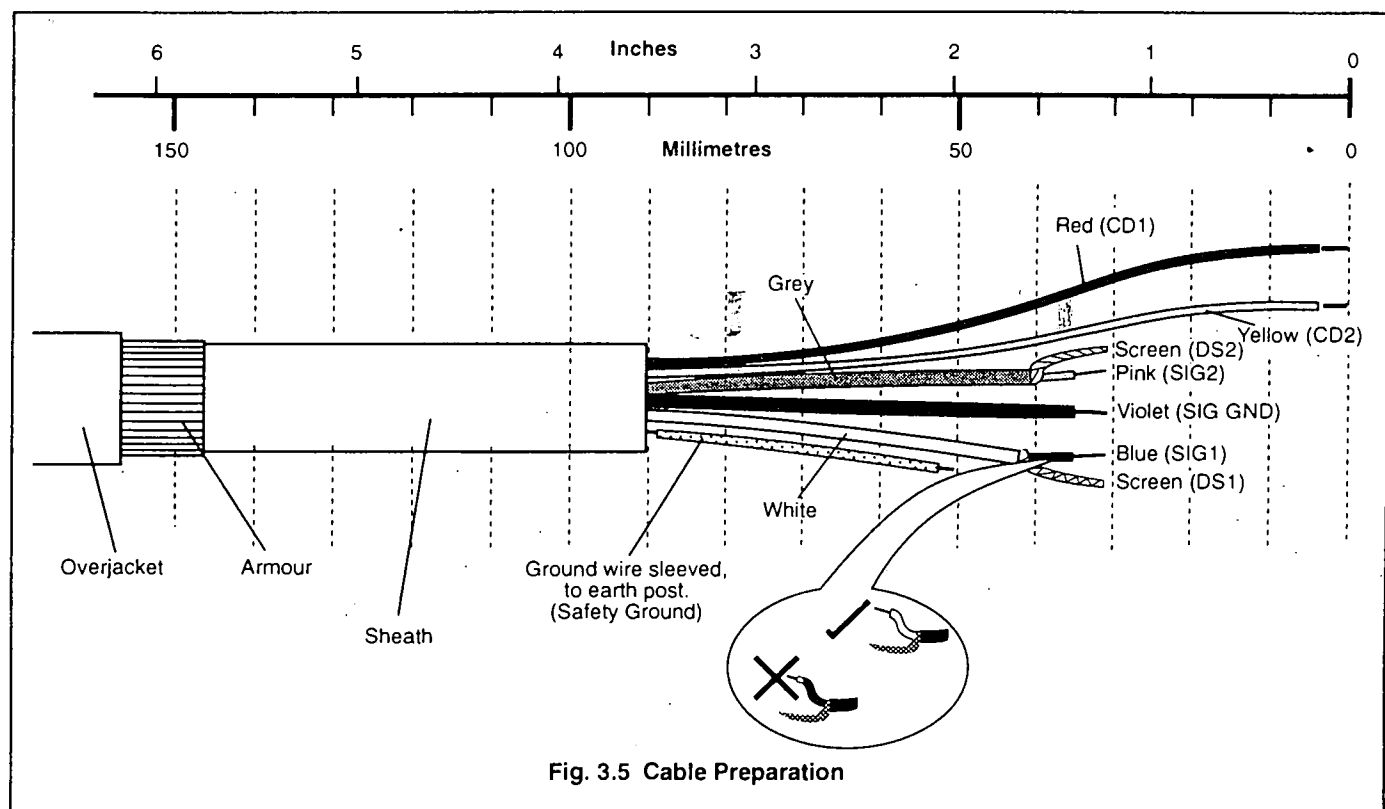
Fig. 3.3 Cable/Conduit Entries

### ...3 INSTALLATION

#### 3.2 Cable Identification (Fig. 3.4)



#### 3.3 Cable Preparation (Fig. 3.5)



## 1 CENELEC & SAA APPROVED FLOWMETERS...

### 1.1 Introduction

The range of hazardous area approved MagMaster Flowmeters available are listed in Table 1.1

Identification and their use is shown on a certification label, found on the side of the Sensor Termination Box.

**Table 1.1 Types of Hazardous Area Approved Flowmeter**

MagMaster Sensor Description	Type	Std	Ext
Flange type, 15mm to 150mm	HA3	60	120
Wafer type 25mm to 150mm	HA4	60	120
Flange type, 200mm to 600mm	HA5	60	100



Std. Standard temperature versions – Maximum process and ambient temperatures in °C.

Ext. High temperature versions which are fitted with a terminal box extension – Maximum process temperatures in °C; ambient temperature limits remain at 60°C.



**Note.** Actual process temperature limit may be restricted further by the temperature limit of the lining option chosen.

An example of a typical label is shown below:

<b>ABB Kent-Taylor</b>	
 	MF-Series Type HA3
EEx e m ia IIC T4 BASEEFA No.Ex 91C2413	Ex e ia m IIC T4 AUS Ex 1489
Voltage Rating = 60Vrms   Um = 250Vrms Rated Current (coil drive) = 0.5 Amp. Tamb Max = 60°C Tprocess_liquid Max = 60°C	
<b>DO NOT OPEN WHILST ENERGIZED</b>	

Cenelec and SAA approved MagMaster Flowmeters for hazardous area operation are only available in the remote version.

The hazardous area MagMaster flowmeter sensors can be installed in locations defined as CENELEC approved Zone 1 or Zone 2:

EEx e ia m IIC T4 (T<sub>amb</sub> = 60°C)

The inside of the pipe is certified to Zone 0.

The transmitter must be mounted in the safe area.

The approval is valid for the following countries:

Austria, Belgium, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Ireland, Italy, Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland and the United Kingdom, as a fully harmonised European Approval which the member countries have agreed to accept. It is also certified by SAA Australia, and Hungary.

The sensors provide complete protection as defined without the need to provide external zener barriers.

Special interconnecting cables are not required for fitting the units, as the standard MagMaster cables are suitable for this purpose. **However, a plant bonding conductor is required to comply with approval.**

### 1.2 Description

The hazardous area approved MagMaster is in nearly all respects identical to the nonhazardous version. The only significant difference is that the sensor termination box is larger, containing a multiple zener barrier assembly, the operation of which is transparent in normal use.

### 1.3 Specification

This is identical to the nonhazardous area versions except that the maximum ambient and process temperatures may be lower. Note that the T4 (Tamb max = 60°C) also covers T1, T2, and T3 classifications.

### 1.4 Installation

**Installation** of a Hazardous Area MagMaster is similar to that of the standard version described elsewhere in this manual, but it is essential to pay attention to the following points:

**Transmitter** – The MagMaster transmitter must be located in the safe area. It must be connected to a single phase supply rated at no more than 240 volts. This supply must have an isolator and be fused with an HRC fuse not exceeding 30 Amps rating. (HRC – HBC high rupture/breaking capacity)

**Sensor Cable** – Standard or armoured MagMaster sensor cable may be used. These cables may also be run in conduit. The cable between the remote Sensor and the Transmitter must only be that supplied for the purpose by ABB Kent-Taylor Ltd. Other types of cable may not be substituted, even for part runs. Where joints between cables have to be made (e.g. for repairs, or for junctions in panels etc.) use only the ABB Kent-Taylor junction box (see Accessories and Spares section). Where joints are to be made in hazardous areas, the junction box must be approved for this duty.

**Glands** – Glands as supplied are suitable; substitute glands or conduit fittings must conform to Ex 'e' requirements (70°C) and be suitable for the cable being used.

**Earthing** – Connect a plant bonding conductor to the anti-rotation device fitted to the sensor.

*To comply with approval requirements, the plant bonding conductor or PEC (Protective earth conductor/potential equalising conductor) must be 4mm<sup>2</sup> or greater, connect to the plant safety earth (earth mat) and provide less than 1 ohm to earth.*

**Environmental Protection** – The approval permits installation below ground level where provision has been made to prevent flooding. However to accommodate accidental flooding (e.g. following a pump failure) or if moisture ingress is possible, the sensor connection box must be potted as soon as connections are completed. Potting is supplied.

For a dry location with no possibility of flooding, it is recommended that the unit is not potted.



**Information.** Certification does not apply to submerged or buried sensors.

## ...1 CENELEC & SAA APPROVED FLOWMETERS

### 1.4.1 Sensor Box Wiring

The wiring details (see below) are, in general, the same as the standard (non-Hazardous Area) remote version. **However since the safety of the system depends upon reliable connections, the following points must be observed:**

- Prepare cables with care as shown in Book 3 **except** that bared cable ends must be 10mm long, and not 5mm as for the standard version.
- Remove all wire cuttings.
- Note routing of outer screen earth drain wire (see illustration below).
- Sleeve all exposed conductors.
- Fully insert wires into terminal blocks up to the insulation.
- Ensure that terminals, cable clamps, glands etc. are fully tightened.



**Caution** The sensor connection box contains low value fuses. Under no circumstances should low impedance voltage be applied or electrode cleaning be attempted.

### 1.5 Safety of Pressurised Flowlines

If the flowmeter is to operate at significantly more than one bar, see the following EECS Newsletter extract.

The extract applies to any electromagnetic flowmeter operated above atmospheric pressure. It is not a limitation on the use of the equipment so much as a limitation of the approval standards. If the plant is deemed unconditionally safe by the following criteria then the contents of the newsletter do not apply.

System is Unconditionally Safe if:

- Operation is nominally 1 bar.
- Pipeline is operated with no explosive gas mixture.
- Pipeline is full of liquid, at any rated pressure.
- Pipeline is reduced to atmospheric pressure before being allowed to drain.
- Pipeline is vented or depressurised, whether empty, full or partly full.
- Transmitter is working normally.
- Transmitter is switched off.

Recommendation – Mount sensor in a low part of pipe run, i.e. pipe normally full.

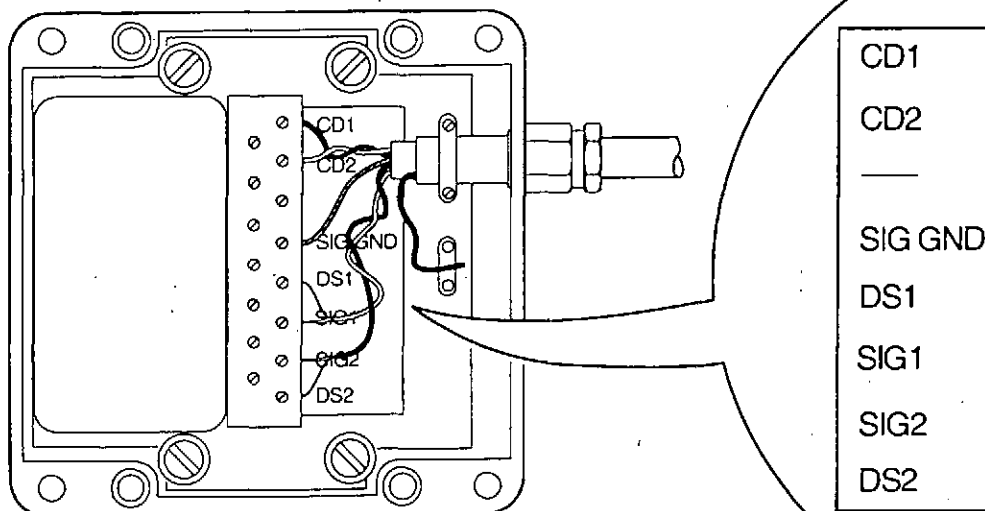
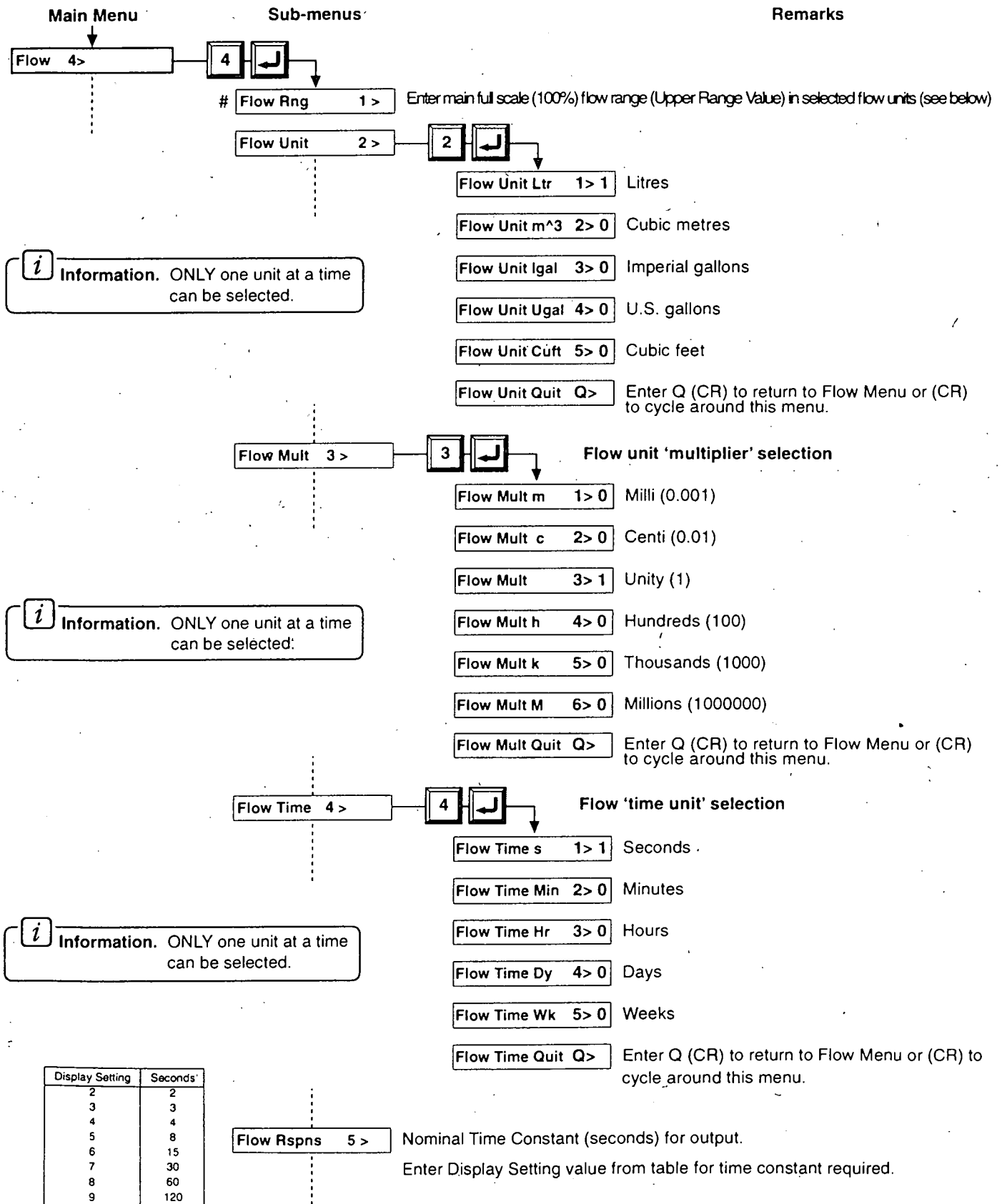


Fig. 1.1 Sensor Box Wiring

# APPENDIX B...

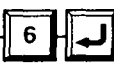
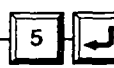
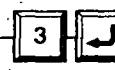

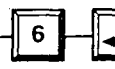



**Information.** THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS REQUIRE 'LEVEL 1' OR 'LEVEL 2' ACCESS.  
(Enter passwords in 'Login En' parameter above).

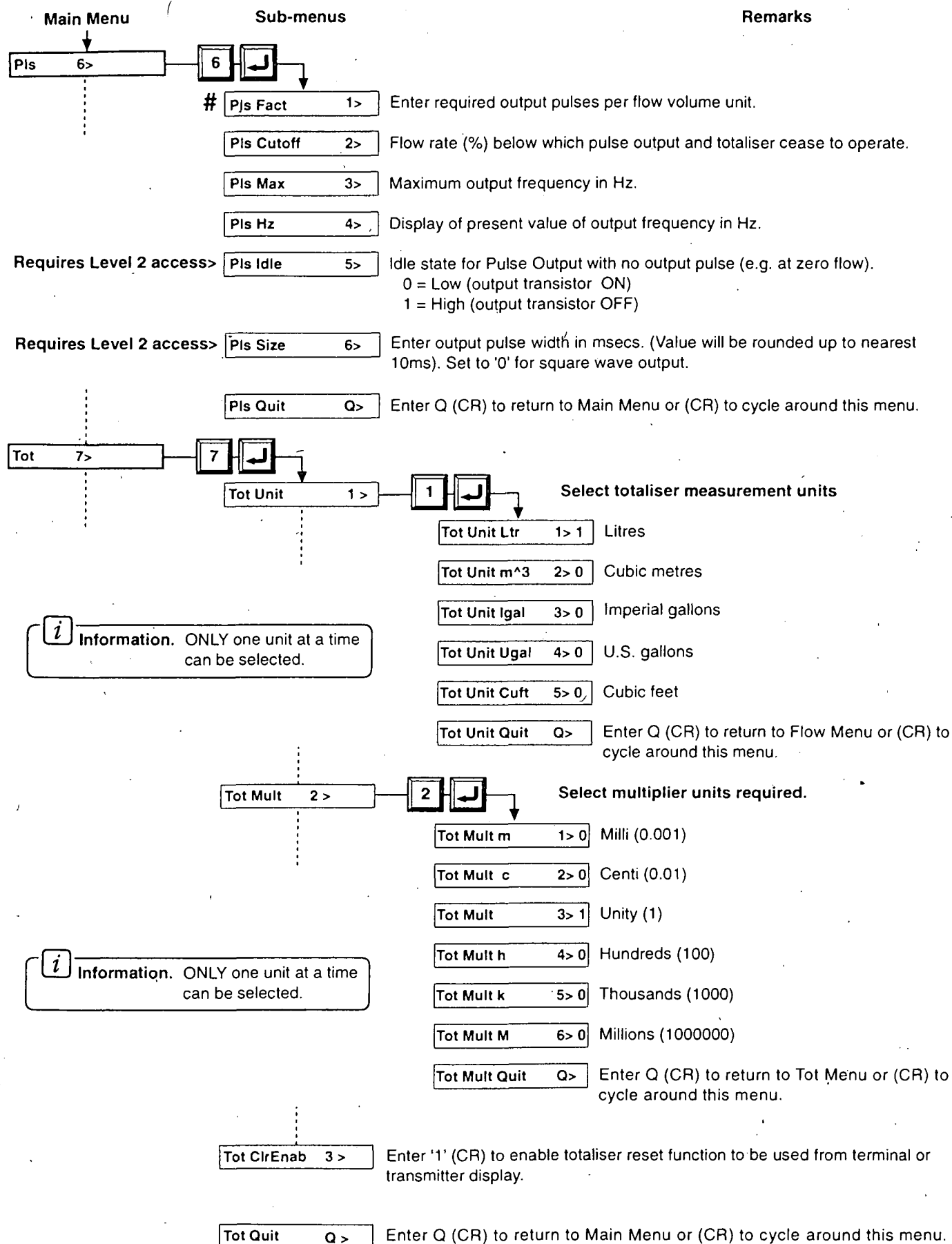


## ...APPENDIX B

### ...B1.2 Description of Parameters

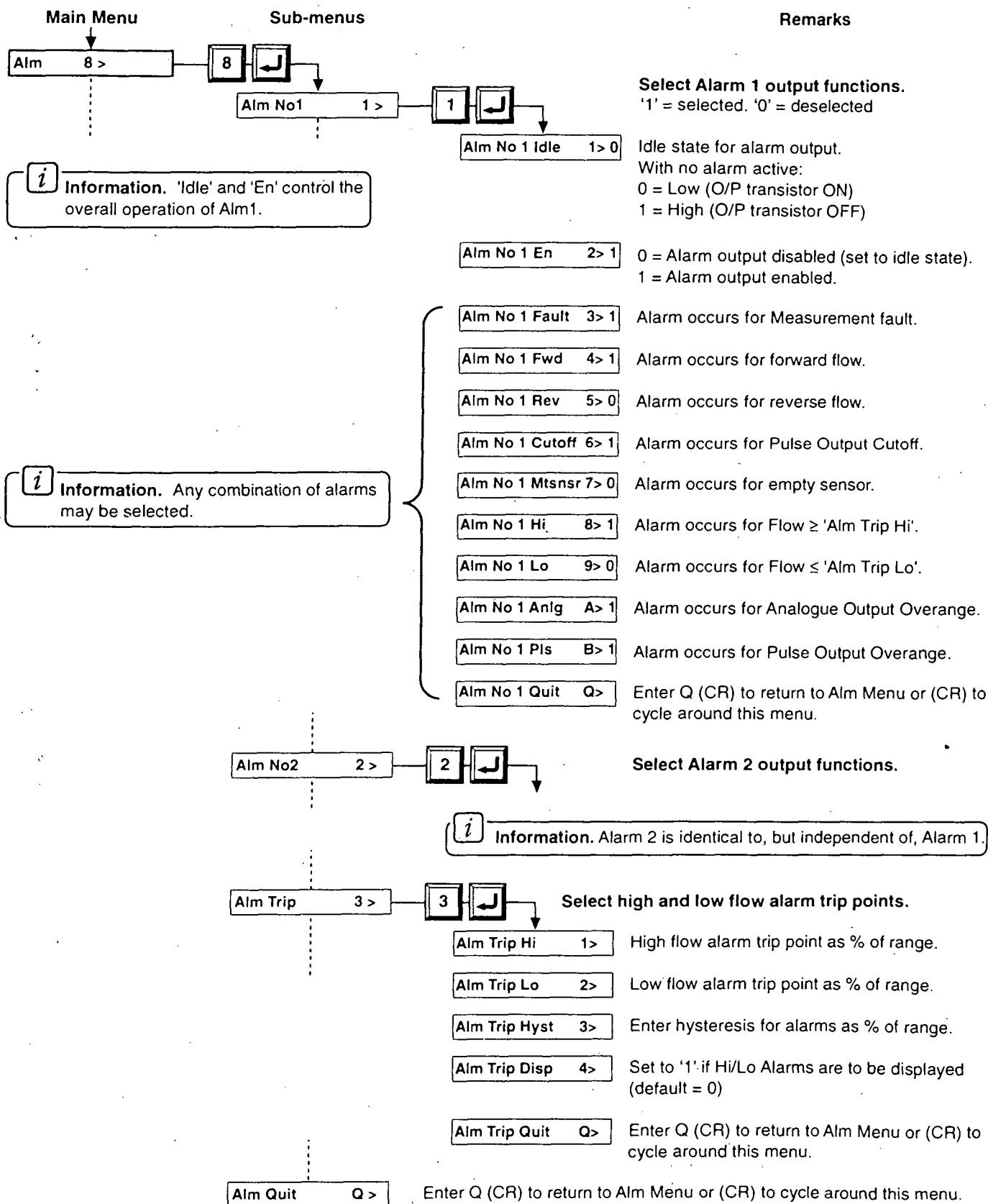
Main Menu	Sub-menus	Remarks
	Flow Probe 6 > 	Set additional parameters for insertion probes.
	# Flow Probe Ins 1 > 1.000	Insertion factor for probes (default = 1.000).
	# Flow Probe Prof 2 > 1.000	Flow profile correction factor (default = 1.000).
	Flow Probe Quit Q >	Enter Q (CR) to return to Flow Menu or (CR) to cycle around this menu.
	Flow % 7 >	Displays current flow as percentage of range.
Requires Level 2 access >	Flow Cutoff 8 >	Flow velocity in mm/s below which all outputs are set to zero. (default = 5)
	Flow Quit Q >	Enter Q (CR) to return to Main Menu or (CR) to cycle around this menu.
	Anlg 5 > 	
	Anlg Fsd 1 > 20	Enter output current in mA for 100% flow ( $0 \leq \text{FSD} \leq 21$ ).
	Anlg Zero 2 > 4	Enter output current in mA for 0% flow ( $0 \leq \text{ZERO} \leq 21$ ).
	Anlg Dir 3 > 	Select direction(s) of operation for analogue output.
 <b>Information.</b> Select both parameters for bidirectional operation (e.g. when dual current output is fitted). If both are zero, then $I_{\text{OUT}}$ is always 0%.	Anlg Dir Fwd 1 > 1	Analogue output responds to forward flow.
	Anlg Dir Rev 2 > 0	Analogue output responds to reverse flow.
	Anlg Dir Quit Q >	Enter Q (CR) to return to Anlg Menu or (CR) to cycle around this menu.
	Anlg No 2 4 >	Full scale flow range for second analogue range, as percentage of main flow range (default = 100%)
	Anlg mA .5 >	Displays present output current in mA.
Requires Level 2 access >	Anlg Hart 6 > 	
	Anlg Hart En 1 > 0	Set to '1' to allow writing to Write Protect Level 1.
	Anlg Hart En 2 > 0	Set to '1' to allow writing to Write Protect Levels 1 or 2.
 <b>Information.</b> HART variants only.	Anlg Hart Anlg 3 > 0	Set to '1' to allow Analogue Output to function in 'MultiDrop' (3-wire) mode.
	Anlg Hart Quit Q >	Enter Q (CR) to return to Main Menu or (CR) to cycle around this menu.
	Anlg Quit Q >	Enter Q (CR) to return to Main Menu or (CR) to cycle around this menu.

# APPENDIX B...



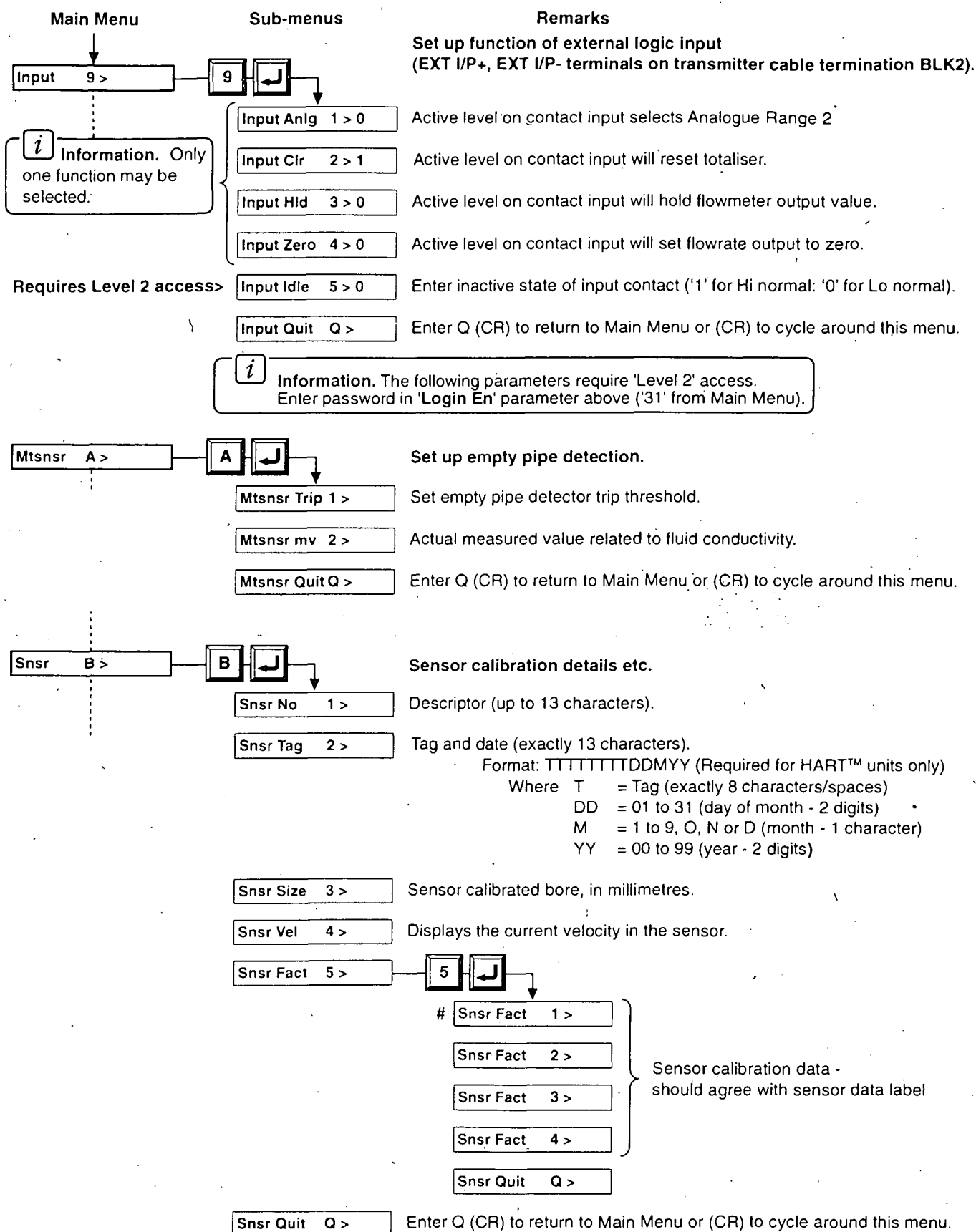
## ...APPENDIX B

### ...B1.2 Description of Parameters







# APPENDIX B...



## ...APPENDIX B

### ...B1.2 Description of Parameters

Main Menu	Sub-menus	Remarks
Test C >	 	<b>System Test:</b> Exercises all outputs (as programmed) from manually entered flowrate.
	Test Mode 1 >	If set to '1', transmitter is in 'Test Mode'
	# Test Flow 2 >	Displays current flowrate: if in 'Test Mode', then any value may be entered manually
	Test % 3 >	Flowrate as a percentage.
	Test Hz 4 >	Output Frequency.
	Test mA 5 >	Output Current.
	Test Vel 6 >	Flow velocity in sensor (for the flowrate above).
	Test Alm 7 >	Shows currently active alarms,* sequentially ('Clr' indicates no alarms active).
	Test Txv 8 >	Live flow velocity (uncorrected for sensor calibration).
	Test Quit Q >	Enter Q (CR) to return to Main Menu or (CR) to cycle around this menu.

Calculated from  
'Test Flow 2' above



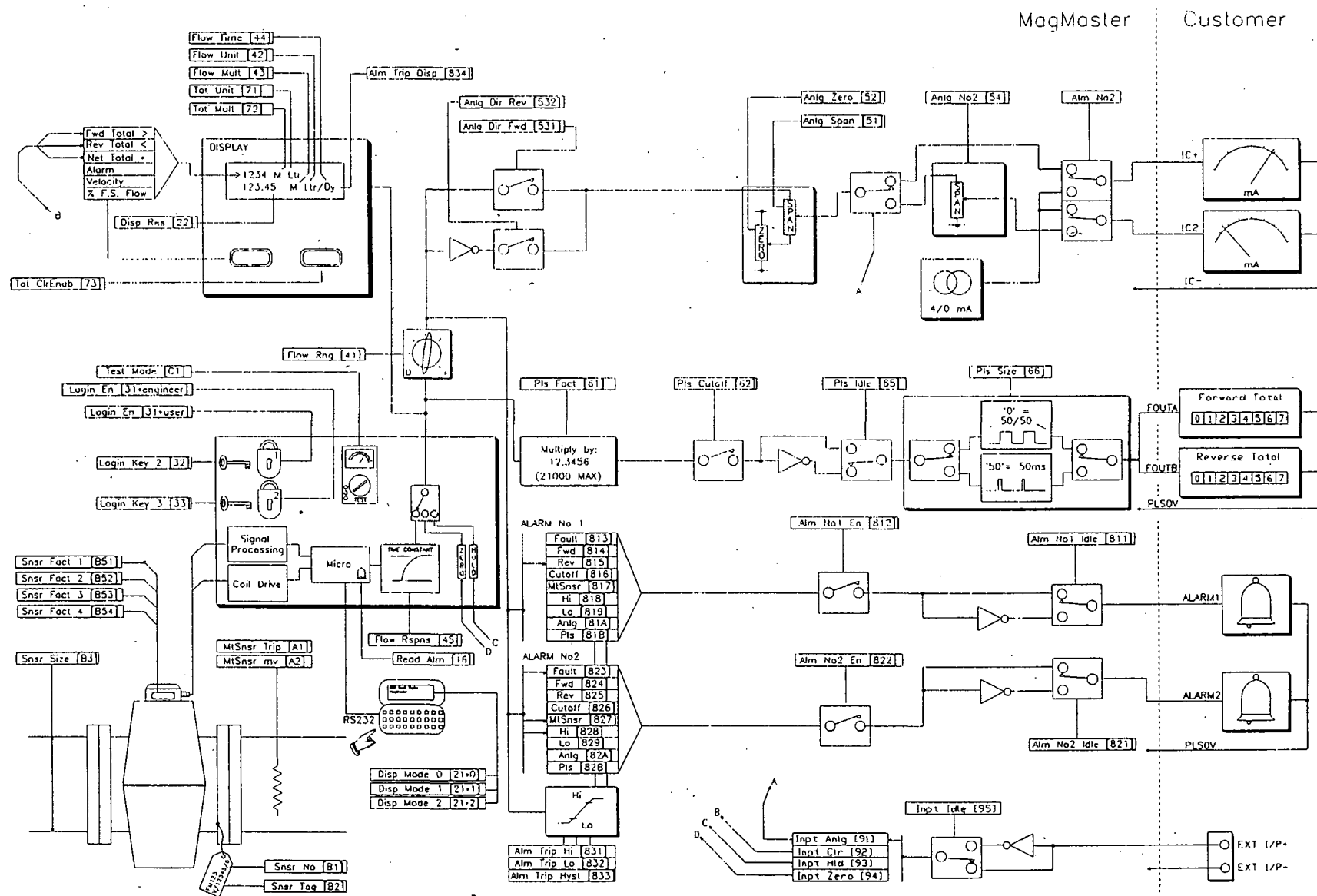
**Information.** 'Test Mode' self cancels after 30 minutes, if no further entries are made.

\* If the sensor is empty or disconnected, the alarms 'MtSnsr' and Coil will be displayed as appropriate.

# The maximum which can be entered must not exceed 21000. The value entered may be displayed with a small error in the decimal digits e.g. 1.900 may be displayed as 1.899. This is a display characteristic and the value 1.900 will be used by the MagMaster.

**END OF PARAMETERS**

APPENDIX C MAGMASTER SYSTEM DIAGRAM





## Instruction Manual

## MagMaster™ Electromagnetic Flowmeters

### BOOK 5 Fault Finding

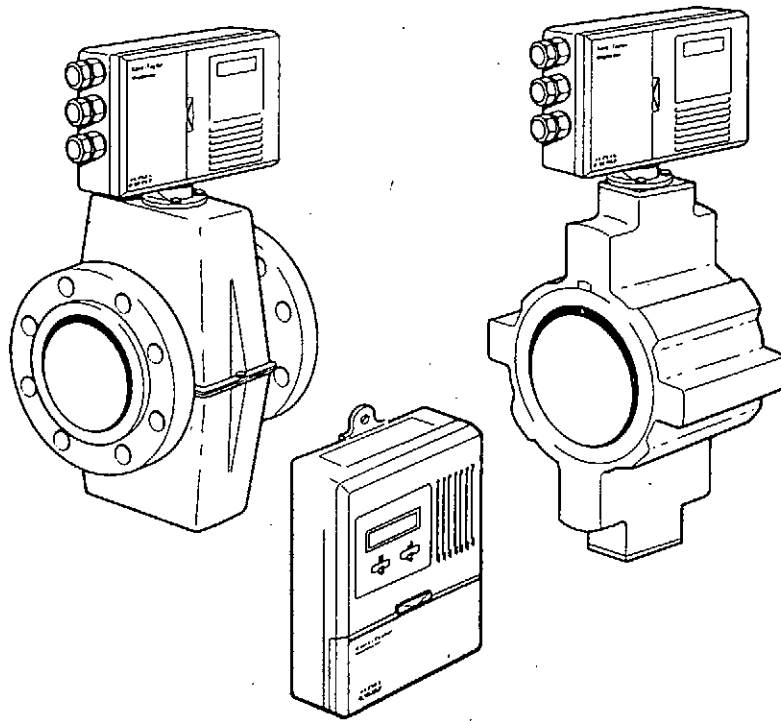


ABB Kent-Taylor



## ABB KENT-TAYLOR



### St Neots

ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. 05907



### Stonehouse

ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. FM 21106



### Stonehouse

Certificate No. 0255

## The Company

ABB Kent-Taylor is an established world force in process instrumentation offering users a total capability in the wide range of product lines available, backed by the worldwide manufacturing, test, calibration and sales and service facilities that are expected from a market leader.

The quality, accuracy and performance of the Company's products result from over 100 years experience of instrument manufacture, combined with a continuous programme of innovative design and development to incorporate the latest technology.

The NAMAS Calibration Laboratory No. 0255(B) is just one of the ten flow calibration plants operated by the Company, and is indicative of ABB Kent-Taylor's dedication to quality and accuracy.

The Company's instrumentation is suitable for a wide range of industrial and scientific applications such as process control, batch processing, power generation, heat treatment, heating and ventilation, laboratories, food, chemical, petrochemical and water industries.

All products are backed by a high standard of technology, service and engineering support, from skilled, experienced sales and design engineers.

## Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 (UK)

Section 6(4) of the above Act requires manufacturers to advise their customers on the safety and handling precautions to be observed when installing, operating, maintaining and servicing their products. Accordingly, the following points must be noted:

1. The relevant sections of these instructions must be read carefully before proceeding.
2. Warning labels on containers and packages must be observed.
3. Installation, operation, maintenance and servicing must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel and in accordance with the information given.
4. Normal safety precautions must be taken to avoid the possibility of an accident occurring when operating in conditions of high pressure and/or temperature.
5. Chemicals must be stored away from heat, protected from temperature extremes and powders kept dry. Normal safe handling procedures must be used.
6. When disposing of chemicals ensure that no two chemicals are mixed.

Safety advice concerning the use of the equipment described in this manual or any relevant hazard data sheets (where applicable) may be obtained from the Company address on the back cover, together with servicing and spares information.

## Notice

Information in this manual is intended only to assist our customers in the efficient operation of our equipment. Use of this manual for any other purpose is specifically prohibited and its contents are not to be reproduced in full or part without prior approval of Technical Communications Department, ABB Kent-Taylor.

## Use of Instructions



**Warning.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of injury or death.



**Caution.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of damage to the product, process or surroundings.



**Note.** Clarification of an instruction or additional information.



**Information.** Further reference for more detailed information or technical details.

Although **Warning** hazards are related to personal injury, and **Caution** hazards are associated with equipment or property damage, it must be understood that operation of damaged equipment could, under certain operational conditions, result in degraded process system performance leading to personal injury or death. Therefore, comply fully with all **Warning** and **Caution** notices.

**CONTENTS****Page****BOOK 5 FAULT FINDING****Section****Page****SAFETY MEASURES ..... 1****1 INTRODUCTION ..... 1****2 FAULT FINDING ..... 2****2.1 Alarms ..... 2****2.2 Test Mode ..... 2****2.3 Fault Finding Flow Chart ..... 3****1 INTRODUCTION**

A very powerful test mode, especially useful during commissioning and plant fault finding, enables all external devices connected to the MagMaster to be tested over the full range of flow rates.

This mode can be used regardless of flow conditions in the sensor, or even with the sensor disconnected, and does not require the use of additional equipment.

**SAFETY MEASURES****MESURES DE SÉCURITÉ****Warning.**

- EXPLOSION HAZARD.  
SUBSTITUTION OF COMPONENTS MAY IMPAIR  
SUITABILITY FOR CLASS I, DIVISION 2.
- EXPLOSION HAZARD.  
DO NOT REMOVE FUSE OR DISCONNECT  
POWER LEADS WHILE CIRCUIT IS LIVE.
- THE LOCAL TERMINAL MUST NOT BE USED  
WHEN THERE IS AN EXPLOSION RISK.

**Avertissement.**

- RISQUE D'EXPLOSION.  
SUBSTITUTION DE COMPOSANTS PEUT RENDRE  
CE MATÉRIEL INACCEPTABLE POUR LES  
EMPLACEMENTS DE CLASSE I, DIVISION 2.
- RISQUE D'EXPLOSION.  
NE PAS RETIRER LE FUSIBLE NI DÉBRANCHER  
LES FILS D'ALIMENTATION TANT QUE LE CIRCUIT  
EST SOUS TENSION.
- NE PAS UTILISER LE TERMINAL LOCAL EN  
ATMOSPHÈRE EXPLOSIVE.

**Warning.**

- Installation and maintenance must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel.
- HAZARDOUS AREA DESIGNATION ON THE EQUIPMENT LABEL MUST BE SUITABLE FOR THE INTENDED DUTY AND LOCATION.
- All relevant sections of this manual must be read before selecting a location.
- Safety requirements of this equipment, any associated equipment and the local environment must be taken into consideration.
- The installation and use of this equipment must be in accordance with relevant national and local standards.

## 2 FAULT FINDING



### Warning.

- Observe all safety measures (See INTRODUCTION).
- Take all precautions to avoid risk to personnel, plant and risk of explosion in hazardous areas.
- Do NOT open the transmitter main casing. There are no user serviceable parts or adjustments inside.
- Service access is restricted to the termination area

Should the MagMaster fail to operate, first check the power supply, then the power supply connections and fuse located in the termination area. If necessary, replace the fuse with one of the correct rating as listed in Book 6.



**Note.** All approved versions to use specified fuses – see Book 6.

Check that all external connections are made correctly.

### 2.1 Alarms

The transmitter has built in diagnostics with alarm indication which interrupts the transmitter local display. A data terminal connected to the transmitter will display these alarms in 'Read Alm' parameter; '16' from Main Menu (see **Warning** in next column).

The table below shows possible alarm indications and Fig. 2.1 Fault Finding Flow Chart indicates checking procedures to find the problems causing the alarms.

For method of interrogating the local display see Startup Section in Book 4.

**Table 2.1 Possible Alarm Indications**

Display	Alarm
MtSnsr	Empty Sensor
Hi	High flow
Lo	Low flow
Anlg	Analogue over range
Pls	Pulse frequency limited
Coil	Sensor Coil open circuit
19, 20, 21	See Fault Finding Flow Chart

### 2.2 Test Mode

To access the Test Mode, connect a terminal device to the Programming Connector as described in APPENDIX A Section.

Select 'Engineer' security level (see Configuration Section). Set 'Test Mode' parameter to '1' and enter an appropriate flow rate in the 'Test Flow' parameter.

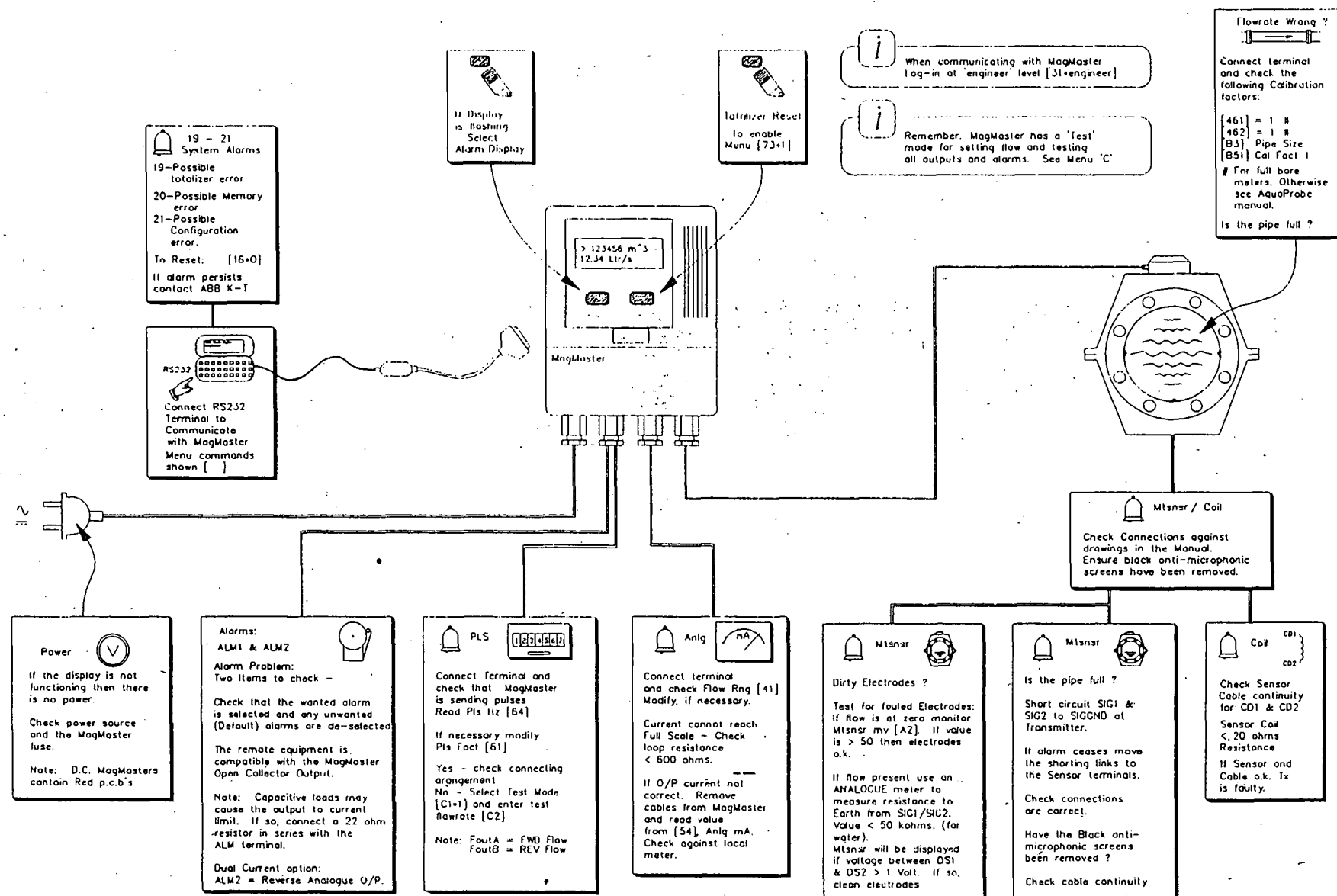
Output responses may now be viewed from the various 'Test' parameters. (See Configuration Section for full details of operation.)



**Warning.** Refer to Safety Measures if a data terminal is to be used to diagnose faults in hazardous locations.



## 2.3 Fault Finding Flow Chart





# Instruction Manual

## MagMaster™, AquaMag and AquaProbe Electromagnetic Flowmeters

### BOOK 6 Accessories and Spares

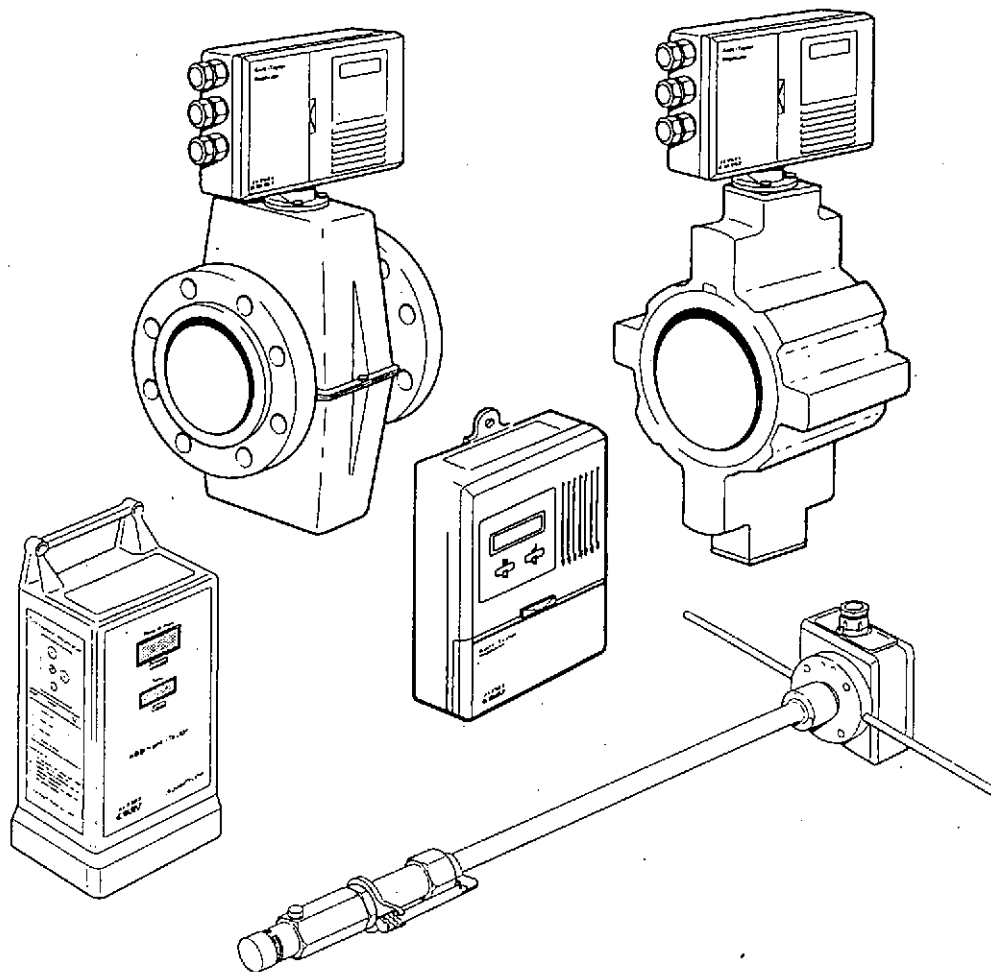


ABB Kent-Taylor



## ABB KENT-TAYLOR



**St Neots**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. Q5907



**Stonehouse**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. FM 21106



**Stonehouse**  
Certificate No. 0255

### The Company

ABB Kent-Taylor is an established world force in process instrumentation offering users a total capability in the wide range of product lines available, backed by the worldwide manufacturing, test, calibration and sales and service facilities that are expected from a market leader.

The quality, accuracy and performance of the Company's products result from over 100 years experience of instrument manufacture, combined with a continuous programme of innovative design and development to incorporate the latest technology.

The NAMAS Calibration Laboratory No. 0255(B) is just one of the ten flow calibration plants operated by the Company, and is indicative of ABB Kent-Taylor's dedication to quality and accuracy.

The Company's instrumentation is suitable for a wide range of industrial and scientific applications such as process control, batch processing, power generation, heat treatment, heating and ventilation, laboratories, food, chemical, petrochemical and water industries.

All products are backed by a high standard of technology, service and engineering support, from skilled, experienced sales and design engineers.

### Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 (UK)

Section 6(4) of the above Act requires manufacturers to advise their customers on the safety and handling precautions to be observed when installing, operating, maintaining and servicing their products. Accordingly, the following points must be noted:

1. The relevant sections of these instructions must be read carefully before proceeding.
2. Warning labels on containers and packages must be observed.
3. Installation, operation, maintenance and servicing must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel and in accordance with the information given.
4. Normal safety precautions must be taken to avoid the possibility of an accident occurring when operating in conditions of high pressure and/or temperature.
5. Chemicals must be stored away from heat, protected from temperature extremes and powders kept dry. Normal safe handling procedures must be used.
6. When disposing of chemicals ensure that no two chemicals are mixed.

Safety advice concerning the use of the equipment described in this manual or any relevant hazard data sheets (where applicable) may be obtained from the Company address on the back cover, together with servicing and spares information.

### Notice

Information in this manual is intended only to assist our customers in the efficient operation of our equipment. Use of this manual for any other purpose is specifically prohibited and its contents are not to be reproduced in full or part without prior approval of Technical Communications Department, ABB Kent-Taylor.

### Use of Instructions



**Warning.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of injury or death.



**Caution.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of damage to the product, process or surroundings.



**Note.** Clarification of an instruction or additional information.



**Information.** Further reference for more detailed information or technical details.

Although **Warning** hazards are related to personal injury, and **Caution** hazards are associated with equipment or property damage, it must be understood that operation of damaged equipment could, under certain operational conditions, result in degraded process system performance leading to personal injury or death. Therefore, comply fully with all **Warning** and **Caution** notices.

---

## CONTENTS

---

### BOOK 6 ACCESSORIES AND SPARES

Section	Page
1 INTRODUCTION	1
2 ACCESSORIES AND SPARES	
2.1 MagMaster	2
2.2 AquaMag and AquaProbe	3
2.2.1 AquaProbe Replacement Parts	3

---

## 1 INTRODUCTION

---

The items in the following lists may be obtained from the Company, by quoting the relative Part Number.

## 2 ACCESSORIES AND SPARES

### 2.1 MagMaster

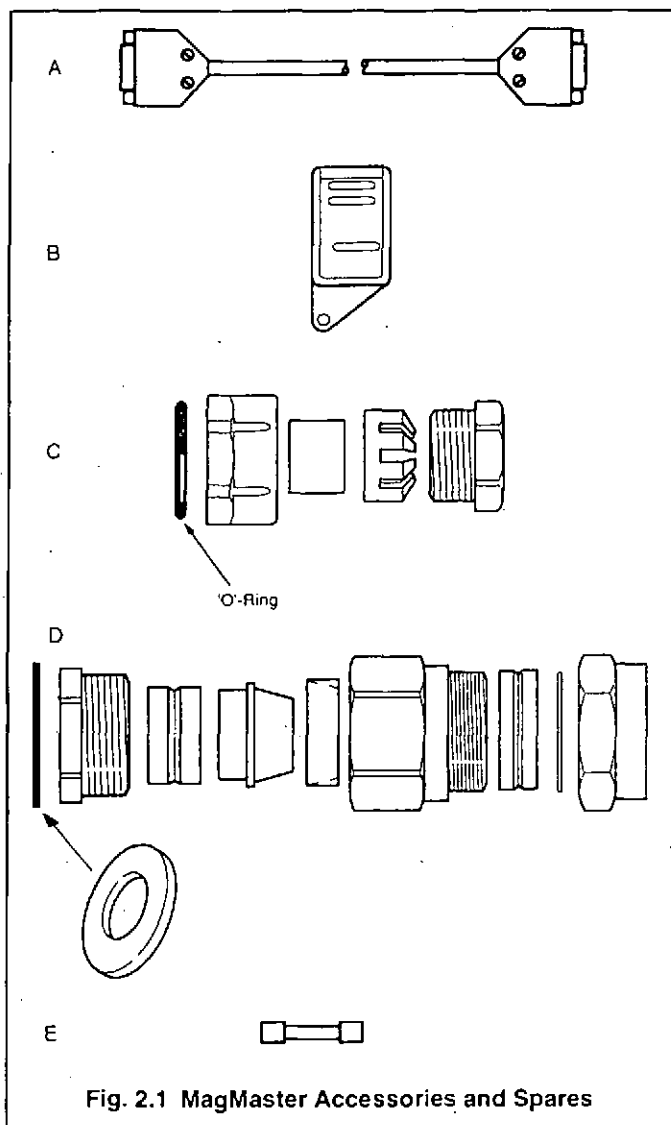


Fig. 2.1 MagMaster Accessories and Spares

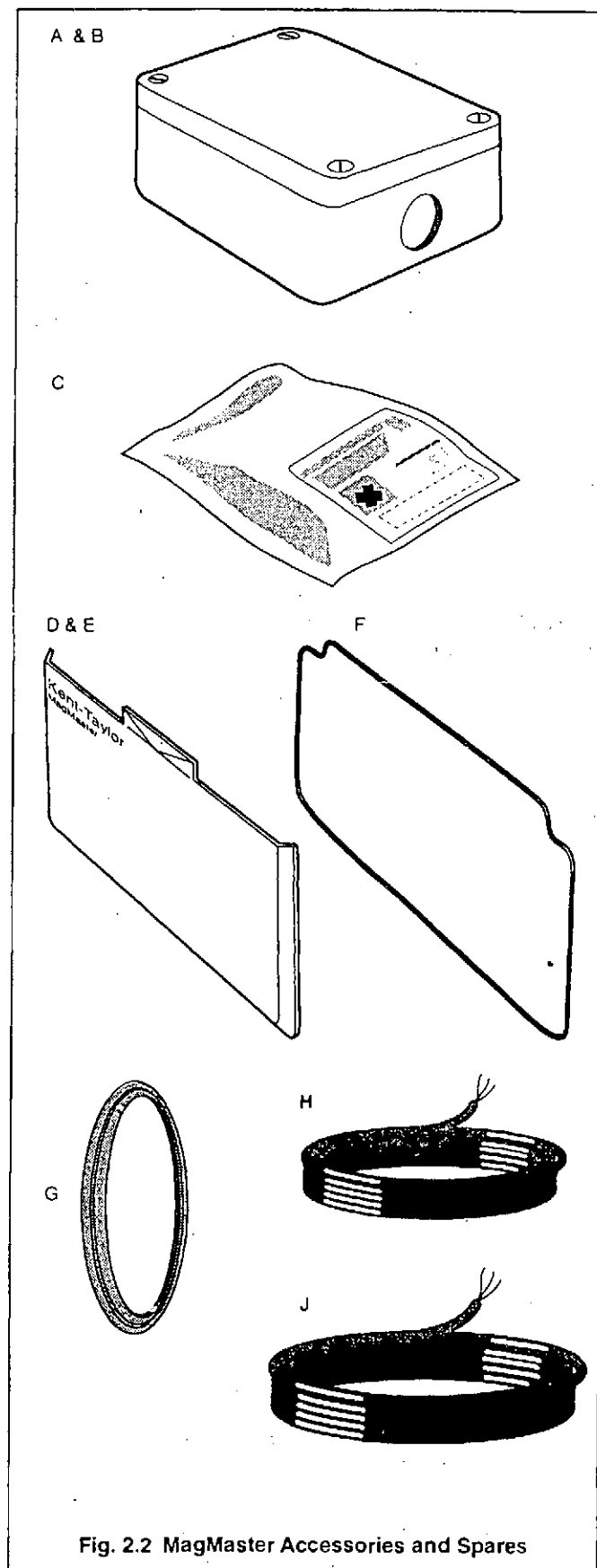


Fig. 2.2 MagMaster Accessories and Spares

Fig. 2.1

A	Serial Data Lead (MagMaster to PC & Toshiba.)	WEBC 0003
B	Display Operating Wand	MEBX 9902
C	M20 Plastic Gland (with fittings)	MUFA 9912
D	Armoured Gland (with fittings)	MUFA 9913
E	Fuses (see Table 2.1)	
F	HART Command Summary Information	MEFD 0001

Fig. 2.2

A	Sensor Cable Junction Box ( M20 fitting)	WABX 0020
B	Sensor Cable Junction Box ( 1/2" NPT fitting)	WABX 0021
C	250g Potting Compound (Standard)	0218474
	(Hazardous Area – 2 Packs Required).	
D	Transmitter Terminal Cover (Remote Version)	MEAX 9916
E	Transmitter Terminal Cover (Integral Version)	MEAX 9915
F	Transmitter Terminal Cover Seal	MEAX 9924
G	Gasket (Hygienic Flowmeter)	see Table 2.2
H	Standard Sensor Cable	Call Sales Office.
J	Armoured Sensor Cable	Call Sales Office.

## 2 ACCESSORIES AND SPARES...

Table 2.1 Fuses

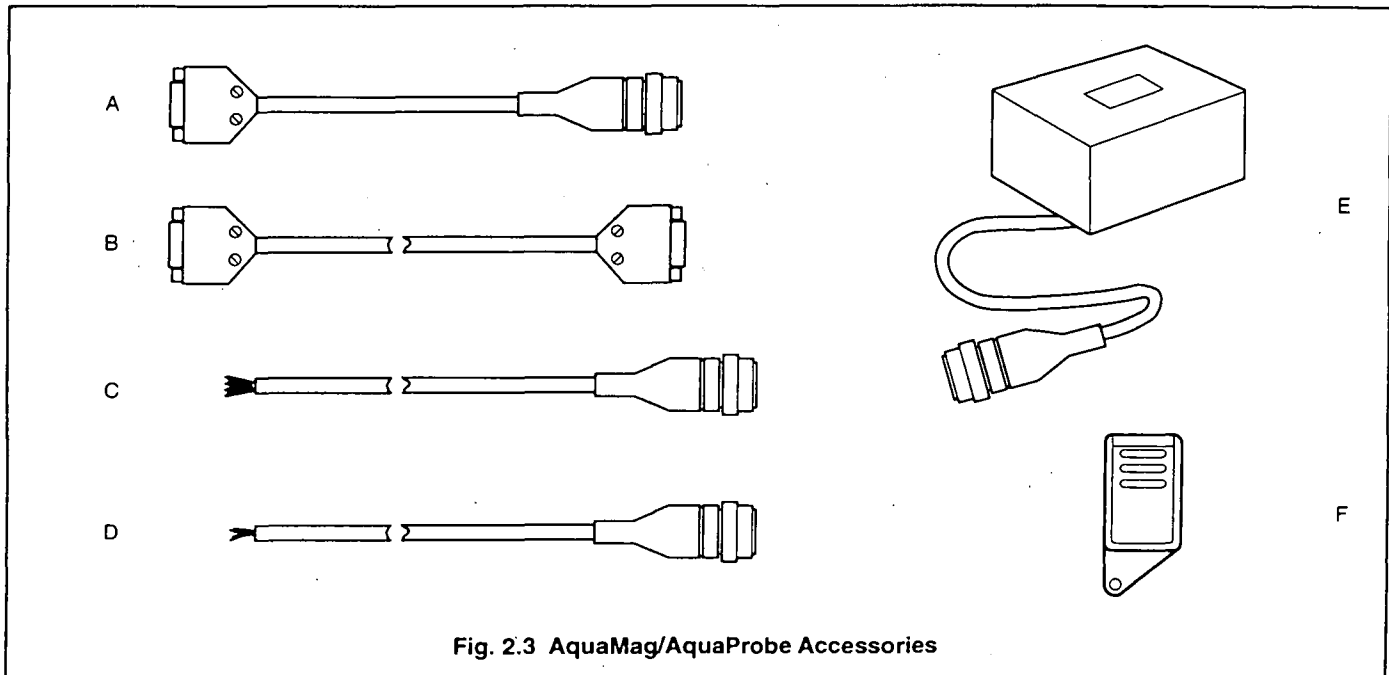
Component Ref.	Part No.	Description	Supplier	Approvals	
				IEC	BS
F1 - DC	B6490	FUSE 3.15A AS.T 20mm	SHURTER 034-3122	IEC 127/111	BS4265
			BUSSMAN S506/3.15A	IEC 127/111	UL. BS4265
F1 - AC	B7721	FUSE 500mA AS.T 20mm	SHURTER 034-3114	IEC 127/111	BS4265
			BUSSMAN S504/500MA	IEC 127/111	UL. BS4265
			BUSSMAN S506/500MA	IEC 127/111	UL. BS4265

Table 2.2 Gaskets (for Hygienic Flowmeters)

Meter Size	Part No.	
	EPDM	Nitrile Rubber
20mm (0.75in)	MRAX2708	MRAX2808
25mm (1in)		
40mm (1.5in)	MRAX2711	MRAX2811
50mm (2in)	MRAX2712	MRAX2812
65mm (2.5in)	MRAX2713	MRAX2813
80mm (3in)	MRAX2714	MRAX2814

## ...2 ACCESSORIES AND SPARES

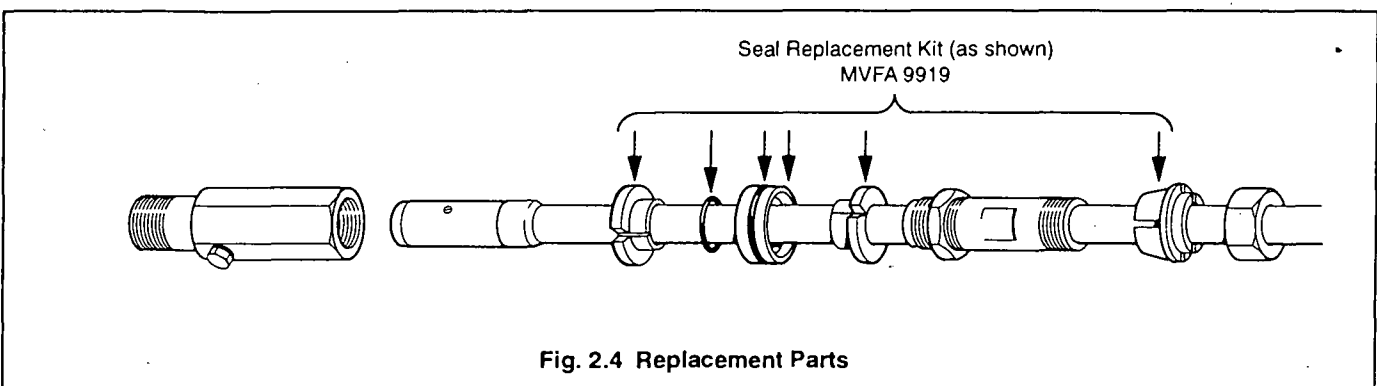
### 2.2 AquaMag and AquaProbe



- A Communication adaptor (to connect to Psion Organiser etc.)
- B Serial Data Lead (to connect PC to 'A' above)
- C Output Cable Assembly (14-core plus screen)
- D Power Supply Lead
- E Battery Pack
- F Display Operating Wand

WEBC 0004  
WEBC 0003  
MVBX 99147  
STT 3162  
STT 3310  
MEBX 9902

#### 2.2.1 AquaProbe Replacement Parts





## PRODUCTS AND SERVICING

### A Comprehensive Instrumentation Range

**Sensors, transmitters and related instruments for flow, temperature, pressure, level and other process variables**

#### **Flowmeters**

electromagnetic, ultrasonic, turbine, differential pressure, wedge, rotary shunt, coriolis.

#### **Differential Pressure transmitters**

electronic and pneumatic.

#### **Temperature**

sensors and transmitters, fibre optic systems.

#### **Pressure transmitters.**

#### **Level**

sensors and controllers.

#### **Tank gauging systems.**

#### **Cable-length measuring systems.**

**Indicators, recorders, controllers and process management systems**

#### **Recorders**

circular and strip-chart types (single and multi-point) for temperature, pressure, flow and many other process measurements.

#### **Controllers**

digital display, electronic, pneumatic. Discrete single-loop and multi-loop controllers which can be linked to a common display station, process computer or personal computer.

#### **Pneumatic panel or rack-mounted display and control instrumentation**

**Liquid and gas monitors and analysers for on-line and laboratory applications**

#### **Sensors**

pH, redox, selective ion, conductivity and dissolved oxygen.

#### **Transmitters**

Online pH, conductivity, and dissolved oxygen transmitters and associated sensing systems.

#### **Monitors and Analysers**

for water quality monitoring in environmental, power generation and general industrial applications including: pH, conductivity, ammonia; nitrate, phosphate, silica, sodium, chloride, fluoride, dissolved oxygen and hydrazine.

#### **Packaged analytical instrumentation laboratories.**

#### **Gas analysers**

Zirconia, paramagnetic, infrared, thermal conductivity.

### Servicing

ABB Kent-Taylor provides a comprehensive after sales service via a Worldwide Service Organisation. Contact one of the following offices for details on your nearest Service and Repair Centre.

#### **United Kingdom**

London

ABB Kent-Taylor Limited

Tel: (01480) 470781

Fax: (01480) 470787

#### **United States of America**

Rochester

ABB Kent-Taylor Inc.

Tel: (716) 2926050

Fax: (716) 2736207

#### **Italy**

Lenno (Como)

ABB Kent-Taylor SpA

Tel: (0344) 58111

Fax: (0344) 56278



## Instruction Manual

# MagMaster™ Electromagnetic Flowmeters

## BOOK 7 Keypad Version

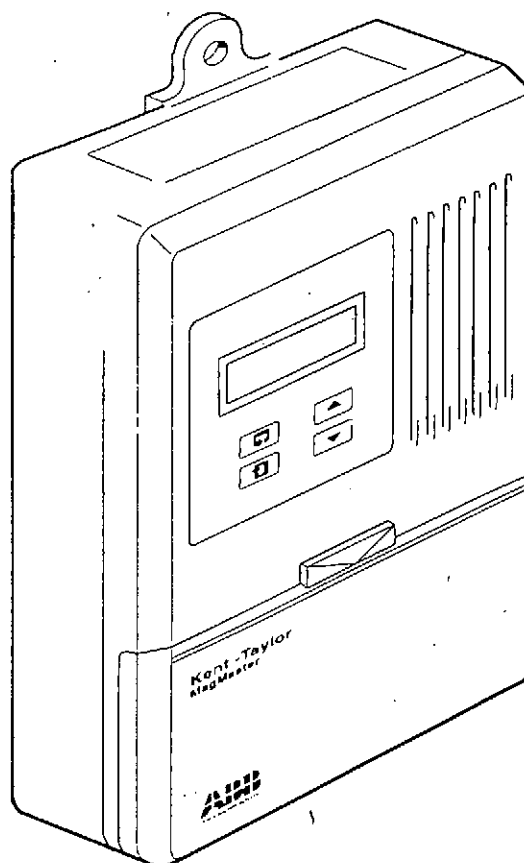


ABB Kent-Taylor



## ABB KENT-TAYLOR



**St Neots**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. Q5907



**Stonehouse**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. FM 21106



**Stonehouse**  
Certificate No. 0255

### The Company

ABB Kent-Taylor is an established world force in process instrumentation offering users a total capability in the wide range of product lines available, backed by the worldwide manufacturing, test, calibration and sales and service facilities that are expected from a market leader.

The quality, accuracy and performance of the Company's products result from over 100 years experience of instrument manufacture, combined with a continuous programme of innovative design and development to incorporate the latest technology.

The NAMAS Calibration Laboratory No. 0255(B) is just one of the ten flow calibration plants operated by the Company, and is indicative of ABB Kent-Taylor's dedication to quality and accuracy.

The Company's instrumentation is suitable for a wide range of industrial and scientific applications such as process control, batch processing, power generation, heat treatment, heating and ventilation, laboratories, food, chemical, petrochemical and water industries.

All products are backed by a high standard of technology, service and engineering support, from skilled, experienced sales and design engineers.

### Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 (UK)

Section 6(4) of the above Act requires manufacturers to advise their customers on the safety and handling precautions to be observed when installing, operating, maintaining and servicing their products. Accordingly, the following points must be noted:

1. The relevant sections of these instructions must be read carefully before proceeding.
2. Warning labels on containers and packages must be observed.
3. Installation, operation, maintenance and servicing must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel and in accordance with the information given.
4. Normal safety precautions must be taken to avoid the possibility of an accident occurring when operating in conditions of high pressure and/or temperature.
5. Chemicals must be stored away from heat, protected from temperature extremes and powders kept dry. Normal safe handling procedures must be used.
6. When disposing of chemicals ensure that no two chemicals are mixed.

Safety advice concerning the use of the equipment described in this manual or any relevant hazard data sheets (where applicable) may be obtained from the Company address on the back cover, together with servicing and spares information

### Notice

Information in this manual is intended only to assist our customers in the efficient operation of our equipment. Use of this manual for any other purpose is specifically prohibited and its contents are not to be reproduced in full or part without prior approval of Technical Communications Department, ABB Kent-Taylor.

### Use of Instructions



**Warning.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of injury or death.



**Caution.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of damage to the product, process or surroundings.



**Note.** Clarification of an instruction or additional information.



**Information.** Further reference for more detailed information or technical details.

Although **Warning** hazards are related to personal injury, and **Caution** hazards are associated with equipment or property damage, it must be understood that operation of damaged equipment could, under certain operational conditions, result in degraded process system performance leading to personal injury or death. Therefore, comply fully with all **Warning** and **Caution** notices.

## CONTENTS

### BOOK 7 KEYPAD VERSION

Section	Page
1 INTRODUCTION .....	1
2 CONTROLS AND DISPLAYS .....	2
2.1 Displays .....	2
2.2 Switch Familiarisation .....	2
2.3 Rapid Reset/Escape .....	2
3 OPERATION .....	3
3.1 Startup .....	3
3.2 Operation .....	3
3.3 Access to Secure Parameters .....	4
3.3.1 Security Codes .....	4
3.3.2 Changing Parameter Values and Variables .....	4
3.4 Menu Layout .....	5
3.5 Parameter Access and Change .....	6

## 1 INTRODUCTION

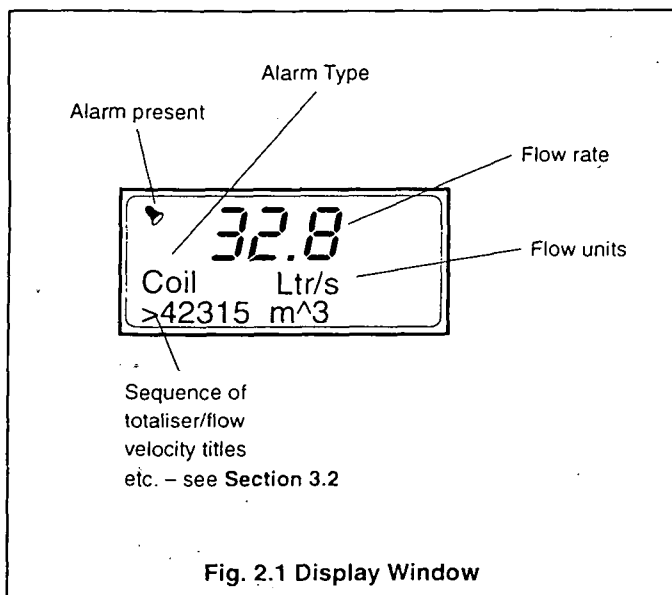
This manual provides details to enable the Keypad MagMaster™ transmitter to be reconfigured from default parameters or from parameters initially set up by the factory to special order.

## 2 CONTROLS AND DISPLAYS

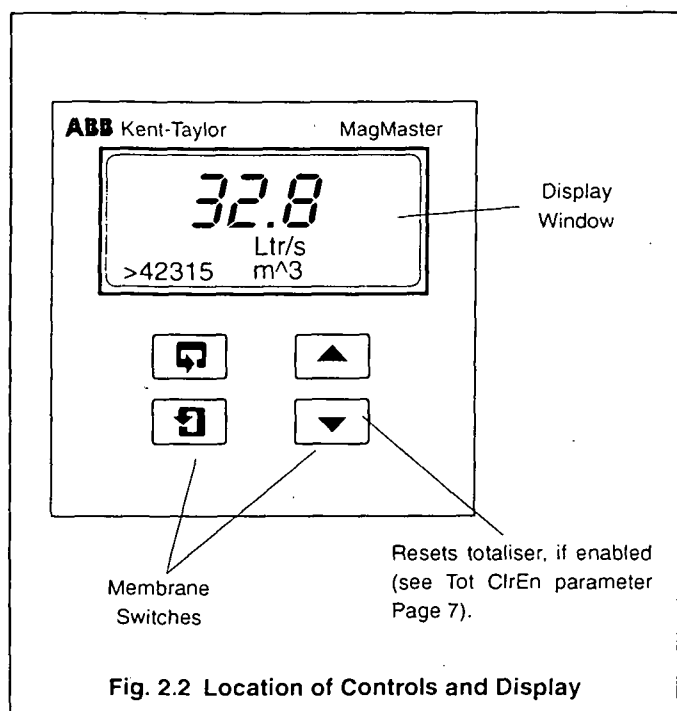
### 2.1 Displays – Fig. 2.1

The display comprises a 5-digit, 7-segment digital upper display line and two 16-character dot-matrix lower display lines. The upper display shows the flow value. The middle display line shows alarm codes on the left, when an alarm is present – see **Book 5 Fault Finding**, and flow units in the centre.

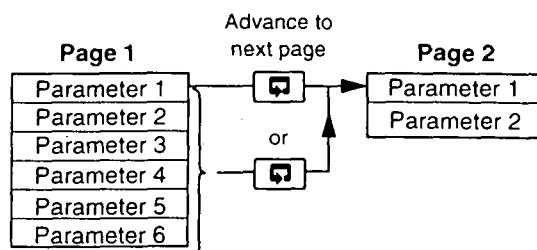
The lower display line shows user information – see Section 3.1.



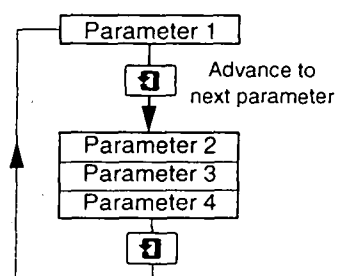
### 2.2 Switch Familiarization – Fig. 2.2



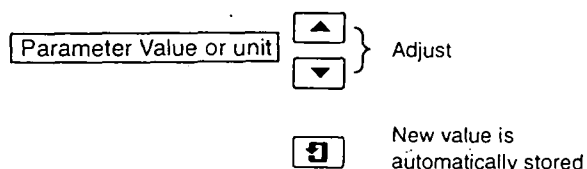
#### A – Advancing to Next Page



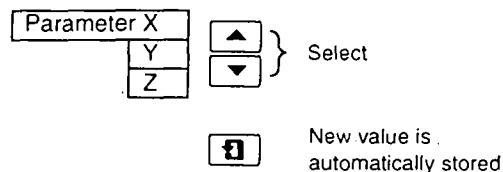
#### B – Moving Between Parameters



#### C – Adjusting and Storing a Parameter Value




#### D – Selecting and Storing a Parameter Choice



**Fig. 2.3 Membrane Switch Functions**

### 2.3 Rapid Reset/Escape

 Depressing this switch for 5 seconds and then releasing it will exit the menu system and return to normal operating mode.

**Fig. 2.4 Rapid Reset/Escape Switch**

### 3 OPERATION

### 3 OPERATION...

#### 3.1 Startup

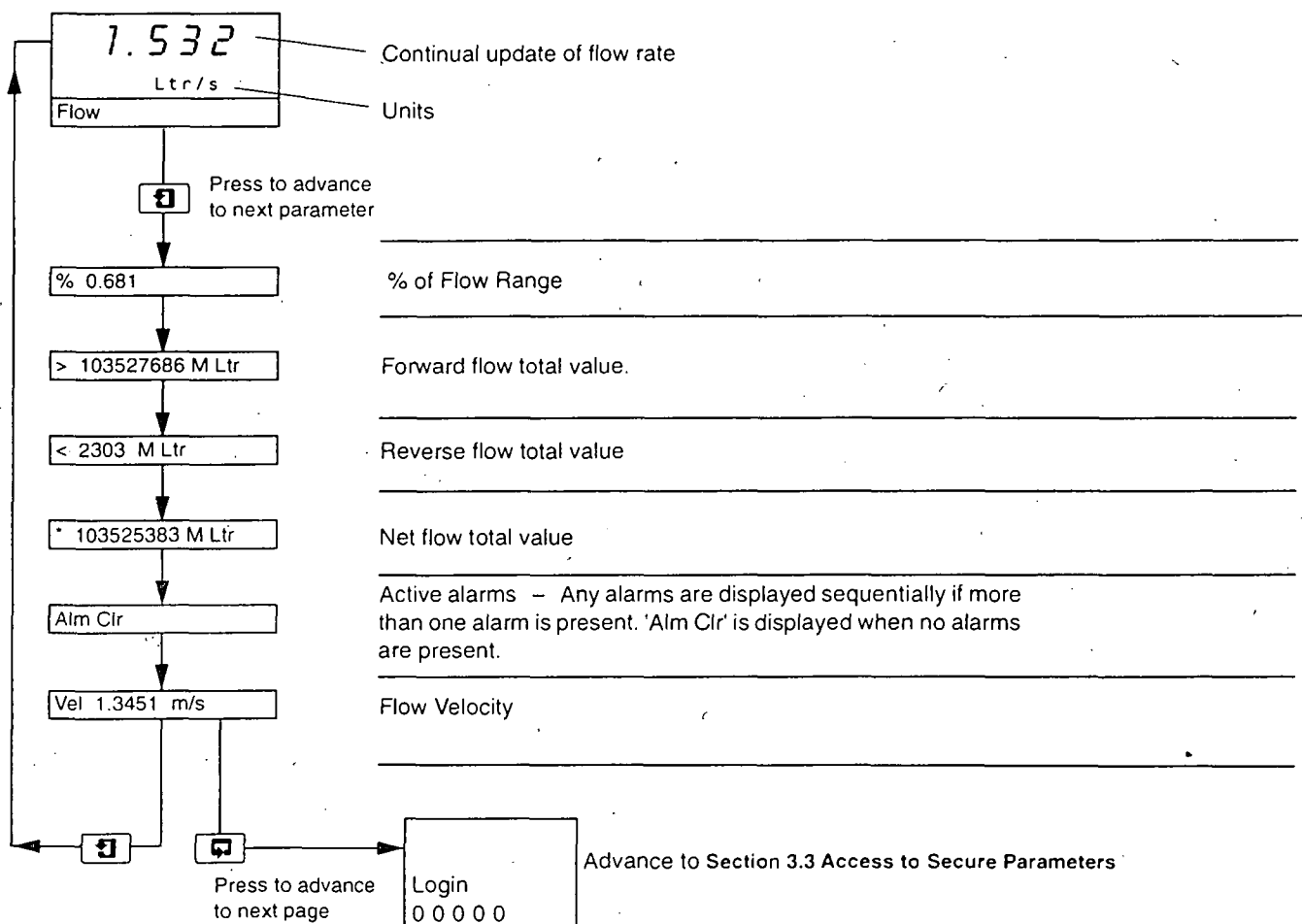
Ensure all necessary electrical connections have been made and switch on the power supply to the flowmeter.

After a short delay, the bottom line of the display will alternate between 'ABB Kent-Taylor' and 'MagMaster V x.x' (MagMaster software version).

In a few seconds the flow rate will appear on the display together with the flow rate units.

#### 3.2 Operation

Viewing User Information (Read Only)





### ...3 OPERATION

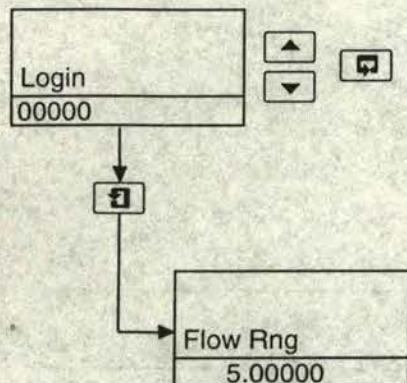
#### 3.3 Access to Secure Parameters

A 5-digit security code is used to prevent tampering with the secure parameters

##### 3.3.1 Security Codes

A code number, between 00000 and 99999, must be entered, to gain access to the secure parameters. A default user code of '10760' has been installed, but this may be changed if required with the 'Login Key 1' parameter - see Section 3.4 Menu Layout.

An 'engineer' code (default - 56360) is used to gain access to test procedures, security code settings and parameters not essential at the user level. This code can be changed if required with the 'Login Key 2' parameter - see Section 3.4 Menu Layout.



At the flashing cursor on the first digit of the Login code number, press either or membrane switches to reach the required digit. To set this digit and pass to the next digit, depress the switch. Continue until all digits have been set, and depress the switch to enter the complete code. If an incorrect value is entered, access to subsequent programming pages is prevented and the display reverts to the Operating Page.

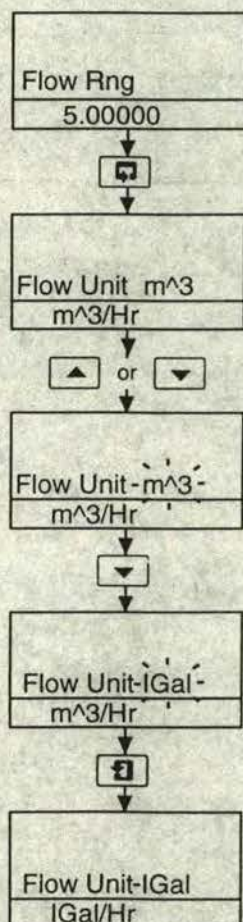
##### Flow Range Parameter

Press to advance to next parameter - see Section 3.4 Menu Layout.

or

Press to advance to next page - see Section 3.4 Menu Layout.

These two switches are used to advance to all subsequent parameters and pages. If a parameter is changed, it is automatically stored on operation of the switch.



##### 3.3.2 Changing Parameter Values and variables

When a parameter is selected, which holds one or more variable units e.g. 'Flow Unit' parameter which can be Litres, Cubic metres, Gallons etc., proceed as follows to change the units: ('Flow Rng' selected).

'Flow Unit' selected.

Press or switch to change the units.



**Note** the existing units will flash at the first depression of the or switch, and further switch depressions will change the type of units displayed.

Depressing the switch will now enter the newly selected units.

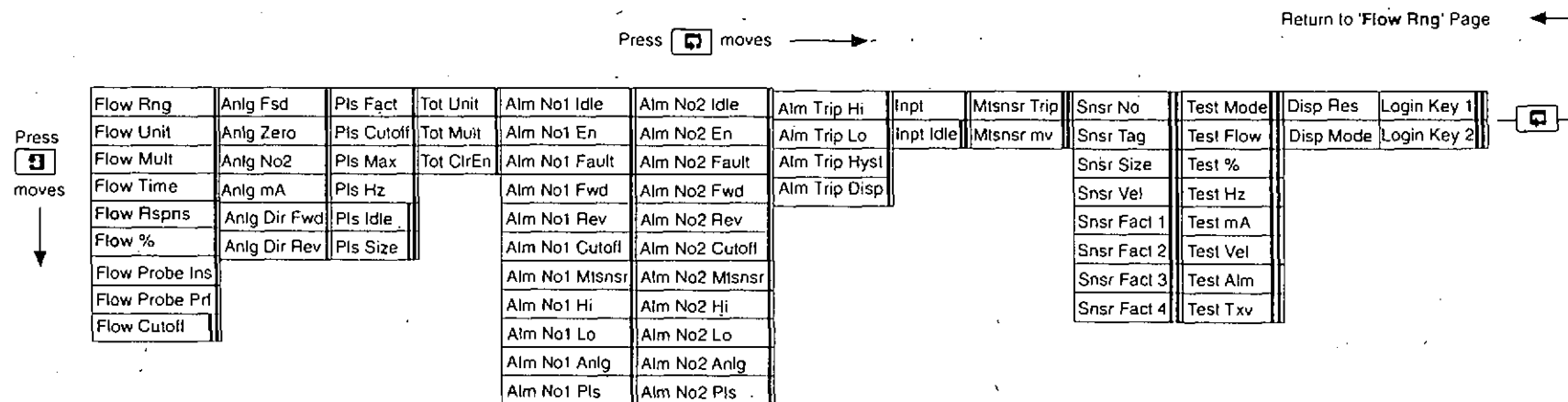
This type of action is similar for all variable units.

Where numerical values are to be changed, initial depression of the or switches cause the first of five digits to be highlighted by a flashing cursor. Change the value with the and switches, the particular digit with the switch and enter the final selection with the switch.





### 3.4 Menu Layout

Below is a summary of all the parameters contained in the menu.



Key


	Security Level 1
	Security Level 2


### ...3 OPERATION



#### 3.5 Parameter Access and Change


The correct security level **MUST** be selected as in **Section 3.3**.

Select the parameter to read the value, or to change it as necessary. All 'live' data displayed is updated each second.

Use the  key to move between pages.

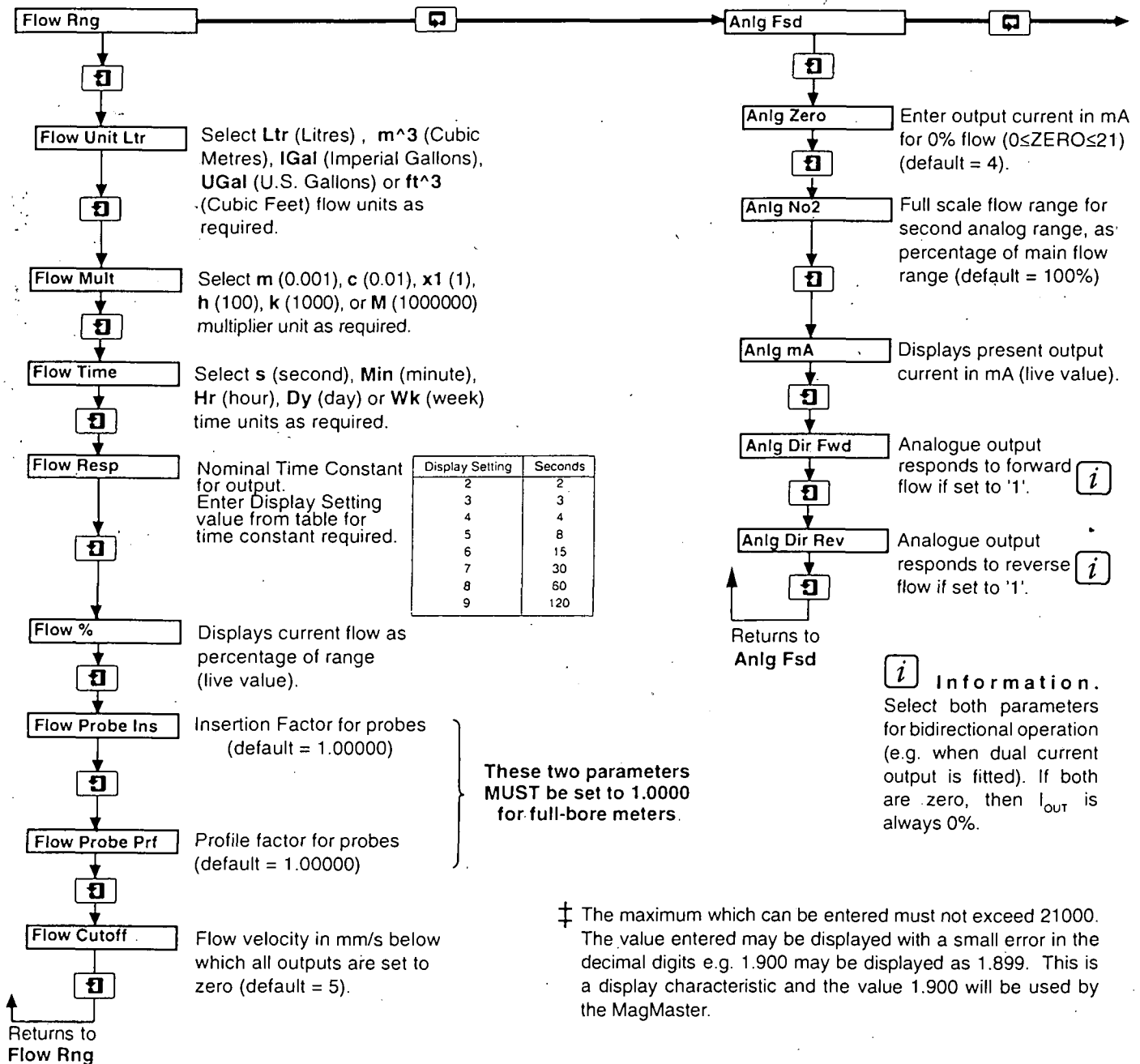
Use the  key to move between parameters.

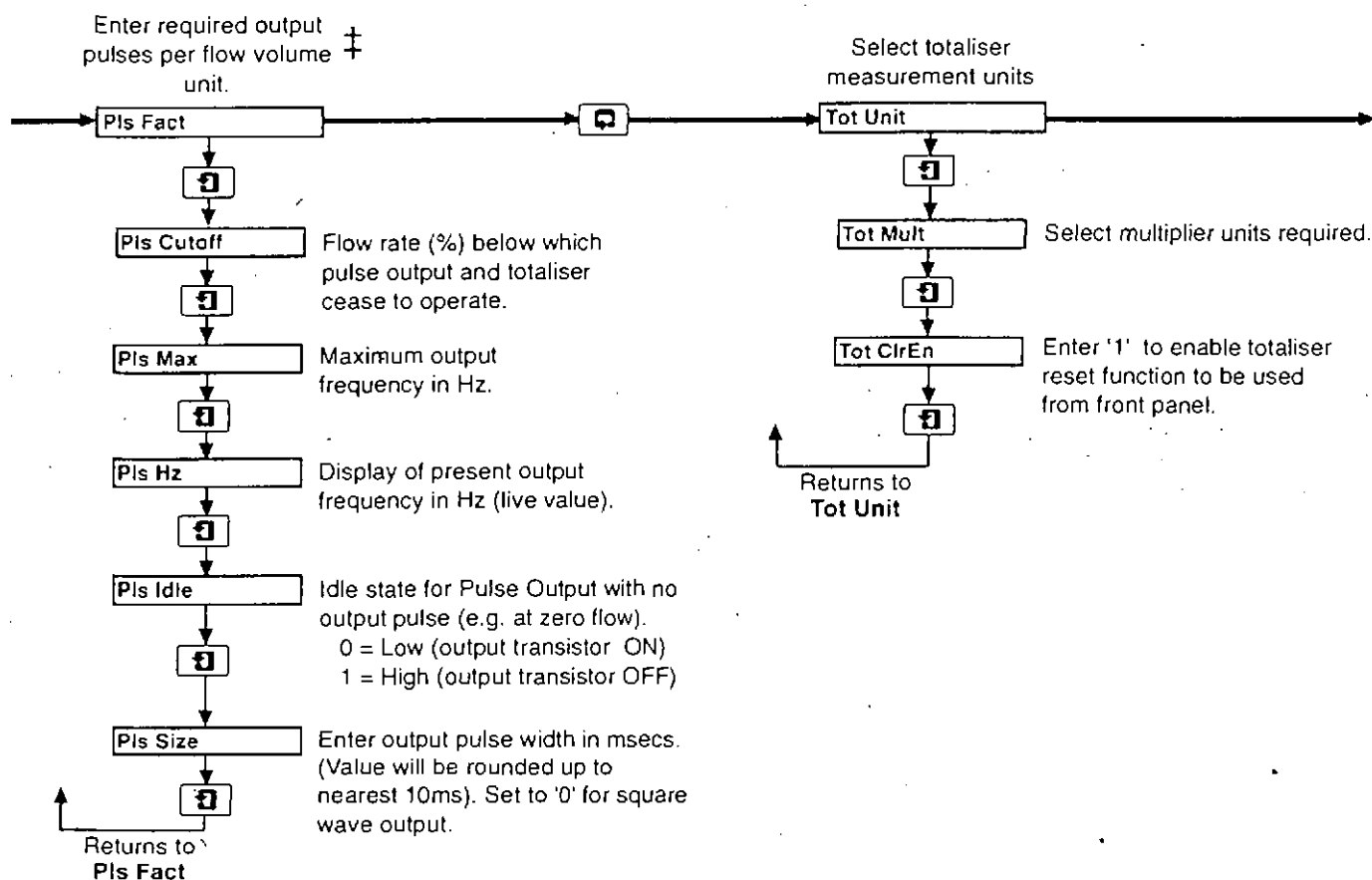
The  and  keys change displayed values and units.

The  key will accept the chosen value or unit.

Enter main full scale (100%) flow range (Upper Range Value) in selected flow units (see below)†

Enter output current in mA for 100% flow ( $0 \leq \text{FSD} \leq 21$ ) (default = 20.)



**3 OPERATION...****...3.5 Parameter Access and Change**

‡ The maximum which can be entered must not exceed 21000. The value entered may be displayed with a small error in the decimal digits e.g. 1.900 may be displayed as 1.899. This is a display characteristic and the value 1.900 will be used by the MagMaster.

### ...3 OPERATION

#### ...3.5 Parameter Access and Change

##### Select Alarm 1 output functions.

'1' = selected. '0' = deselected

Idle state for alarm output. With  
no alarm active:

0 = Low (O/P transistor ON)

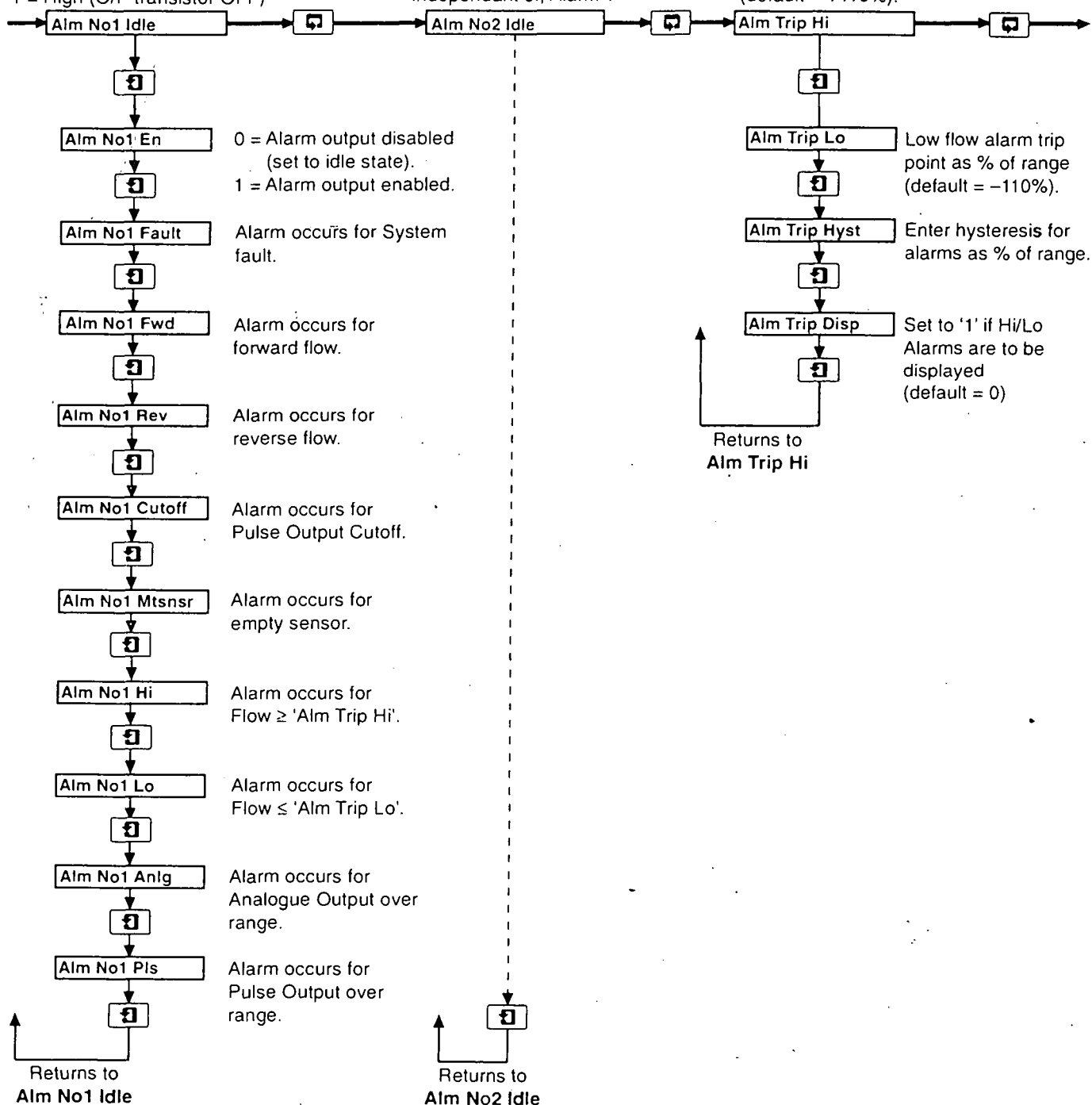
1 = High (O/P transistor OFF)

##### Select Alarm 2 output functions.

Identical to, but  
independent of, Alarm 1

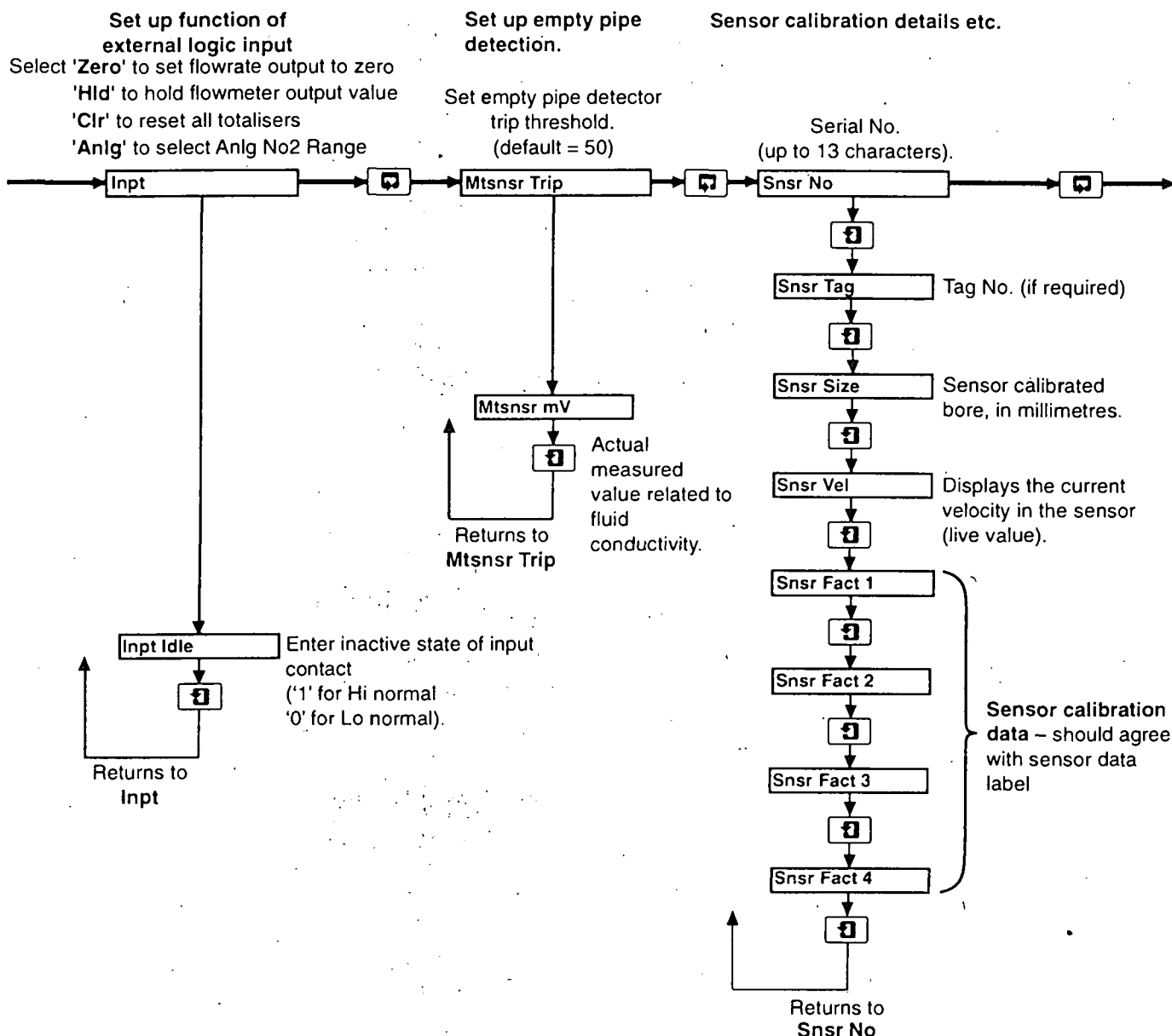
##### Select high and low flow alarm trip points.

High flow alarm trip  
point as % of range  
(default = +110%).



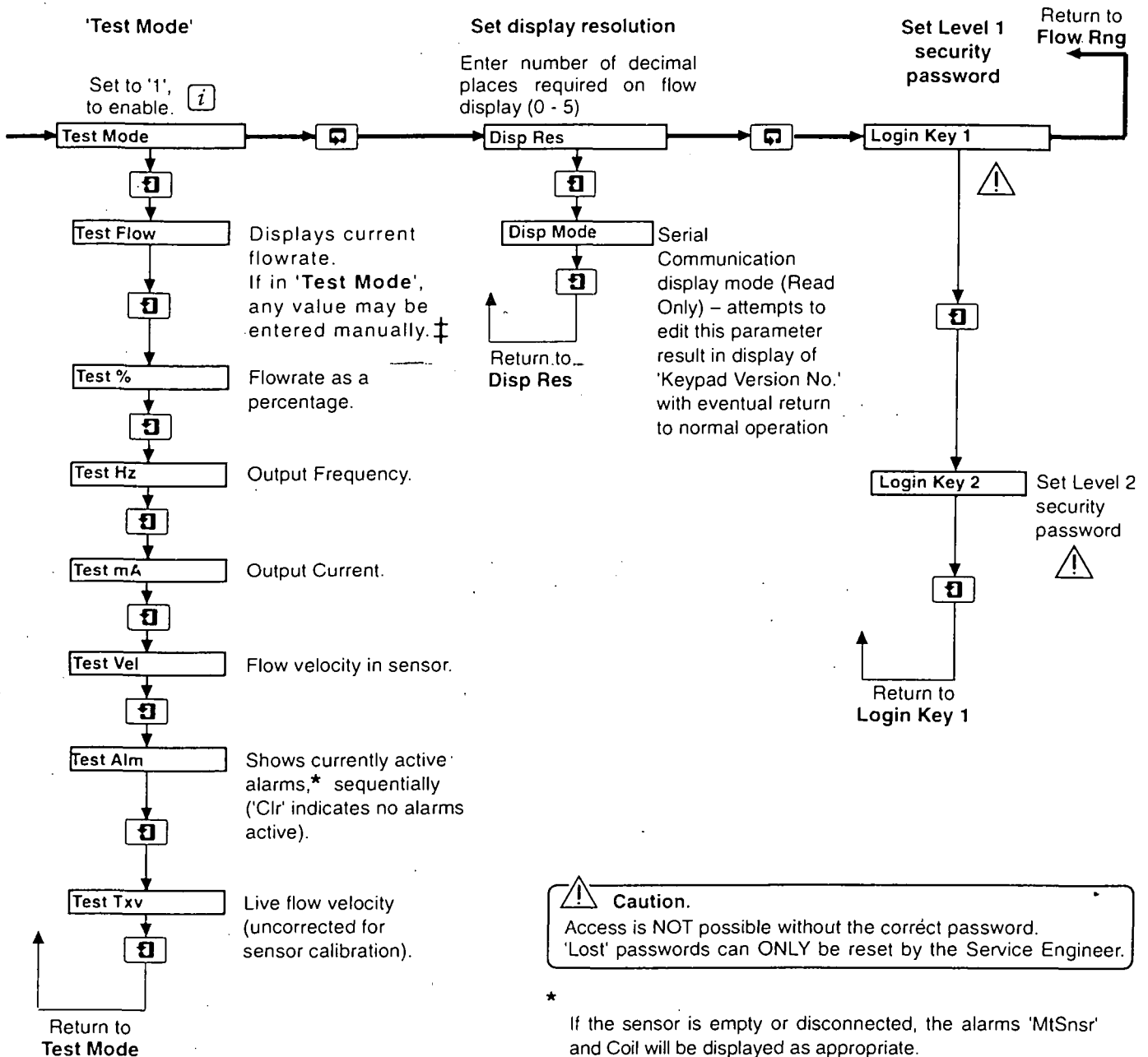
### ...3 OPERATION

#### ...3.5 Parameter Access and Change



### ...3 OPERATION

#### ...3.5 Parameter Access and Change



**Information.**

On performing a Rapid Reset/Escape to return to 'Operation' level, 'Test Mode' is automatically cancelled.



**Caution.**

Access is NOT possible without the correct password. 'Lost' passwords can ONLY be reset by the Service Engineer.

\*

If the sensor is empty or disconnected, the alarms 'MtSnsr' and 'Coil' will be displayed as appropriate.

‡

The maximum which can be entered must not exceed 21000. The value entered may be displayed with a small error in the decimal digits e.g. 1.900 may be displayed as 1.899. This is a display characteristic and the value 1.900 will be used by the MagMaster.

# Instruction Manual

## MagMaster™, AquaMag and AquaProbe Electromagnetic Flowmeters

### BOOK 6 Accessories and Spares

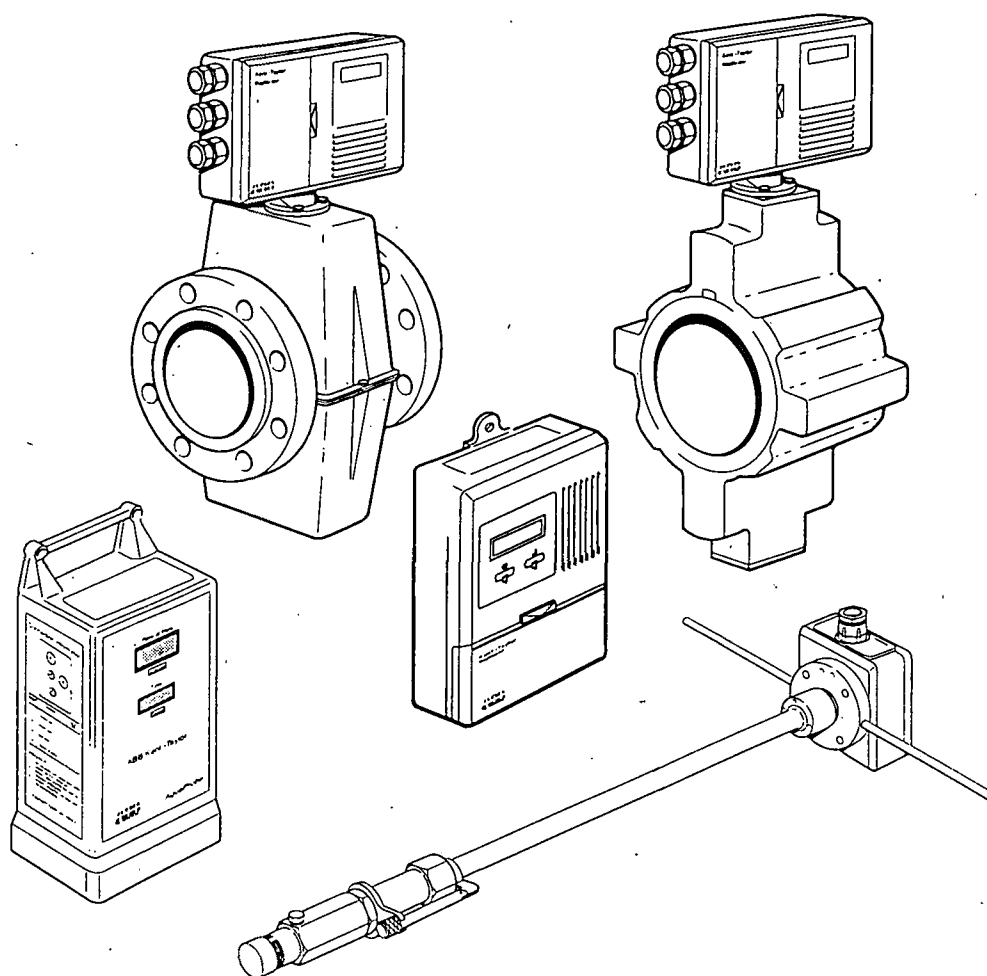


ABB Kent-Taylor



## ABB KENT-TAYLOR



**St Neots**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. Q5907



**Stonehouse**  
ISO 9001 1987 and  
EN 29001 1987  
BS 5750 Part 1 : 1987  
Certificate No. FM 21106



**Stonehouse**  
Certificate No. 0255

### The Company

ABB Kent-Taylor is an established world force in process instrumentation offering users a total capability in the wide range of product lines available, backed by the worldwide manufacturing, test, calibration and sales and service facilities that are expected from a market leader.

The quality, accuracy and performance of the Company's products result from over 100 years experience of instrument manufacture, combined with a continuous programme of innovative design and development to incorporate the latest technology.

The NAMAS Calibration Laboratory No. 0255(B) is just one of the ten flow calibration plants operated by the Company, and is indicative of ABB Kent-Taylor's dedication to quality and accuracy.

The Company's instrumentation is suitable for a wide range of industrial and scientific applications such as process control, batch processing, power generation, heat treatment, heating and ventilation, laboratories, food, chemical, petrochemical and water industries.

All products are backed by a high standard of technology, service and engineering support, from skilled, experienced sales and design engineers.

### Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 (UK)

Section 6(4) of the above Act requires manufacturers to advise their customers on the safety and handling precautions to be observed when installing, operating, maintaining and servicing their products. Accordingly, the following points must be noted:

1. The relevant sections of these instructions must be read carefully before proceeding.
2. Warning labels on containers and packages must be observed.
3. Installation, operation, maintenance and servicing must only be carried out by suitably trained personnel and in accordance with the information given.
4. Normal safety precautions must be taken to avoid the possibility of an accident occurring when operating in conditions of high pressure and/or temperature.
5. Chemicals must be stored away from heat, protected from temperature extremes and powders kept dry. Normal safe handling procedures must be used.
6. When disposing of chemicals ensure that no two chemicals are mixed.

Safety advice concerning the use of the equipment described in this manual or any relevant hazard data sheets (where applicable) may be obtained from the Company address on the back cover, together with servicing and spares information

### Notice

Information in this manual is intended only to assist our customers in the efficient operation of our equipment. Use of this manual for any other purpose is specifically prohibited and its contents are not to be reproduced in full or part without prior approval of Technical Communications Department, ABB Kent-Taylor.

### Use of Instructions



**Warning.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of injury or death.



**Caution.** An instruction that draws attention to the risk of damage to the product, process or surroundings.



**Note.** Clarification of an instruction or additional information.



**Information.** Further reference for more detailed information or technical details.

Although **Warning** hazards are related to personal injury, and **Caution** hazards are associated with equipment or property damage, it must be understood that operation of damaged equipment could, under certain operational conditions, result in degraded process system performance leading to personal injury or death. Therefore, comply fully with all **Warning** and **Caution** notices.



---

## CONTENTS

---

### BOOK 6 ACCESSORIES AND SPARES

Section	Page
1 INTRODUCTION	1
2 ACCESSORIES AND SPARES	
2.1 MagMaster	2
2.2 AquaMag and AquaProbe	3
2.2.1 AquaProbe Replacement Parts	3

---

## 1 INTRODUCTION

---

The items in the following lists may be obtained from the Company, by quoting the relative Part Number.

## 2 ACCESSORIES AND SPARES

### 2.1 MagMaster

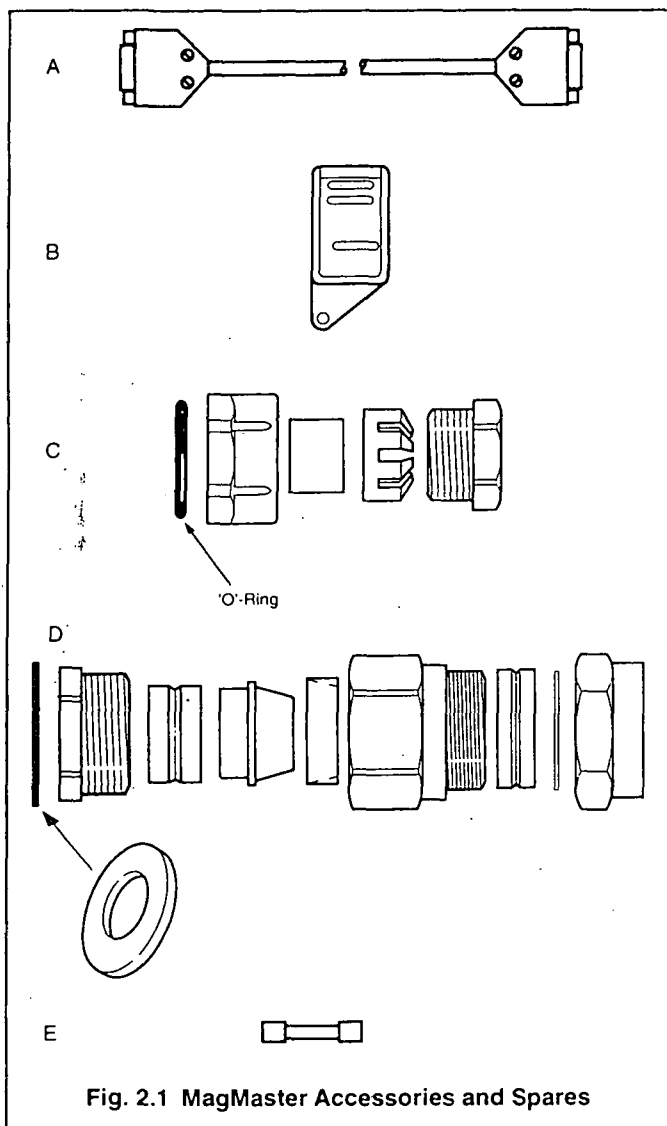


Fig. 2.1 MagMaster Accessories and Spares

Fig. 2.1

A	Serial Data Lead (MagMaster to PC & Toshiba.)	WEBC 0003
B	Display Operating Wand	MEBX 9902
C	M20 Plastic Gland (with fittings)	MUFA 9912
D	Armoured Gland (with fittings)	MUFA 9913
E	Fuses (see Table 2.1)	
F	HART Command Summary Information	MEFD 0001

Fig. 2.2

A	Sensor Cable Junction Box ( M20 fitting)	WABX 0020
B	Sensor Cable Junction Box ( 1/2" NPT fitting)	WABX 0021
C	250g Potting Compound (Standard)	0218474
	(Hazardous Area – 2 Packs Required).	
D	Transmitter Terminal Cover (Remote Version)	MEAX 9916
E	Transmitter Terminal Cover (Integral Version)	MEAX 9915
F	Transmitter Terminal Cover Seal	MEAX 9924
G	Gasket (Hygienic Flowmeter)	see Table 2.2
H	Standard Sensor Cable	Call Sales Office.
J	Armoured Sensor Cable	Call Sales Office.

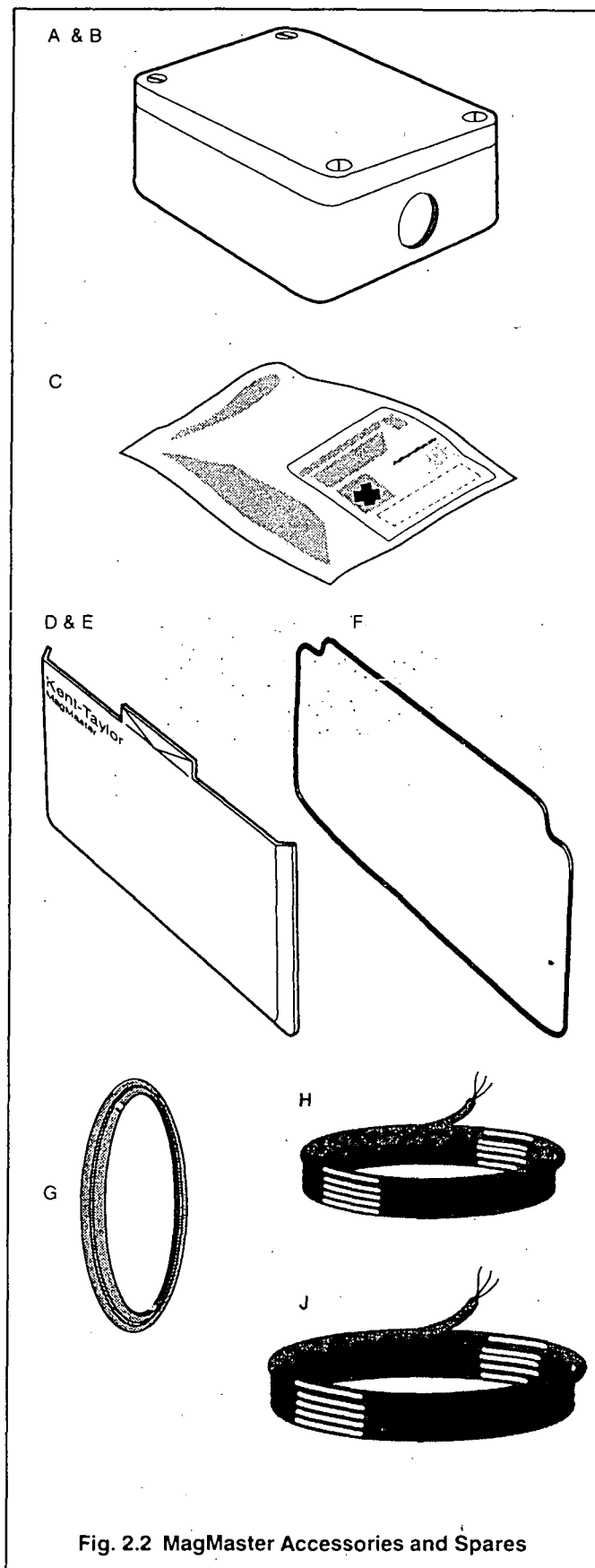


Fig. 2.2 MagMaster Accessories and Spares

## **SECTION 7**

### **INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SCHEME**

#### **VALVE RECORD CARDS**

- 7.1 Vacuum Valves**
- 7.2 Collection Pits**
- 7.3 Collection Pipe System**
- 7.4 Vacuum Pumps**
- 7.5 Sewage Pumps**
- 7.6 Control Panel**

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****7.1 VACUUM VALVES**

Refer to card index system for individual valve service log.

**7.2 Collection Pits**

House No. Serviced / Street	Service Date	Problem	Remarks	Sign

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****7.3 Collection Pipe Systems**

Pipe No.	Service Date	Problem	Remarks	Sign

Service Date	Pump No.	Hours of Operation	Remarks	Sign

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****7.5 Sewage Pumps**

Service Date	Pump No.	Hours of Operation	Remarks	Sign

**INGHAMS INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, HEMMANT VACUUM SEWERAGE SYSTEM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL****7.6 Control Panel**

Service Date	Pump No.	Hours of Operation	Remarks	Sign